

27

A N
E S S A Y
Towards a PRACTICAL
English Grammar,
DESCRIBING THE
GENIUS and NATURE
OF THE
English T O N G U E ;

Giving Likewise
A Rational and Plain ACCOUNT of
GRAMMAR in General, with a fa-
miliar EXPLANATION of its Terms.

By JAMES GREENWOOD
Sur-Master of St. PAUL's-School.

Extera quid quærat, sua qui Vernacula nescit ?

The Third Edition with Additions.

L O N D O N :

Printed for ARTHUR BETTESWORTH at
the Red-Lyon in Pater-noster Row. 1729.

✓



896

T O

Dr. *Richard Mead*,

Fellow of the College of
Physicians in *London*, and
Fellow of the ROYAL
SOCIETY.

S I R,

YOUR giving me leave to put the
First Edition of this *Essay* under
your Protection, encourages me to
lay the *Third* there also: And indeed it
would be great Ingratitude as well as
Imprudence in me, to offer to remove it
from that Shade, under which it has re-
ceived both Strength and Security. Be-
sides, I could not deny my self the Plea-
sure of taking Notice, that as your good
Sense, quick Apprehension, your ready
and solid Judgment have distinguished
A 2 you

The DEDICATION.

you in all the useful Parts of polite Learning : So your passionate Love towards it, has made you one of its principal Patrons. To these Qualifications having joined the Knowledge of Men and Things, you soon found Means of becoming serviceable to Mankind, in that which is of the greatest Use and Value, the Preservation and Restoration of Health, and have attained to that Skill and Knowledge in your Profession, which, as the wise Man has observed, shall lift up the Head of the Physician, and make him to be had in Admiration in the Sight of Great Men.

I am, SIR,

Your most Obliged

Humble Servant

JAMES GREENWOOD.

T H E

P R E F A C E.

I NEED not, I hope, make any Apology for publishing a Grammar of our Mother Tongue, since it is too plain and evident, how necessary a Performance of this Nature is, and especially for those Persons, who talk for the most Part just as they have heard their Parents, Nurses, or Teachers, (who likewise may happen to be none of the best Speakers) talk; without ever taking the Matter into any farther Consideration: It is indeed possible that a Young Gentleman or Lady may be enabled to speak pretty well upon some Subjects, and entertain a Visitor with Discourse that may be agreeable enough: Yet I do not well see how they should write any Thing with a tolerable Correctness, unless they have some Taste of Grammar, or express themselves clearly, and deliver their Thoughts by Letter or otherwise, so as not to lay themselves open to the Censure of their Friends, for their blameable Spelling or false Syntax.

For which Reason after several others, I have endeavoured to explain the Principles of Gram-

The PREFACE.

mar in such a perspicuous and familiar Way, as may rather incite, than discourage the Curiosity of such who would have a clear Notion of what they speak or write. And herein I have had a Regard to three Things: In the first Place I, was desirous to do what in me lay, to excite Persons to the Study of their Mother Tongue. Secondly, To give such a plain and rational Account of Grammar, as might render it easy and delightful to our English Youth, who have for a long Time esteemed the Study of this useful Art very irksome, obscure and difficult: And this their wrong and hard Notion seems to have proceeded, partly from the unpleasing and disadvantageous Manner it has been delivered to them in, and partly through the Want of having every Thing explained and cleared up to their Understanding as they go along: Not to mention the Teaching them Grammar in Latin, before they have learned any Thing of it in English. And every Body must readily grant that the Way to come to a true and clear Knowledge of any Art, is to explain Things unknown, by Things that are known. And I dare be bold to say, that if the Grammar of our own Tongue was first Taught in our Schools, our Youth would in a far less Time, than they now commonly do, attain to an Understanding of the Latin Tongue, and also be better prepared for the Study of Things. My third Aim that I had in the writing this Treatise was, to oblige the Fair Sex, whose Education, perhaps, is too much neglected in this Particular: But I shall give you my Thoughts
of

The PREFACE.

of this Matter, by transcribing part of a Letter which I wrote some Time ago, to the Ingenious Author of the *TATLER* upon this Head.

—“ But among all the various Subjects,
“ of which you have so excellently treated,
“ there is none that is of that Importance
“ to the Publick, as the *Education* of Chil-
“ dren : For what can be a greater or more
“ noble Design than the Building up of a
“ Man ? Or rather of making Mankind
“ more happy ? This Sir, is what you are
“ going to do, since by the Improvement
“ of the *Female Sex*, you will of course add
“ to the Happiness, Pleasure, and Advantage
“ of the *Male*. And I have often with con-
“ cern reflected on the Negligence, not to
“ say Ingratitude of our Sex, who seem so
“ generally careless in Cultivating and Adorn-
“ ing the Minds of those Beautiful Crea-
“ tures, that are the Delight and Ornament
“ of Mankind. Nay, what can be greater
“ Injustice than for a Father to find fault
“ with the Weakness and Ignorance of Wo-
“ men, and yet neglect to cure the Weak-
“ ness, or instruct the Ignorance of his own
“ Daughter. There can be no just Excuse
“ made for so great a Piece of Neglect in
“ the *Education* of the *Fair Sex* : And all
“ that can be said is, that it is the Custom,
“ and we know not what Measures to take
“ to put Things upon a better Foot : But
“ this, Sir, is what we hope and expect
“ from you, &c.” I have therefore endeavour-
ed

THE PREFACE.

ed to render every Thing easy and familiar to them, by explaining every Word that might hinder their learning these Matters with Pleasure.

I have in this Book taken in every Thing that was Material from Dr. WALLIS, but he writing for Foreigners; and in Latin, I have not pursued his Method; as not being every where answerable to my Design.

I pretend not to call this a Compleat Grammar, no such Thing being to be expected from any one Person, but an ESSAY, in which I have to the best of my Abilities, consulted the Genius of our Language.

I must here confess, that I have been very much obliged in the following Papers to Bishop WILKINS's Real Character, Dr. WALLIS, Dr. HICKES's Saxon Grammar; and I must also take Notice, that in two or three Places I have made use of Mr. LOCK's Expressions, because I liked them better than my own.

As I am very much obliged to several Eminent and Learned Gentlemen, who have honoured this Work with their Approbation: So I am in a particular Manner to return Thanks to the Reverend and Learned Dr. SAMUEL CLARK, Rector of St. James's, who did me the Honour to make Corrections to the whole Work: As also to the Reverend and Learned Dr. DANIEL WATERLAND, who has done me the like Honour: My Thanks are due likewise to my Learned Friend Mr. JOHN DENNIS, for his Essay towards an English PROSODY. I should be unjust

The PREFACE.

just to Mr. ANDREW READ, and Mr. JONES, if I did not own the Favour of the judicious Remarks, they were pleased to communicate.

The Places marked with an Asterism or Star, are what are most necessary to be learned at the first going over : But what is to be learned, and what passed by, the discretion of the Teacher will best determine.

If any Gentleman will be pleased to make any Amendments or Additions to This, they shall be gratefully acknowledged and inserted in their proper Place, by

His humble Servant,

J. G.



Part

Part of a Letter from Mr. ANDREW
ROSS, Professor of Humanity in the
Univerſity of GLASGOW, to the Au-
thor.

I had the Benefit of reading your Grammar, soon after it was published: I was, and ſtill am, mightily pleaſed with it. I put it in the Hands of all my Scholars, as ſoon as I could get Copies enough to this Place; and now, ſeveral Months ſince, I could give my Probatum eſt to the great Uſe of both the Matter and Method. I have occaſioned ſome young Perſons of Quality and Diſtinction in the Country to begin the firſt Elements of Grammar Learning with it, and have partly ſeen, and partly been adviſed by Letters from their Tutors, that they have reaped great Advantages from it. Your Familiar Queſtions upon each Chapter, which I think are conceived with much Diſcretion, are of great Uſe, eſpecially to the younger Scholars. I think your VOCABULARY answers the End of it extremely well, there can ſcarce be more of Nature and Things contained in ſo little room, nor that more methodically ranged, &c.

A Cha-

A Character of this GRAMMAR given
by the Reverend Mr. ISAAC WATS,
in his Book, Intituled, *The Art of
Reading and Writing English.*

Those who have a Mind to inform themselves
more perfectly of the Genius and Composition of
our Language, either in the Original Derivation
of it, or in the present Use and Practice, must
consult such Treatises as are written on Purpose;
amongst which, I know none equal to that Essay
towards a Practical English Grammar, compos-
ed by Mr. JAMES GREENWOOD; wherein
he has shown the deep Knowledge, without the
haughty Airs of a Critick: And he is preparing
a new Edition with great Improvements, by the
friendly Communications of the Learned World.
When that ingenious Author has finished the Work
he designs, if he would deny himself so far, as
to publish a short Abstract of the three first Parts
of it, in two or three Sheets, meerly for the In-
struction of common English Readers; I am well
assured it would give them an easier and better
Acquaintance with the Nature of Grammar, and
the Genius of their Native Tongue, than any
Treatise that has ever yet come within my
Notice.

Part of a Letter from the late Learned
Dr. HICKES to the Author.

Sir, I now give you very hearty, though very late Thanks, for your elaborate Essay towards a Practical English Grammar, which I read with great Pleasure ; having had Thoughts for many Years to make an English Grammar, for which you will imagine I was in some measure Qualified, by my Knowledge of the antient Saxon and Dano-Sax-English, as well as inclined to such a Work, &c.

Part of a Letter from the late Learned
JOHN CHAMBERLAYNE Esq; Au-
thor of the Present State of *Great-Bri-*
tain to the Author.

A Minister of the Swedish Church having consulted me about drawing up an English Grammar for the use of his Countrymen, I refered him to yours, as a noble Superstructure, or a sure Foundation. Sir, I have long had Thoughts of attempting, what you have now done so well ; but one Avocation or other has always hindered me, &c.

Dr. WALLIS's
PREFACE,
With ADDITIONS.

The *Additions* have this Mark before them (").

SINCE it is customary to address the Reader at the Beginning of a Work ; I think, I ought also to say something by Way of Preface, as well to shew the Reasons why I undertook this Work, and what I have done in it, as to give an Account of the Rise and Progress of the English Tongue.

The English Tongue, which we are to treat of, and which is now spoken, not only in England, but in Scotland, is not that ancient British Tongue which the first Britains formerly used ; nor indeed any Branch of it, but a quite different one, brought hither by Strangers from foreign Parts.

The English Tongue.

There was spoken among us formerly a very ancient Language full of Beauty and Elegancy ; common to us with the Neighbouring Inhabitants of * Gaul. For whether this Island was formerly join'd to Gaul by an Isthmus, or whether it has always been dis-join'd by the Sea, and had no Commerce with it but on the Score of Neighbourhood, or

The old British Tongue.

* By Gaul, we are to understand ancient France.

whether we received our first Inhabitants from them, or they from us, or from the Phœnicians, or Trojans, or elsewhere ; This is certain, that both Nations had formerly the same Language and the same Customs : And truly, in my Opinion, the Galli and Walli, that is, the Inhabitants of France and Wales, have one common Denomination ; for the Change of the Letters G or Gu and W is very common, and Wallia, which we call Wales, is in the French Language Gales ; and in the German Tongue, the Gauls, or French, are called Walschen. It is generally agreed upon, that the People which are called Walli, or Wallones, are the Gauls or French ; namely, the Inhabitants of Artois, and the Parts adjacent ; as also those of Lombardy (which lies between the Alps and the River Rubicon) called Gallia Cisalpina ; and Gascoigne, is likewise called Vasconia. So the French Words guerre, garant, gard, gardien, garderobe, guise, guile, gage, guichet, guimblet, guerdon, Guillaume, gagner, gâter, guetter, &c. signify the same with these English Words, War, warrant, ward, warden, wardrobe, wise, wile, wager, wicket, wimble, reward, William, to win, to waste, to wait, &c. So what are called in Latin Juglandes, in some Parts of England, we call French Nuts, in other Parts, they are in the same Sense called Wall-Nuts, that is Walsch-Nuts. So the Galatians, or Gallo Græcians are said to have carried away their Language with them out of Gaul, and according to Strabo, spoke two Languages, their own and the Greek : And, perhaps, after the same Manner, Galloway, in Scotland, had its Name.

But this old Language, spoken in common by the Gauls and Britains, was before It hath great Affinity with the Eastern Languages. any thing recorded in History ; so that we cannot trace the Original of the Tongue and People, but by Conjectures, or by Historians, upon whose Credit we may not entirely depend ; and perhaps this, as the other Mother Tongues, had its Rise at the Confusion of Babel : For it still has a great Affinity with the Eastern Languages, as appears not only in the Derivation of Words, as John Davies has remarked in his Welch Dictionary, and Samuel Bochart in his Geographia Sacra, or Sacred Geography, who thinks that the very Name of Britain, is derived from the Arabick or Punick Language ; namely that Βρεταννική Bretannike : comes from

Barat

The P R E F A C E.

3

Barat anach, which signifies the Land of Tin and Lead, and that the British Isles were called by the Greeks Cassiterides, a Word of the same Signification with Bretannike: But likewise in their Syntax, which is performed by Prefixes and Affixes, and the various Permutation of the State, as appears from the Grammars of the Welch Language, published in Latin by John Davies and John David Rice: For as the Hebrews have a State Absolute, and a State of Regimen; so the Welch have, as they express it, a Primary, Soft, a Liquid and Aspirate State, according to the Variety of Construction; to which I shall add, that the joining to Persons Names the Names of their Fathers, Grand-fathers, and perhaps others of their Ancestors, was a Custom of the Eastern Nations; for Example, John David Rice, or to speak in their own Dialect, Sion ap Dafyd ap Rhys, is the same as John the Son of David, the Son of Rice; and though now a-days they have the Names of their Families after the Manner of the English, yet they are for the most Part meer Patronymicks; for the Names Price, Powel, Bowel, Bowen, Pugh, Parry, Penry, Prichard, Probert, Proger, &c. are no more than Ap Rhys, Ap Howel, Ap Owen, Ap Hugh, Ap Harry, Ap Henry, Ap Richard, Ap Robert, Ap Roger, &c. And Jones, Jenkins, Davyes, are meer Patronymicks, Gryffith, Morgan, Howel, Teudor, Lluellin, Lloyd, &c. are the Names of Ancestors; though the Word Ap, that is, Mab a Son, be left out; and so we are to judge of most of their other Names. But we must not discourse too largely of these Matters; those that would be farther informed, I refer to the British History of Ponticus Virunnius, and to the Itinerary and Description of Wales, written by Giraldus Cambrensis; and to Mr. David Powel's Latin Annotations on both those Authors: They may likewise consult two Philological Treatises of Mr. John Davies, one of which is at the Beginning of his Dictionary, the other in his Grammar; and two like Treatises published by Mr. John David Rhesus, or Rice, and prefixed to his Grammar; one of them his, and writ in Welch, the other writ in Latin, by Mr. Humphrey Prichard; the Description of Britain by Mr. Humphrey Lloyd; Cambdens Britannia, and Bochart's Sacred Geography, (Part 2. l. 1. c. 39, 41, 42.) And besides these, Bishop Usher's Antiquities of Britain, Verstegan's Antiquities in English. H. Lloyd's Chronological History of Wales, published in English by David Powel; Brerewood's

Enquiries in English ; and other Books of the like Subject, where may be found many Monuments of uncommon Learning ; and although some Fables may be mixed among the most ancient Writings, as is common in the Accounts of a very old Date, yet without doubt, there is likewise a great deal of Truth to be met with.

But the ancient Language of both Nations is now almost every where lost. As to Gaul or France, after the Romans had subdued it, they endeavoured to introduce their own Language, and therefore published all their Edicts, and other Writings in Latin ; so that the old Cantabrian or Biscain Language in Spain, and that old one used in France, by Degrees grew obsolete, and came under the same Subjection with the People, and in its Room succeeded a broken kind of Latin, and this

was called Romance, or Romanſhe, the Roman Tongue ; but nevertheless it still retained some Words of the old Language. “ The Spaniards call, to this Day, such Verses as they make “ in their Language, by the Name of Romances ; and so “ did the French also, as may appear by the Title of the “ Poesy, written in French by John Clopinel, alias, Meung, “ called, *Le Romant de la Rose* ; and afterwards translated “ into English by Geffery Chaucer, with the Title of *The “ Romant of the Rose*. And hence comes our Word Ro-
“ mances.

But when the Franks, or Franconians, a People of Germany, were led by Pharamond into Gaul, or France, they brought with them their own Language, which was of the same Original with the German, and our English, and not very much different from both, which continued amongst them for some time, and was called *Lingua Franca*, the Frank, or French Tongue, till the Gauls or Franks becoming one People, the Franks learned that broken or corrupt kind of Latin which prevail'd among the Gauls, mingling, without doubt, many Words of their own with it ; yet they preserved their old Syntax, which is indeed the same with the Teutonick, but as different from the Roman, as it is from the old Gaulish ; so that we cannot suppose that this Syntax was either received by the Romans, or transmitted to us by the ancient Gauls ; and we may affirm the same thing of the Italian and Spanish Syntax,

The PREFACE.

5

Syntax, that the Lombards, Goths and Vandals, brought it thither out of Germany. And hence the Modern French had its Original, which still keeps its Name, as the People themselves do from the Franks. So that the ancient Gaulish Language is almost entirely lost in France, remaining only among the Inhabitants of Bretagne, " who were a Colony from our " Britains of this Island.

" And because the foresaid old and true French, was in " a Manner all one with our ancient English; I will, to satisfy the curious Reader, give him here a taste thereof " in these few ensuing Verses, which are taken out of Otfri- " dus's Preface to the four Gospels, translated by him about " four hundred Years ago, out of Latin into French Rhime.

Nu wil ih scriban unser heill. Old French;
Now will I write our Health.
Salvation.

Evangeliono Deil.
Of the Gospel, the Deal,
the Part.

So ist nu hiar begunun.
So it is now here begun.
In Frenkisga tungun.
In the French Tongue.

" Hereby it may appear, to such as are any whit acquainted with our old English Tongue, what great nearness was " between that and this ancient French; howbeit the Author " being a Scholar, hath framed two of these his Words from " the Latin, which indeed do not properly belong to his own " Language, that is Scribau and Evangeliono. A Learned " Gentleman is of Opinion, that Verstegan has a little too " hastily said so, because the Gothick Version has Evā- " gelion constantly, which is εὐαγγέλιον exactly; and as to " Scriban, it is no Latin Word, but is derived from σκῆπτρον " Penicillus.

The British Tongue had the same Fate among our selves; for tho' it remain'd uncorrupted till the Times of the Romans, yet when Julius Cæsar, and others after him, had extended the Roman Empire, as far as

How the British Tongue came to be disused in England.

Britain, *altho' on the Account of its great Distance from Rome, and the small Resort of Romans hither, our old Language suffer'd less Alteration than that among the Gauls, Spaniards, and Lombards, who were a more neighbouring People to Rome, yet the Language in Britain received many Latin Words, which still remain, but so transform'd by the Rules and Syntax of the British Tongue, that the Change is not very great; and there is no doubt but that the Romans on the other hand, carried back with them many British Words, whether it were out of Britain or Gaul, of which we see a good Number collected by Camden, Bochart, and other Writers. But afterwards when the Anglo-Saxons, or English Saxons, a People of Germany, (if we may enlarge the Bounds of Germany, as some do, so as to comprehend Denmark and Norway) came into Britain about the same time that the Franks entered into Gaul, and after long Wars had gained the Kingdom; they drove out the Britains, together with their Language, who nevertheless still inhabit the Mountainous Parts of Cambria, or Wales, and are called Welch, and do yet keep their Language, as do some Cornubians, in the extream Part of Cornubia or Cornwall, and call it Lingua Cornubica, the Cornish Tongue: So likewise the People of Ireland, (to which Place I can't find that the Romans or Saxons ever came) as also the Islanders and Highlanders of Scotland, (whose Language differs very little from that of the Irish) have a Language very near a-kin to the Welch, and which, perhaps, was formerly the very same, tho' now it is more different from the Welch, than either the Cornish Language, or that of Bretagne in France, but scarcely more different than the modern German is from the English. But Scaliger in his Book de Linguis Europæ, of the Languages of Europe, and others that follow him, particularly Merula in his Cosmography, reckoned that the Irish was a distinct Original Language, and that it had no affinity with the British, which is a plain Mistake, as has been formerly observ'd by Camden, and the Thing needs no Proof. But whether it has any Relation to the Lingua Cantabrica, or Biscayan Tongue of Spain, I am altogether ignorant, neither have I leisure now to make a particular Enquiry, and I rather incline to the contrary Opinion; at least in those few Specimens of the Cantabrian, or Biscayan in Merula, I can find no Marks or Signs of the*

the Welch Tongue, tho' it is possible that the Irish do retain some Cantabrian Words, if they are descended, as many believe, from the Iberi or Spaniards; this is certain, that the Hiberni, or Irish, have many Words that are not of British Original, but whence they had them I cannot tell. But the Word Cambria Wales, tho' in Sound it be like Cantabria Biscay, yet perhaps it has a greater Affinity with the Cimbri or Cimneri, (a People of Cimbrica Chersonesus, or Jutland, and Mr. Camden has shown that the Gauls were anciently called Cimbri or Cimneri,) than with the Cantabri (the People of Biscay in Spain;) for a Welchman is called in his own Language, Cymro or Cumro, and it is believ'd that he derives that Name from Gomer, who, according to Scripture, was Japhet's eldest Son, and the Grandson of Noah. " And
 " this Gomer, ought to be looked on as the first and true Fa-
 " ther of the Gauls, commonly call'd Galatians by the Greeks,
 " and the first Name that they went by, while yet in Up-
 " per Asia, was that of Gomarites or Gomarians; after
 " which they had that of Sacae, or Saques, and under that
 " became very Famous in the Countries of Margiana and
 " Bactriana [which were in Persia Northward to the Caspian
 " Sea, and Mount Taurus.] But having in after Ages
 " multiplied apace, and in several Incursions made themselves
 " Masters of Lesser Asia, Thrace, the Isle of Crete, and all
 " Greece, they affected the Name of Titans, or The Chil-
 " dren of the Earth; and it was under this Name, so much
 " celebrated by the Ancient Poets and Historians, that they
 " perform'd such mighty Things, both in part of Asia, and all
 " over Europe, for the Space of above Three Hundred Years.
 " Besides we find that some of these People, having separated
 " from the rest, who continued in Upper Asia, and seized on
 " the Northen Parts, above the Euxine Sea, and far beyond
 " the Danube, were called Cimbri, or Cimbrians, that is,
 " Men of War; and these were they which the Greek Poets
 " called Cimnerians; after which this warlike People took
 " the Name of Celtæ, when they settled in the Provinces of
 " Europe. And lastly, they had the Name of Gauls, after
 " they had thoroughly fixed themselves in those rich Coun-
 " tries, situate between the Ocean and the Rhine, and be-
 " tween the Alps and the Pyrenæes; but the two Names,
 " Celtæ

“ *Celtae and Gauls, signify Potent and Valiant Men.*
 “ *M. Pezron.*

But what we have said of the Gauls, that after the Arrival of the Franks, they in Time recover'd their own Language, tho' call'd by another Name, (I don't mean their primitive Language, but what succeeded it) by Reason of their becoming one People together with the Franks ; this could not happen in England, for the Britains, tho' they endured a Thousand Calamities, yet being very zealous for their Religion, which was Christianity, and the Rites and Customs of their Country would never admit of such a Commerce or Union with the Saxons, who at that Time were Heathens, but bore a deadly Hatred towards them for many Ages, which is scarce yet laid aside.

Now the Saxons, as has been-observed, The Anglo-Saxons, or English Saxon Tongue. having made themselves Masters of the Ancient Seats of the Britains, named that Part of Britain which they had conquered, England ; and the Tongue which they brought with them, English ; which we now commonly call Saxon, or Anglo-Saxon, to distinguish it from our modern or present English. But the Anglo-Saxon, as likewise the Frank or French Tongue, the present German, Dutch, Swedish and Prussian Tongues are Branches of the old Teutonic. The Anglo-Saxon Tongue remained here, in a manner, pure and unmix'd, till the Time of the Normans ; only it received some Welch Words, as the Welch did likewise some of theirs ; for altho' the Danes, in the mean Time came into England, yet the Tongue suffered no considerable Change, the Danish Tongue being almost the same, or very near a-kin to it.

But when William Duke of Normandy, called the Conqueror, brought How far the Normans changed the English Tongue. over his Normans hither, having got Possession of England, he attempted an Alteration of the Language, endeavouring to introduce the French Tongue ; that being the Language which he himself used in Normandy ; for tho' the Normans, or Northmans, while they were a People of Norway, as formerly they were, spoke the same Tongue with the Saxons who had been their Neighbours, namely, that which
was

was then spoken by the Saxons in England ; but after the Normans came into Neustria (which was long after call'd Normandy) they chang'd their Native Language for the French, which was made up of the Romans, or Franco Gallick ; and this was the Language which the Conqueror had a Mind should be settled in England with himself, wherefore he took no small Care to have all Diploma's Publick Edicts, and other judicial Matters, written and performed in the Neustrian, or French Tongue. But his Attempts prov'd unsuccessful, because the Number of the Normans that came hither, was very small, in Comparison of the English with whom they were embodied or mix'd ; wherefore the Normans lost or forgot their own Language, sooner than they could make any Change in the English. But tho' for this Reason the old English Tongue kept its ground, yet this Disadvantage arose from these Endeavours of the Conqueror, that many French Words, tho' for the most part of Latin Original, crept into the English, and many English Words by Degrees grew out of Use. For as to the Derivation of some Words, we may thus judge ; that the Words which the French have, that are of German Original, brought thither by the Franks, altho' they may now chance to be common to us, with the French, yet we are to reckon them originally our own, rather than borrow'd from them : So likewise as to the old Gaulish Words which they retain, now common to them with the Welch, and which we likewise have kept from the old British Language, we are to think, that we received them from the Welch, rather than from the French.

And I am of Opinion, that a tolerable Reason may be given why the Names of those living Creatures, are originally German, whose Flesh, when prepar'd for Food, we call by French Names ; as for Instance, an Ox, a Cow, a Calf, a Sheep, a Hog, a Boar, a Deer, &c. are German Names ; but Beef, Veal, Mutton, Pork, Brawn, Venison, &c. are French : The Reason then, I take to be, is that the Norman Soldiers did not so much concern themselves with Pastures, Parks, Pens, and other Places, where those Creatures were looked after and kept, which therefore preserv'd their ancient Names ; as with Markets, Kitchens, Feasts and Entertainments, where the Food was either prepar'd or sold, whence it received new Names.

But

But from that Time a vast Medley of foreign Words has been received into our Language ; not that the English is of it self poor and barren, but is sufficiently enrich'd with Words and Elegancies ; and, if I may so speak, is copious to an Excess. Nor is there any Word which it cannot furnish us with out of its own Store, to express our most refin'd Conceptions, in a significant and full Manner. The Poems of our Countryman Spencer, are a sufficient Proof of this, whose Expression is neat and elegant, copious and full of Variety, yet pure and beautiful, without the help of outlandish Ornaments. But however, some Mixture could hardly be avoided, considering our Commerce with Strangers, and the frequent Marriages of our Princes with Foreigners, to which we may add, that excessive Lust of Novelty, which, at least in this latter Age, has stung many with an Itch of bringing in Beyond-Sea Words, without any Manner of Necessity. Some People being of Opinion, that nothing can be well, or elegantly expressed, that carries not with it an uncommon Sound, or a French Air. " Whereas our Ancestors misliked nothing more in King Edward the Confessor, than that he was Frenchified ; and " accounted the Desire of a foreign Language then, to be a " foretoken of the bringing in of foreign Powers, which indeed happened. And as Mr. Camden observes, for the " Honour of our Native Tongue, Henry Fitz-Allen, Earl of " Arundel, in his Travels to Italy, and the Lord William " Howard of Effingham, in his Government of Calice, albeit they were not ignorant of foreign Tongues, would answer no Strangers in Writing, but in English. And Cardinal Wolsey, in his Embassy into France, commanded all " his Servants to use no French, but meer English to the " French in all their Conversation with them : And if this " good Custom of speaking no other Tongue but the English, " did but once prevail at our Court, the English Tongue " would be more studied at Home, and valued Abroad. But " as to our daily borrowing abundance of Words, I cannot " think our Language is better'd by it ; especially if we consider what a great Number of noble, full and well sounding " Words, that were of our own growth, we have, like unnatural Parents expos'd and turn'd out of Doors ; a List of " which I may some time or other present the World with. " And Mr. Dryden, in the Dedication of his Juvenal to my

" Lord

“ Lord Dorset *has these Expressions* ; In my Opinion, ob-
 “ solete Words may then be laudably revived, when either
 “ they are more sounding, or more significant than those in
 “ Practice ; and when their Obscurity is taken away, by
 “ joining other Words to them, which clear the Sense ac-
 “ cording to the Rule of *Horace*, for the Admission of new
 “ Words. *But in both Cases, a Moderation is to be obser-*
 “ *ved in the Use of them ; for unnecessary Coinage, as well*
 “ *as unnecessary Revival, runs into Affectation ; a Fault to*
 “ *be avoided on either Hand.*

Thus, partly by these Mixtures, partly The present Eng-
 by Length of Time, which causes strange lish Tongue.
 Alterations in all Languages, the old
 Anglo-Saxon Tongue, was changed into the present English ;
 which hath been received likewise into the chief Parts of
 Scotland ; which I believe chiefly happened when the Nor-
 mans invaded England ; for several of the English Royal
 Family, Nobility and Commonalty, being driven out of Eng-
 land, did with themselves carry their Language into Scot-
 land, which being improved by continual Commerce, did so
 far prevail, that the English and Scotch Tongues are now
 the same ; unless we should rather say, that the more polite
 Part of Scotland, and that which is nearest England, has
 got the same Inhabitants with those of England, who were
 descended from the Saxons, and formerly made part of the
 Kingdom of Northumberland : For the Scotch Highlanders,
 call the Lowlanders as well as the English, Saxons, that
 is, Saxons ; but they formerly called themselves Gael, and
 Gaiothel ; but the Highlanders and Islanders, that is the
 Inhabitants of the Isles adjacent, who inhabit a great, tho'
 the more uncultivated Part of Scotland, which lies North-
 West, retain to this Day the ancient British, or rather Irish
 Tongue : For they are the Remainders of the Picts, that is
 the most ancient Britains, who disdaining the Roman Yoke,
 fled into the mountainous and rough Countries, and mingled
 with the Scots, (the Descendants of the Scythians or Goths)
 who came thither out of Ireland. “ Mr. Edmond Spencer,
 “ our famous Poet, in his View of the State of Ireland, says,
 “ That there were two Kinds of Scots (as may be gathered
 “ from Buchanan) the one Irin, or Irish Scots, the other
 “ Albin Scots ; for those Scots are Scythians who arrived in
 “ the

“ the North Parts of Ireland, where some of them after
 “ passed into the next Coast Albine, now called Scotland,
 “ which after much Trouble they possessed, and of themselves
 “ named Scotland ; but in Process of Time (as it is common-
 “ ly seen) the Dominion of the Part prevaieth in the whole,
 “ for the Irish Scots putting away the Name of Scots, were
 “ called only Irish, and the Albine Scots, leaving the Name
 “ of Albine were called only Scots. Therefore it cometh
 “ thence that of some Writers, Ireland is called Scotia Ma-
 “ jor, and that which now is called Scotland, Scotia Minor.
 “ And he says that the Scythians did from themselves name
 “ what we call Scotland, Scuttenland, which by Contraction
 “ became Scutland, or Scotland. And we learn from the
 “ Chronicum Saxonicum, or Saxon Chronicle, and from
 “ Bedes Ecclesiast. Hist. 1. 1. That Ireland was anciently
 “ called Scotta Ea, the Scots Island ; and the learned Bp.
 “ Gibson, in his Explication of the Names of Places at the
 “ End of the Chronicon Saxonicum, p. 43. under the Word
 “ Scottas, says, *Scoti quo nomine apud Historicos nonnun-*
 “ *quam appellantur Hiberni, ut & Scotiæ nomine vocatur*
 “ *Hibernia.* That is, among some Historians, the Irish are
 “ called by the Name of Scots, as Ireland is by the Name of
 “ Scotland”. The English Language then which we are to
 treat of, is a Branch of the Teutonick, as is the present
 German, Dutch, Danish, and those that are a kin to them ;
 and our Language differs from them, just as they do from
 one another. “ But I am afraid I have already exceeded
 “ the Bounds of a Preface, yet I cannot pass by two or three
 “ Things, which if not necessary, may notwithstanding be en-
 “ tertaining to some Persons ; namely, some Account of the
 “ Mother Tongues ; and of the various Changes that our
 “ Language has undergone for several Ages : Afterwards
 “ we shall answer an Objection made against our Language,
 “ and then give our Reasons for undertaking this Work.

“ Because we have had Occasion to make
 Of the Mother “ mention of the Mother Tongues, it may
 Tongues. “ not be disagreeable to some Readers if I
 “ give some Account of them. Tongues
 “ then are either Mother Tongues, or Dialects : Mother
 “ Tongues, are those out of which many Dialects, like so
 “ many Branches, are drawn. These Branches of one Mo-
 “ ther

“ ther Tongue have some Affinity one with another ; but be-
 “ tween the Mother Tongues themselves there is no Affinity
 “ at all. The Mother Tongues, which are so wholly diffe-
 “ rent one from another, are in Number Eleven ; of which
 “ Four are more Noble, the other Seven of less Dignity ;
 “ those we call the greater, these the less Mother Tongues.
 “ The same Word in the Original Tongue, by diverse Inflecti-
 “ ons and Changes makes diverse Dialects ; as the same
 “ Word in Latin, diversely varied, produces the Italian, Spa-
 “ nish, and French Dialect : So the Latin calls a Son-in-Law,
 “ Gener ; the Italian, Genero ; the Spanish, Yerno ; the
 “ French, Gendre ; all which are Latin in their Original, but
 “ according to the Variation, are respectively appropriated to
 “ the aforesaid several Dialects or Languages.

“ The Four chief Mother Tongues, are Greek, Latin,
 “ Teutonick, and Sclavonick.

“ 1. The Greek was anciently of very great Extent, not
 “ only in Europe, but in Asia too, and Africk, where sever-
 “ al Colonies of that Nation were planted ; by which Dis-
 “ pension and Mixture with other People, it did degenerate
 “ into several Dialects. Besides those Four that are common-
 “ ly noted, the Dorick, Ionick, Æolick, Attick ; Herodo-
 “ tus doth mention four several Dialects of the Ionick : The
 “ Inhabitants of Rhodes, Cyprus, and Crete, had each of
 “ them some Peculiarity in their Language ; and the present
 “ Coptick, or Egyptian, seems both from the Words and the
 “ Character, to be a Branch of this Family, and was proba-
 “ bly spread amongst that People in the Days of Alexander
 “ the Great, upon his Conquering of them : Though some
 “ conceive that there were at least 30000 Families of Greeks
 “ planted in that Country long before his Time.

“ 2. The Latin, though this be much of it a Derivation from
 “ the Greek, (of which the present French, Spanish, and Ita-
 “ lian are several Off-springs and Derivations) had anciently four
 “ several Dialects, as Petrus Crinitus shews out of Varro.

“ 3. The * Teutonick or German, is now distinguished into
 “ Upper and Lower. The Upper hath two notable Dialects.

* The Teutonick branches out into German, Saxon, and
 Danish. The German into Upper and Lower. Vide Thomass.
 Gloss. pr. 67.

“ 1. The Danish, Scandian, or perhaps the Gothick, to
 “ which belongs the Language used in Denmark, Norway,
 “ Swedeland, and Iceland. 2. The Saxon, to which apper-
 “ tain the several Languages of the English, the Scots, the
 “ Frisian, and those on the North of the Elbe.

“ 4. The Sclavonick is extended, though with some Varia-
 “ tion, through many large Territories, Muscovy, Russia, Po-
 “ land, Bohemia, Vandalia, Croatia, Lithuania, Dalmatia;
 “ and is said to be the Vulgar Language, used amongst Sixty
 “ several Nations — The Languages of less Extent are, 1.
 “ The Albanese, or old Epirotick, now used in the Mountain-
 “ ous Parts of Epirus. — 2. The European Tartar, or Scythi-
 “ an, from which some conceive our Irish to have had its
 “ Original.

“ As for the Turkish Tongue, that is originally no other
 “ than the Asiatick Tartar, mixed with Armenian and Per-
 “ sian, some Greek, and much Arabick. 3. The Hunga-
 “ rian, used in the greatest Part of that Kingdom. 4. The
 “ Finnick, used in Finland and Lapland. 5. The Cantabri-
 “ an, used among the Biscainers, who live near the Ocean on
 “ the Pyrenean Hills, bordering both upon France and Spain.
 “ 6. The Irish in Ireland, and from thence brought over in-
 “ to some Parts of Scotland; though Mr. Camden would have
 “ this to be a Derivation from the Welch. 7. The old Gau-
 “ lish or British, which is yet preserved in Wales, Cornwall,
 “ and Britain in France. To this Number Mr. Brerewood
 “ doth add four others, viz. 1. Arabick, now used in the steep
 “ Mountains of Granata, which is yet a Dialect from the He-
 “ brew, and not a Mother Tongue. 2. The Cauchian in
 “ East-Friseland. 3. The Illyrian, in the Isle of Veggia.
 “ 4. The Jazygian, on the North Side of Hungary. Besides
 “ this Difference of Languages in their first Derivation, every
 “ particular Tongue hath its several Dialects. Though Judæa
 “ were a Region of a very narrow Compass, yet was it not
 “ without its Varieties of this Kind, witness the Story concern-
 “ ing Shibboleth and Sibboleth; and that of the Levite, who
 “ was discovered by his Manner of Speech; and St. Peter’s
 “ being known for a Galilean, (Judges xii. 18. and Matth.
 “ xxvi. 21.) ’Tis so generally in other Countries, and particu-
 “ larly with us in England, where the Northern and Western
 “ Inhabitants do observe a different Dialect from other Parts

“ of

“ of this Nation, as may appear from that particular Instance
 “ mentioned by Verstegan : Whereas the Inhabitants about
 “ London would say, I would eat more Cheefe if I had
 “ it ; a Northern Man would speak it thus, Ay sud eat
 “ mare Cheefe gyn ay had et ; and a Western Man thus,
 “ Chud eat more Cheefe an chad it. Every one of these
 “ reputed Mother Tongues, except the Arabick, (and per-
 “ haps the Hungarian) was used in Europe, during the Time
 “ of the Roman Empire. But whether they were all of them
 “ so ancient as the Confusion of Babel, doth not appear ; there
 “ wants not great Probability to the contrary for some of them.

“ It hath been the Opinion of some, particularly Boxhor-
 “ nius, that the Scythian Tongue was the common Mother
 “ from which the Greek, Latin, German, and Persian
 “ were derived ; as so many Dialects ; and Salmasius in his
 “ Treatise, *De re Hellenistica*, inclines to this Opinion [P. 366.]
 “ Scythia igitur quæ ad Septentrionem, omnes ferme
 “ gentes evomuit cum suis Linguis quæ Europam &
 “ Asiam inundarant. That is, most of the Nations,
 “ with their Languages, which over-ran Europe and Asia,
 “ came from Northern Scythia. And Philip Cluve-
 “ rius conjectures, that Germans, Gauls, Spaniards, Bri-
 “ tains, Swedes, and Norwegians, did anciently use the
 “ same Language. One principal Argument used for this is,
 “ the Agreement of those remote Nations in some radical Words.
 “ Joseph Scaliger observes, that the Words Father, Mother,
 “ Brother, Bond, &c. are used in the Persian Tongue, with
 “ some little Variety, in the same Sense and Signification as
 “ they are used with us. The Learned Monsieur Pezron, in
 “ his *Antiquities of Nations*, seems to give a tolerable Account
 “ of this Matter. The Persian Language, says he, is in many
 “ things like the Teutonick, or the High-Dutch ; and this
 “ Likeness is sometimes so apparent, that very learned Men have
 “ stood amazed at it ; which they needed not to be, had they
 “ well considered that those two Nations, I mean the Persian
 “ and German, had anciently received very numerous Colo-
 “ nies, that came from the same People, such as lived in Up-
 “ per Asia, known by the Name of Daes, in Latin *Dæ*, or
 “ *Dai*. For when they passed into Europe, they were called
 “ *Dacians*, and were the *Daci* of the Romans, who were of-
 “ ten intermixed with the *Getae*, and that made the Anci-

“ *ents sometimes confound the two Nations. The Teutones*
 “ *had their Origin from these Dacians that came from Asia,*
 “ *but more particularly from the Phrygians. These Dacians*
 “ *had several Times sent Colonies amongst the Parthians and*
 “ *Persians, their Neighbours; and it may be said, that the*
 “ *Arfacidan Parthians, reigned in Asia mainly by their Help.*
 “ *These Things considered, it is not to be wondered, that the*
 “ *Persian Language, notwithstanding the Changes it may have*
 “ *undergone, had anciently, and even still retains, so much*
 “ *Likeness in many Things to the Teutonic.*

Of the various
 Changes of the
 English Tongue.

“ *Having thus done with what we*
 “ *had to say about the Mother-Tongues,*
 “ *we shall now proceed to give some*
 “ *Examples of the Changes which our*
 “ *own Language has suffered. Now, besides the common*
 “ *Fate and Corruption to which Languages, as well as all*
 “ *other human Things are subject, there are many particular*
 “ *Things which may occasion the Changes of a Language:*
 “ *The Mixture with other Nations in Commerce; Marriages*
 “ *in Royal Families, which do usually bring some common*
 “ *Words into a Court-Fashion; that Affectation incident to*
 “ *some Eminent Men in all Ages, of coining new Words, and*
 “ *altering the common Forms of Speech for greater Elegancy;*
 “ *the Necessity of making other Words, according as new Things*
 “ *and Inventions are discovered: Besides the Laws of foreign*
 “ *Conquests usually extended to Letters and Speech, as well as*
 “ *Territories; the Conqueror commonly endeavouring to propa-*
 “ *gate his own Language, as far as his Dominions; which*
 “ *is the Reason why the Greek and Latin are so universally*
 “ *known. For as no Person in the Provinces could enjoy the*
 “ *Benefit of the Roman Freedom with any Honour, and re-*
 “ *main ignorant of the Roman Tongue: So in Embassies,*
 “ *Suits, Appeals, or whatever Provincial Business happened,*
 “ *nothing was allowed to be handled or spoken in the Senate*
 “ *at Rome, but in the Latin Tongue. The Laws also where-*
 “ *by the Provinces were governed, were all written in that*
 “ *Language, as being in all of them, except the Municipal*
 “ *Cities, the ordinary Roman Law. Moreover the Pretors*
 “ *of the Provinces, were not allowed to deliver their Judg-*
 “ *ments but in that Language: And we read, in Dion Cas-*
 “ *sius. of a principal Man in Greece, that by Claudius was*
 “ *put*

“ put from the Order of Judges, for being ignorant of the
 “ Latin Tongue : And to the same Effect in Valerius Maxi-
 “ mus, l. 2. c. 2. that the Roman Magistrates would not
 “ give Audience to the Grecians (therefore much less to the
 “ barbarous Nations) but in the Latin Tongue. Besides this
 “ there were publick Schools erected in sundry Cities of the Pro-
 “ vinces, which we find mentioned in Tacitus, Hierom, and
 “ others, in which Schools the Roman Tongue was the ordi-
 “ nary and allowed Speech : These Things were no small fur-
 “ therance to that Language. But instead of following these
 “ brave Examples, we, for the Advancement of our Language,
 “ send our Boys and Girls to learn French, a Custom, especially
 “ as it relates to the Female Sex, very ridiculous and nonsensi-
 “ cal ; but of this we may have an Occasion to speak in ano-
 “ ther Place. But to return to our Point.

“ When a Nation is over-spread with several Colonies of
 “ Foreigners, though this does not always prevail to abolish the
 “ former Language, yet if they make any long Abode, this
 “ must needs make such a considerable Change and Mixture
 “ of Speech, as will very much alter it from its original
 “ Purity. Those learned Languages which have now ceased
 “ to be vulgar, and remain only in Books, by which the Pu-
 “ rity of them is regulated, may, whilst those Books are ex-
 “ tant and studied, continue the same without Change. But
 “ all Languages that are vulgar or common, as those learn-
 “ ed ones formerly were, are upon the fore-mentioned Occa-
 “ sions subject to so many Alterations, that, in Tract of Time,
 “ they will appear to be quite another Thing than what they
 “ were at first.

“ The Liturgies of St. Basil, and St. Chrysostom, which
 “ are yet used in the Greek Churches in their publick Wor-
 “ ship, the one for solemn, the other for common Days, have
 “ been a long Time unintelligible to that People ; so much is
 “ the vulgar Greek degenerated from its former Purity.
 “ Brerewood’s Enquiries, c. 2. and 6.

“ And Polybius l. 3. c. 22. testifies, that the Articles of
 “ Truce between the Romans and Carthaginians could scarce
 “ be understood by the most learned Roman Antiquaries 350
 “ Years after the Time of their making. If any English
 “ Man should now write or speak as our Fore-fathers did
 “ about six or seven hundred Years past, we should as little

“ understand him as he would a Foreigner. But I shall now
 “ proceed to give some Specimens of our old Language.
 “ What the Saxon Language was, at their first Arrival into
 “ England about the Year 440, doth not appear ; but it is
 “ most probable that the Changes and Differences of it, have
 “ been somewhat proportionable in several Ages. The most
 “ ancient Saxon that we can meet with, is in the ancient Sax-
 “ on glossed Evangelists, which were wrote about the Year of
 “ Christ 700 *, by Eadfride the eighth Bishop of Lindisfarne,
 “ or Holy-Island ; these Evangelists are divided according to
 “ the ancient Canon of Eusebius, not into Chapters ; for Ste-
 “ phen Langton Archbishop of Canterbury, first divided the
 “ Holy Scriptures into Chapters, about the Year 1200, or
 “ some little Time after ; as Robert Stephens did into Verses,
 “ who lived about the Middle of the 15th Century.

“ But the Rev. Dr. Prideaux, in his valuable and learned
 “ Performance called the Connection of the History of the Old
 “ and New Testament. Part 1st, L. 5. Makes Hugo de Sancto
 “ Caro the Author of this Invention, who being from a Do-
 “ minical Monk advanced to the Dignity of a Cardinal, and
 “ the first of that Order that was so, is commonly called
 “ Hugo Cardinalis. The Psalms indeed were always divided
 “ as at Present. For St. Paul, Acts xiii. 33. in his Sermon
 “ at Antioch in Pisidia, quotes the second Psalm. But as
 “ to the rest of the Holy Scriptures, the Division of them in-
 “ to such Chapters as at Present, is what the Ancients ne-
 “ ver knew of. Balæus Cent. 3. p. 275. The Greek Bibles
 “ among Christians anciently had their *τίτλοι*, and *κεφάλαια*,
 “ but the Intent of them was rather to point out the Sum or
 “ Contents, than to divide the Books ; and they were vastly
 “ different from the present Chapters, for many of them con-
 “ tained only a very few Verses, and some of them no more
 “ than one.

* About the Year of Christ 700. The Latin Text
 may be as old as A. D. 686. But the Interlinear Saxon
 Version, or Dano-Saxon, appears to be no older than King Al-
 fred's Time, and so may be set about 880, and not higher.
 (Vide Wanley's Catalogue, p. 252) This therefore, as a Re-
 verend and Learned Gentleman has observed, cannot well be
 called the most ancient Saxon.

“ The

" *The Saxon is thus,*
 " *Fader uren thu arth or thu bist in heofnum or in heofnas,*
 " *Father our thou art or thou beest in Heaven,*
 " *ſie gehalgud noma thin to cymeth ric thin. Sie willo*
 " *be hallowed Name thine come Kingdom thine. Be Will*
 " *thin ſuae is in heofne and in eorþa. Hlaf uſerne ofer-*
 " *thine as is in Heaven and in Earþ. Bread our over-*
 " *wiſtlic ſel us to-daeg; and forgeſ us Scylda uſra,*
 " *ſubſtantial give us to Day; and forgive us Debts ours,*
 " *ſuae ue forgeſon Scyldgum uſum. And ne inlead uſiþ*
 " *as we forgive Debtor our. And not lead in; us*
 " *in Coſtunge, ah gefrig uſich from Yſle.*
 " *into Temptation, but deliver us from Evil.*

" *The next oldeſt Copy of the Lord's Prayer is the Dano-*
 " *Saxon one, called Ruſhworth's. V. Wanley p. 81. The*
 " *Age is about 900.*

" *Fader ure thu the in heofnum earth. Beo gehalgud*
 " *Father our thou who in Heaven art. Be hallowed*
 " *thin noma. Cume to thine rice, weorþe thin willa*
 " *thine Name. Come thy Kingdom, be done thy will*
 " *ſwa ſwa on heofne ſwile on eorþe. Hlaf uſerne*
 " *as in Heaven as in earth. Bread our*
 " *or ure daeghwamlicu or iſtondenlice ſel us to-daeg and*
 " *our daily hourly give us to Day and*
 " *forlete us ure ſcyld ſwa ſwa we ec forleten thaem the*
 " *forgive us our Debts as we forgive them who*
 " *ſcyldigat with us and ne gelaet us geleade in coſtnungae.*
 " *treſſpaſs againſt us and not let us be led into Temptation.*
 " *Ah geleſe us of Yſle.*
 " *But deliver us from Evil.*

" *About the Year 960, Elfrick, who was made Abbot of*
 " *Malmesbury by King Edgar, thus writeth to one Sigeferth,*
 " *againſt the Marriage of Priests; for one Ancor, who lived*
 " *with Sigeferth defended the Marriage of Priests, affirming*
 " *it to be lawful. The Epistle begins thus,*
 " *Ælfric abb, gret Sigeferth freondlice; me is geſaed that*
 " *thu ſaedeſt be me that ic other taechte on Engliſcen*
 " *gewriten other cower Ancor aet ham med eow taechth;*
 " *forþam the he ſwutelice ſaegþ, that hit ſeo alefd that*
 " *Macſe-preoſtas wel mot wiſygon, and mine gewriten*
 " *withcwetheth*

" withcwetheth thyfen. *That is, Elfrick Abbot, greets Si-*
 " *geferth friendly; me is gefaerd, to me it is said, that thu,*
 " *that thou, faedest be me, readest or speakest by me, that*
 " *ic other taehte, that I other teach, on Engliscen gewriten,*
 " *in my English Writing, other cower Ancor, other or than*
 " *your Ancor, aet ham med eow taeht, at home with you*
 " *teacheth; fortham the he swutelice saegth, for then, or be-*
 " *cause that he soothly saith, that hit seo alefd, that it is al-*
 " *lowed, that Maesse-preostas, that Mafs Priests, wel motan*
 " *wifigon, may take Wives, and mine gewriten and my*
 " *Writings, withcwetheth thyfen, gainseyeth this. Here*
 " *any one may perceive a great many English Words.*

" *And in the Saxon Homilies there is this remarkable Ex-*
 " *pression; whence we may perceive, that Rome, at that*
 " *Time, had not resolved to derive her Church from St. Pe-*
 " *ter. Seint Pouel the is the hegeft Lareow the we hab-*
 " *beth inne haelig Kirk. St. Paul who is the higheft Teacher*
 " *we have in holy Church.*

" *The Charter that William the Conqueror gave to the*
 " *City of London, which was about the Year 1066, ran*
 " *thus;*

" *Williem King, greets Williem Bisceop and Godfred*
 " *Porterefan, and ealle ya Burghwarnbinnen London, Fren-*
 " *cisce & Englise Frendlice, & ic kiden eoy, yeet ic wille*
 " *yeet git ben ealra weera lagayweord, ye get weeran on*
 " *Edwaerds daege kings. And ic will yeet aelc child by*
 " *his Fader Yrfrume, aefter his Faders daege. And ic nelle*
 " *ge wolian, yeet aenig man eoy aenis wrang beode. God*
 " *eoy heald. That is,*

" *William King greets William Bishop, and Godfrey Port-*
 " *greve [Lord Mayor] and all the Burgessees [Citizens] with-*
 " *in London, French and English friendly. And I make*
 " *known to you, that I will that ye be all your Law-worth*
 " *that ye were in Edward's Days the King. And I will that*
 " *each Child be his Father's Heir after his Father's Day.*
 " *And I nill [will not] suffer that any Man you any wrong*
 " *beode [be done]. God you save, or keep.*

" *In the famous Psalter of Trinity College, written, as*
 " *Mr. Wanley judges, in the Time of King Stephen,*
 " *(Wanley,*

" (Wanley, p. 168.) *the Lord's Prayer is thus ; which a learned Doctor places A. D. 1130.*

" Fader ure the art on heofone sy gebletsob name thin,
 " swa swa on heofone and on eorþan breod (hlaf) ure deg-
 " wamlich geof us to daeg, and forgeof us ageltes ura,
 " swa swa we forgeofen agiltendum urum. And ne led
 " us on costunge, ac alys us fram yfele swa beo hit.

" *About the Year 1160 in the Time of King Henry the
 " Second, the Lord's Prayer was rendered thus, and sent
 " over from Rome by Pope Adrian, an English Man, turned
 " into Rhime, that the People might more easly learn and
 " remember it.*

" Ure Fadyr in Heven rich,
 " Thy Name be halyed ever lich,
 " Thou bring us thy michell blisse :
 " Als hit in Heaven y-doe,
 " Evar in Yearth beene it also :
 " That holy Bread that lasteth ay,
 " Thou send it us this ilk Day,
 " Forgive ous all that we have don,
 " As we forgivet uch other Mon :
 " Ne let us fall into no founding,
 " Ac shield ous fro the fowle thing. *Amen.*

" *About a hundred Years after, in the Time of Henry
 " the Third, it was rendered thus,*

" Fadir that art in Heven riche,
 " Thin helge nam it wurth the blifs,
 " Cumenan mot thy Kingdom,
 " Thin holy Will hit be all don,
 " In Heaven and in Erdth also,
 " So sal it bin full well Ic tro.
 " Gif us all Bread on this Day,
 " And forgif us ure Sinnes,
 " As we do ure wider winnes :
 " Let us not in fonding fall,
 " Oac fro ifele thu fyld us all. *Amen.*

" *About*

" *About the Year 1180, the Lord's Prayer was thus,*
 " *as a Learned Gentleman transcribed it from the Manu-*
 " *script in Trin. Coll. the same Manuscript that Mr.*
 " *Wanley gives an Account of, p. 169.*

" The Salm that is cleped Pater-Noster.

" Fader ure Thu ert in Hevene. Bledfed be thi Name.
 " cume thi fixlinge. Wurthe thi wil on Eorthe swo hit is
 " on Hevene. Gif us to dai ure dailgwamliche Bread.
 " And forgive us ure gultes swo we don hem here the us
 " agult habbeth shild us fram elche pine of helle Aeles us of
 " alle ivele. *Amen.* Swo hit wurthe.

About the Year 1250.

" Fadir ur that es in hevene,
 " Halud be thi nam to nevene :
 " Thou do us thi rich rike,
 " Thi will erd be wrought elk :
 " Als it es wrought in heaven ay,
 " Ur ilk-day brede give us to day :
 " Forgive thou all us dettes urs,
 " Als we forgive till ur detturs :
 " And ledde us in na fandiig,
 " But sculd us fra ivel thing.

" *Wickliff's about 1380, Richard II.*

" Oure Fadir that art in Hevenes, halowid be thi Name.
 " Thi Kingdom come to. Be thi will doon in erthe as in
 " hevene. Geve to us this dai our breed over othir sub-
 " stance. And forgeve to us oure dettis as and we for-
 " given to oure dettouris. And lede us not into Temp-
 " tacioun but deliver us from yvel. *Amen.* Evang. Matt. vi.

" *About two hundred Years after this, in the Time of*
 " *Henry VI, (as appears by a large Manuscript Vellum Bi-*
 " *ble in the Oxford Library, said to have been this King's,*
 " *and by him to have been given to the Carthusians in Lon-*
 " *don) it was rendered thus :*

" Our Fadir that art in Hevenes, halewid be thi Name,
 " thi Kingdom come to thee, be thy Will don in Eerthe,
 " as in Hevene, give to us this Day our Breed over othre
 " substanc, and forgive to us oure Dettis, as we forgiven
 " our

our Dettouris, and lede us not into Temptation, but deliver us from iverl. Amen.

In another Manuscript of Wickliffe's Translation, who lived in Richard the II's Time, about the Year 1377, it is rendered with very small Difference from this. And Michael Drayton, in his Polyolb. Cant. 8. hath these Words out of Robert of Gloucester, concerning London's being walled by Lud.

Walls he let make al about, and Yates up and down,
And after Lud that was * is Name he cluped it Luds
(Town ;
The herte Yate of the toun that yout stout ther and is,
He let hie clupie Ludgate after is † o name i wis.
He let him tho' he was ded burie at thulk Yate,
Theruoze yut after him me clupeth it Ludgate.
* is, for his. † o, for own.

I shall here present the Curious Reader with an extraordinary Specimen of the English Language, as it was spoken in the Year 1385, extracted from the late Learned Dr. Hickes's Preface to his Thesaurus Literaturae Septentrionalis, p. 17. and shall now add the Corrections of it as made by a Learned Gentleman, who compared it with the Manuscript in St. John's. (a) As it is knowe how meny maner Peple beeth in this Lond. [Ilond.] There beeth also so many dyvers longages and tonges. Notheles Walsche Men and Scotts that beeth (b) nought medled [imedled] with other Nations, holdeth wel nyh hir firste longage and speche ; but (c) yif the Scottes that were sometime confederat and woned with the Pictes drawe some what after (d) hir speche ; but the Flemynges, that woneth in the weste side of Wales, haveth left [ileft] her strange spech and speketh Saxonliche now. [Saxonliche inow.] Also Englishe Men, they had from the by-gynnyng thre maner speche, Northerne, Sowtherne and middel speche in the middel of the Londe, as they come of thre maner Peple of Germania. Notheles by com-

(a) As it is known. (b) Not mixt. (c) If. (d) Their.
" myxtion

" myxtion and (a) mellynge first with Danes, and afterward
 " with Normans, in meny the contrary [contray] Lon-
 " gage is (b) apayred, and som useth strong (c) wlaſſe-
 " ryng chiterynge hartynge [harrynge] and gartinge [gar-
 " ryng] grisbayting, this (d) apayryng of the burthe of
 " the tunge is bycause of tweie thynges, oon is for chil-
 " dren in ſcole agenſt the uſage and maner of all other Na-
 " tions beeth compelled for to leue hire owne Langage,
 " and for to conſtrue hir leſſons and here thynges in
 " French, and ſo they haveth ſethe [ſeththe] Normans
 " come firſt into Engelond. Alſo Gentlemen Children
 " beeth taught [itaught] to ſpeke Frenſche from the tyme
 " that they beeth rokked [irokked] in here cradel, and (e)
 " kunneth ſpeke and play with a childes (f) broche, and
 " (g) uplondiffche Men wil likne hym ſelf to Gentilmen
 " and (h) fondeth with great beſynneſſe for to ſpeke Frenſche
 " to be (i) told [itold] of.

" (+) Treviſa. This maner was moch uſed [iuſed] to for
 " firſt (k) deth, and is ſithe ſum (l) del changed. [ichanged.]
 " For John Cornwaile a Maiſter of Grammer changed the
 " (m) lore in Grammer ſcole, and conſtruction of Frenche
 " into Engliſche: And Richard Penriche lerned the manere
 " techynge of him as other Men of Penriche. So that
 " now the yere of our Lorde a thouſand thre hundred and
 " fourſcore and fyve, and of the ſeconde Kyng Richard
 " after the Conqueſt nyne, and alle the Gramere ſcoles of

(a) *Mixing, or mingling.* (b) *Spoiled, or corrupted.* (c) *Noiſy talking and chattering, rough, and haſh talking, ſawcy jeſting, a ſkreeking noiſe.* (d) *Impairing.* (e) *Knoweth how.* (f) *A Childs horſe, that is a Hobby-horſe.* (g) *Countrymen.* (h) *Is fond of, or deligheth.* (i) *To be talked of, i. e. to be accounted of.* (+) *Treviſa was the Tranſlator of the Polychronicon of Randal Higden, what you ſee included in the angular Lines is wanting in the Edition of the Polychronicon publiſhed by Dr. Gale.* (k) *Dr. Hickes is miſtaken in his Interpretations of the Words, to for firſt Deth, they mean, before the firſt Mortality, or Plague, in 1349; the ſecond was in 1361. Caxton in his Edition of Treviſa, reads, the grete Deth.* (l) *Deal or Part.* (m) *Learning or Teaching.*

Engelond

“ Engelsond Children lereþ [leueth] (a) Frensche, and con-
 “ strueth, and lerneth Englishe, and haueþ thereby advan-
 “ tage in oon side, and disadvantage in another side.
 “ Here advantage is that they lerneth her Gramer in lasse
 “ tyme, than Children were woned [iwoned] to do :
 “ Disadvantage is that now Children of Gramer Scole
 “ conneth na more Frensche than can hir list heele, and
 “ that is harm for (b) hem, and they schullie passe the
 “ See and Travaille in strange Landes, and in many o-
 “ ther Places. Also Gentilmen havith now moch lefþ
 “ [ileft] for to teche here Children Frensche.]

“ (c) R. Hit seemeth a greet wonder how Englishe Men
 “ and her owne langage and tonge is so dyverse of sown
 “ in this oon ilond, and the langage of Normandie is (d)
 “ comlynge of another lande and hath oon maner soun
 “ amonge alle Men that speketh hit arigt in Engelsond.

“ (†) [Trevisa. Nevertheles there is as many diverse maner
 “ Frensche in the reeme of France, as is dyvers maner Eng-
 “ lische in the reem of Engelsond.]

“ R. Also of the forsaide Saxon tonge that is (e) deled
 “ [ideled] athree, and is abide scarceliche with fewe up-
 “ londische Men is greet wonder. For Men of the Est with
 “ Men of the West is as it were undir the same partie of
 “ hevne accordeth more in (f) sownynge of speche than
 “ Men of the North with Men of South. Therefore it
 “ is that Mercii, that beeth Men of myddel Engelsond
 “ as it were parteners of the endes, understondeth bettre
 “ the side langages Northerne and Southerne, than Nor-
 “ therne or Southerne understondeth either other. W. de
 “ Pont. Lio. 30.

“ (g) All the langage of the Northumbers and speciali-
 “ che at York, is so scharp, flitting, and (h) frotynge and

(a) As is plain from the Manuscript ; the other Reading makes it Nonsense. (b) Them. (c) Ranulphus Higden. (d) Forcing or coming. (†) What you see here included in the Angular Lines is wanting in the Edition of Dr. Gale. (e) Dealed, divided, or parted. (f) Sounding. (g) The Language of the People of Northumberland, especially in Yorkshire is broad and unpolished. (h) Farring, to frote is to rub, from the Saxon freoþan fricare.

“ unſchape that we Southerne Men may that langage un-
 “ nethe underſtonde. I trow that that is bycauſe that they
 “ beeth nyh to ſtrange Men and Nations, that ſpeketh
 “ ſtrangliche, and alſo bycauſe that the Kinges of Engeland
 “ (a) wonneth alwey fer from that Cuntry, for they beeth
 “ more torned to the South Contray. And yif they goeth
 “ to the Northe Contray, they gooth with greet helpe and
 “ ſtrengthe. The cauſe why they beeth more in the South
 “ Contrey than in the North, for it may be better corne
 “ londe, more Peple, more noble Citees, and more profita-
 “ ble havenes.

“ Treviſa's whole Booke concludes thus. God be thonk-
 “ ed of al his nedes this tranſlation is ended [iended] in
 “ a thorsday the eygtenthe [eygethe] day of avril, the
 “ yere of our Lord a thouſand thre hondred four ſcore
 “ and ſevene. The tenthe yere of King Richard the Se-
 “ cond after the Conqueſt of Engelande. The yere of
 “ my Lordes age Sire Thomas of Berkley that made me
 “ make thys tranſlation fyve and thryty.

“ *About the Year 1400, flouriſhed the famous Chaucer,*
 “ *whoſe chief Fault was the mixing too many French and*
 “ *Latin Words with the Engliſh. I ſhall give you a Taſte of*
 “ *his Style, in the Deſcription of the ſudden Stir and Fear*
 “ *that happened upon the Cock's being carried away by a Fox.*

“ The ſely Widowe and her Daughters two
 “ Herde the Hennes crie and make wo,
 “ And at the Dore ſterte they anon,
 “ And ſaw the Fox towarde the Wood gon,
 “ And bare upon his Back the Cocke away,
 “ And cried out Harow and well away.
 “ Aha, the Foxe, and after hem they ran,
 “ And eke with ſtaves many another Man :
 “ Ran, Coll our Dog, Talbot and eke Garlonde,
 “ And Malkin with her Diſtaffe in her Honde.
 “ Ran Cow and Calfe, and eke the very Hogges,
 “ For they ſo ſore aſerde were of the Dogges,

(a) *Dwelleth.*

“ And

" And shouting of Men, and of Women eke,
 " They ran so, her herte thought to breke.
 " They yellen as fendes do in hell:
 " The Duckes cried as Men would them quell.

" *And the Wife of Bath's Tale begins thus :*

" In the old Daies of King *Artoir*,
 " (Of which the *Bretons* speaken great Honour).
 " All was this Lond fulfilled of fairy,
 " The Elfe Quene, with her joly Company,
 " Daunfed full oft in many a grene Mede:
 " This was the old Opinion as I rede.
 " I speake of many an hundred yere ago,
 " But now can no Man se Elfes mo,
 " For now the great Charite and Praieres,
 " Of Limitours and other holy Freres,
 " That serchen every Land, and every streme,
 " As thicke as Motes in the Sunne beme;
 " Blissing hailes, Chambers, Kitchens and Boures,
 " Citees, Borowes, Castelles and hie Toures,
 " Thropes, Bernes, Shepens, and Deiries,
 " This maketh that there been no Fairies.

" *The Liber Festialis, about 1500.*

" Fader eure that arte in hevynes, halowed be thy
 " name, thy gingdome come, thy wyl be doon in erth
 " as it is in hevyn, our every daies brede gyve us to
 " daye, and forgive us our Trespases as we forgyve theym
 " that trespasse agaynste us, and lede us nat in temptacion
 " but delyver us from all evyll.

" *TYNDALE, A. D. 1526.*

" Our Father which art in heaven, halowed be thy
 " name. Let thy kingdom come. Thy will be fulfilled as
 " well in earth as it is in heven. Geve us this daye ur
 " dayly bred and forgeve us oure dettes as we forgeve
 " ur detters. And leade us not into Temptation, but de-
 " lyver

“ lyver us from evyll. For thyne is the kyngdom and the
 “ power and the glorye for ever. *Amen.*

N. B. *This is the first Lord's Prayer with the Doxology
 in the Close, being taken from the Greek ; whereas those
 before were taken from the Latin, which want that Part.*

The ATHANASIAN CREED in old English Verse.

“ Who so wil be sauf to blis *Whosoever will be saved.*
 “ Before alle thinges nede to is
 “ That he hald with alle his miht
 “ The heli trauthe and leue it riht
 “ Whilk bot ilken to queme *Which Faith except.*
 “ Hole and wemles it yheme.
 “ Withouten drede bes thet forn
 “ Fro Godes sight in ai forlorn
 “ Sothelic the heli trauht this isse *The Faith is.*
 “ That o God inne thrinnesse
 “ And thrinness in onnesse
 “ Wurchip we the more and lesse
 “ Ne the hodes oht mengande *Neither confounding.*
 “ Ne the staylnes sondrande
 “ For other hode of Fader other of son *For there's one Person.*
 “ Other of heli goft wil with am wun.
 “ Bot of fadir and son and heli gofte *But the Godhead of*
 “ On is godes toningue that is moste *the Father.*
 “ Heven blis is til am thre
 “ Bi on in mikelhede to be
 “ Whilk the fader whilk the son *Such as the Father.*
 “ Whilk heli goft wil with am wun
 “ Unshapen fader unshapen son is *The Father uncreate.*
 “ Unshapen heli gofte in blis
 “ Mikel fader Mikel son ai *The Father incomprehensible.*
 “ Mikel heli gofte niht and dai.
 “ Ai lastand fader, ai lastand son *The Father eternal.*
 “ Ai lastand heli be uto
 “ And thow he ther noht thre ai lastand *Yet there are
 not three.*
 “ Bot on ai lastand over al land
 “ Als noht thre unmade ne mikel thre *As also they are
 not three.*
 “ But on unmade and on mikel is he

“ Als

- " Als so almihtand fader almihtand son *So likewise the Father.*
 " Almihtand heli goste to wun
 " And thowhether noht almihtand *And yet they are not three.*
 " Bot on almihtand is licand
 " Als so God fader God sone isse *The Father is God.*
 " God hali gost with am in Blis
 " And thowhether noht godes thre *Yet they are not three.*
 " Bot on is god and ai sal he
 " For als sengelic hode god our louerde to be *So likewise*
 " Thurght cristen sothenes lette sal he *the Father.*
 " So thre godes or louerdes to kall *And yet not three.*
 " Thurght heli festnes forboden ar all.
 " The fadir of non made is be *The Father is made*
 " Ne shapen ne kumed to he *of none.*
 " The sone of only fader blis *The Son is.*
 " Noht shapen ne made but kumed is
 " The heli goste of fadir and son mihtand *The Holy Ghost.*
 " Noht shapen ne made bot forth comand
 " Then o fadir noht fadres thre *Is one father.*
 " O son noht thre sones to be
 " O heli gost and no mo
 " Of tham comand ne thre no two
 " And this thrinnes thet with inne *And in this Trinity.*
 " Noght first or latter noht more or minne
 " Bot al thre persones lastand ai
 " To tham end evenmette are thai
 " So that bi alle als bifore saide is *So that in all things.*
 " And thrinnes in onnes
 " And onneffe in thrinnes ai
 " We to wurschip niht and dai
 " Who that then wil berihed be *He therefore that.*
 " So of the thrinnes leue he
 " And nede at hele that last ai sal *Furthermore.*
 " That the fleschede ai with al
 " Of our louerd Thu Crist forthi
 " That he trowe it trewli
 " Then is ever traethe right *For the right.*
 " That we leue withalle oure miht
 " That oure loverd Jhu Crist in blis
 " Godes sone and man he is

The PREFACE.

" Gode of kinde of fadir kumed world biforn *God of the*
 " Man of kinde of moder into world born *Substance.*
 " Full: god fulli man livand : *Perfect God.*
 " Of schilful Saul and mannes fleshe beand
 " Even to the fadir thurght god hede : *Equal to the Father.*
 " Lesse then fader thurght man hede,
 " That thof he be god and man : *Who although.*
 " Noht two thowwhether is bot Crist an
 " On noht thurght wendinge of godhed in fleshe *One not*
 " Bot thurght takynge of manhede in godneshe *by.*
 " On al noht be menginge of staylnes
 " Bot thurght onhede of hode that is
 " That yholed for oure hele down went til helle *Who suf-*
 " The thred dai ros fro dede so felle *fered.*
 " Upstegh til heven sittes on right hand. *He ascended.*
 " Of god fadir alle miyhtand
 " And yhit for to come is he
 " To deme the quik and dede that be
 " Ate whos come alle men that are *At whose coming.*
 " Sal rise with thaire bodies thare
 " And thelde sal thai nil thai ne wil
 " Of thair awen dedes il
 " And that wel haf down that dai : *And they that have*
 " Sal go to lif that lastes ai *done Good.*
 " And iuel haf down sal wende
 " In fire lastend withouten ende
 " This is the trauht that heli isse. *This is the Truth.*
 " Whilk bot ilkon with miht hisse
 " Trewlic and fastlic trowe he
 " Sauße ne mai he never be.

" In a Bible set forth with the King's License, translated
 " by Thomas Mathews, and printed in the Year 1537, the
 " Lord's Prayer is rendered thus,

" O oure Father which arte in Heven, halowed be thy
 " Name. Let thy Kingdome come. Thy Will be fulfilled,
 " as well in Erth, as it is in Heven. Geve us this daye
 " oure dayly bred. And forgeve us our Trespases, even
 " as we forgeve oure Trespacers. And lead us not into
 " Temptacion, but deliver us from evyl. *Amen.*

" We

“ We shall now present the Reader with a Passage or two,
 “ out of Gawin Douglas Bishop of Dunkel, who flourished
 “ in the fourteenth and fifteenth Centuries. And though some
 “ Persons may blame me, that in producing Specimens of the
 “ Alteration of the English Tongue, I quote a Scotch Au-
 “ thor ; yet if those Persons will give themselves the Trouble
 “ of considering him more heedfully, they will perceive that
 “ his Language, if it be not old English, is very near a-kin
 “ to it ; and Sir David Lindsay, in his Prologue of the Com-
 “ plaint of Papingo, published at Edinburgh, 1592, seems
 “ to be of this Opinion ; for speaking of this Author, he has
 “ these Expressions,

“ Alace for ane, quhilk Lamp was in this Land,
 “ Of Eloquence the flow and balmy Strand ;
 “ And in our Inglis [*English*] Rhetorick the Rose,
 “ As of Rubeis the Carbunckle bin chose,
 “ And as Phebus dois Cynthia precel,
 “ So Gawin Douglas Bishop of Dunkell.

“ And since I have cited this Testimony of Sir David
 “ Lindsay, concerning the Bishop ; I shall give you one more,
 “ and the rather, because it relates to my present Design,
 “ and has not been mentioned by the Publishers of the last
 “ Edition of this Author : And it is that of William Lisle
 “ Esq; in his Preface to a Saxon Treatise De veteri & novo
 “ Testamento. Ed. Lond. 1623. I lighted on Virgil Scottished
 “ by the Reverend Gawin Douglas, Bishop of Dunkel, and
 “ Uncle to the Earl of Angus, the best Translation of that
 “ Poet that ever I read : And though I found that Dialect
 “ more hard than any of the former (as nearer the Saxon,
 “ because farther from the Norman) yet with help of the
 “ Latin, I made shift to understand it, and read the Book
 “ more than once, from the Beginning to the End ; whereby
 “ I must confess I got more Knowledge of that I sought,
 “ than by any of the other : For as at the Saxon Invasion
 “ many of the Saxons fled into Scotland, preserving in that
 “ Realm unconquered, as the Line Royal, so also the Lan-
 “ guage,

" guage, better than the Inhabitants here, under Conquerours Law and Custom, were able.

" Thus far Mr. Lisle. We shall now come to our good Bishop. His Conclusion to the Translation of Virgil, is in these Words.

" Thus up my Pen and Instrumentis full zore,
 " On Virgillis Post I fix for euermore!
 " Neuir from thens sic matteris to discrinue:
 " My Muse sal now be clene contemplatiue,
 " And solitare, as doith the Bird in Cage;
 " Sen fer by worn all is my chyldis age,
 " And of my Day is nere passit the half date,
 " That Nature suld me granting, weill I wate.
 " Thus sen I feile down sweyand the ballance,
 " Here I resigne up zoungkeris obseruance,
 " And wyl derek my labouris euermoir,
 " Vnto the commoun welth and Goddis gloir.
 " A dew, gud readeris, God gif zou al gud nycht,
 " And estir deith grant vs his hevinly lycht.

" These Verses need no Explanation, since with a little Change of a few Letters they will appear to be clean English. But however I will explain a Word or two; zore ready; sic, such Matters to describe; sen, since far outworn; suld, should; sweyand, swaying down; inclining, weighing; zoungkeris, young Men; z, being frequently used among the old Writers, and especially in this Author, for y. I shall add a few Verses more, wherein he desires that neither his Rhyme nor Words may be changed.

" Ze Writaris al, and gentle Readaris eik,
 " Offendis not my Volume, I beseik,
 " Bot rede lele, and tak gude tent in tyme,
 " Ze nouthir magil, nor mismeter my Ryme,
 " Nor alter not my Wourdis, I zou pray:
 " Lo this is all, * bew schirris, have gude day.

* Bew Schirris. Good Sirs.

" *In the fifteenth Century lived the famous Edmond Spenser, whose Character has been already given : We will likewise present you with the 28th and 29th Stanza's of the 9th Canto of his Fairy Queen, B. 1. concerning Despair, for which Sir Philip Sydney gave him 200 Pounds ; and so conclude this Head.*

" From whom returning sad and comfortless,
 " As on the Way together we did fare,
 " We met the Villain (God from him me blefs)
 " That cursed Wight, from whom I scap't whyl'ere,
 " A Man of Hell, that calls himself *Despair*,
 " Who first us greets, and after fair areeds
 " Of Tydings strange, and of Adventures rare ;
 " So creeping close, as Snake in hidden Weeds,
 " Inquireth of our States and Knightly deeds.
 " Which when he knew, and felt our feeble Hearts,
 " Embost with Bale, and bitter byting Grief,
 " Which Love had launced with his deadly Darts,
 " With wounding Words and Terms of foul reproof,
 " He pluckt from us all Hope of due Relief,
 " That earst us held in love of lingring Life ;
 " The hopeless, hartless, gan the cunning Thief
 " Perswade to die, to stint all further Strife,
 " To me he lent this Rope, to him a rusty Knife.
 " With which sad Instrument of hasty Death,
 " That woful Lover, loathing lenger Light,
 " A wide Way made to let forth living Breath.
 " But I more fearful, or more lucky Wight,
 " Dismay'd with that deformed dismal Sight ;
 " Fled fast away, half dead with dying fear, &c.

" *I should now proceed to give some Instances of the Change of our Language from Shakespear, Ben. Johnson, my Lord Bacon, Milton, Waller, Cowley, &c. But they being Books that are almost in every Bodies Hands, and my Preface beginning already to swell, I shall defer it to a more convenient Opportunity. I shall therefore endeavour to answer an Objection that is made against our Tongue, that it is made up of too many Monosyllables : But this is a Proof of its Antiquity, if what Salmasius says be true,*
 " Certum

" Certum quippe est, linguas omnes quæ Monosyllabis con-
 " stant esse caeteris Antiquiores. Multis abundavit Mono-
 " syllabis Antiqua Græca, cujus vestigia, apud Poetas qui
 " Antiquitatem affectârunt, remansere non pauca. *De Re*
 " *Hellenisticâ*, p. 390. *For it is certain, that all those Lan-*
 " *guages which consist of Monosyllables are ancients than*
 " *the others; the Greek Tongue abounded in Monosyllables,*
 " *of which there remain many Instances among the ancient*
 " *Greek Poets. And indeed we have this Advantage from*
 " *our Monosyllables, or Words of one Syllable, that we can*
 " *express more Matter in fewer Words than any other Lan-*
 " *guage whatever; and though the Monosyllables are not so fit*
 " *for Numbers, yet that Happiness of Composition, which*
 " *is peculiar to our Language with the Greek, makes our*
 " *Poetry as musical and harmonious as that of any Nation*
 " *in the World. And Mr. Dennis, who is a very good Judge,*
 " *says, the English is more strong, more full, more sound-*
 " *ing, more significant, and more harmonious than the French.*
 " *I know, says he, very well that a great many will be un-*
 " *willing to allow the last; but he alledges this as a convin-*
 " *cing Proof of it, that we have Blank Verse which is not*
 " *inharmonious, and the French pretend to no Poetical Num-*
 " *bers, without the Assistance of Rhime. And the Learned*
 " *and Ingenious Mrs. Elstob has given Variety of Instances*
 " *from our own Poets, which sufficiently prove that there is*
 " *a secret Sweetness and Harmony in Verses made up of Mo-*
 " *nosyllables artfully placed. Preface to her Saxon Gram-*
 " *mar, p. 13. I shall give three Examples as brought by*
 " *that Lady from Mr. Dryden.*

" Arms and the Man I sing who forc'd by Fate.

" From Mr. Creech.

" Nor could the World have born so fierce a Flame.

" From Sir John Denham's Coopers-Hill.

" Tho' deep yet clear; tho' gentle yet not dull,

" Strong without rage, without o'er flowing full.

" And indeed there are no Subjects but what may be no-
 " bly and beautifully clothed in an English Dress; for our
 " Language has whatever is necessary to the making a Lan-
 " guage compleat; for it is Significant, Easy, Copious, and
 " Sweet.

“ Sweet. But we must not enlarge on these Matters. I
 “ will however trespass a little more on your Patience, and
 “ give you a Specimen of the Copiousness of our Language
 “ in these two Words, Anger and Striking. Anger; to ex-
 “ press which Passion, we use these following Words, Wrath,
 “ Passion, Passionate, Sharpness, Rage, Fury, Out-rage, Pet,
 “ Choler, Gaul, Fume, Stom, Fret, Pelt, Chase, Vex, Take-
 “ on, Inflame, Kindle, Irritate, Inrage, Exasperate, Incense,
 “ Provoke, Move, Sullen, Hasty, Furious, Outragious,
 “ Mad, Look big, Placable, Appease, Stomach, Animosity,
 “ Heart-burning, Rough, Hot, Snappish, Curst, Snarle,
 “ Snuffle, &c. So for the Word, Striking, we use Smite,
 “ Bang, Beat, Bast, Buffet, Cuff, Dash, Hit, Swinge,
 “ Thump, Thwack, Blow, Stripe, Slap, Flap. Rap,
 “ Tap, Kick, Wince, Spurn, Bob, Box, Fillip, Whirret,
 “ Yerke, Pummel, Punch, Rebuff, Percussion, Repercussio-
 “ on, Collision, &c. So we say to Seeth, or boil Broth,
 “ to stew Prunes, poche Eggs, coddle Apples, bake Bread,
 “ for which Expressions to seeth, stew, poche, coddle, bake,
 “ the Latins have only the Word Coquere, for Pinfere is
 “ neither to make Bread nor bake it. In pistrino autem
 “ pinfuntur farta, uti prodeat farina, unde Panes confiant
 “ in furno, quo sint esui demum coquendi; as our learned
 “ Gataker hath rightly observed.

“ The word Clear has these different Senses. Clear may
 “ signify, 1. Entire of it self; so it is wholly; as I am
 “ clearly of your Mind. 2. Not mingled with others; so
 “ it is, Simple; as clear Wine, i. e. without any Mixture
 “ of Water; especially, not with worse, and then it is pure,
 “ as clear or pure Wine, i. e. nought but Wine and Wine.
 “ A clear Understanding, i. e. A good Understanding. A
 “ clear Sight, i. e. A good Sight. A clear Wit, i. e. spright-
 “ ly, lively. Clear of Sickness or Pain, i. e. Without Sick-
 “ ness, without Pain. A clear Skin, i. e. Beautiful. A clear
 “ Reputation, i. e. a good one. Clear dealing, i. e. frank, open
 “ dealing. Clear Weather, Sky, or Water, i. e. Lightsome,
 “ fair, bright. Clear Glass, i. e. Transparent, that may soon be
 “ seen through. A clear Sound, that may be heard well. Clear
 “ of any Disease, i. e. Not infected, or not diseased. A clear
 “ Estate, i. e. Not in Debt. Clear of any Crime, i. e. Not
 “ guilty. A clear Conscience, i. e. Free from Guilt. A clear
 “ Coast,

“ Coast, *i. e.* Free from the Enemy. Clear of any Censure,
 “ *i. e.* Not under any Censure. Not hindered from being
 “ done, then Clear is Easy. Not hindered from being
 “ known, then Clear is plain, manifest. Not hindered from
 “ being come to, or passed through, then Clear is what
 “ may be easily come to, or passed through, as a clear Way,
 “ a clear Passage, &c.

“ As for the Ambiguity and unfixed Sense of Words, by
 “ reason of Metaphor and Phraseology, this is in all insti-
 “ tuted Languages, so obvious and so various, that it is
 “ needless to give any Instances of it; every Language ha-
 “ ving some peculiar Phrases belonging to it, which if they
 “ were to be translated Verbatim, or Word by Word into ano-
 “ ther Tongue, would seem wild and insignificant; with which
 “ our English Tongue doth too much abound; witness those
 “ Words of Break, Bring, Cast, Clear, Come, Cut, Draw,
 “ Fall, Hand, Keep, Lay, Make, Pass, Put, Run, Set, Stand,
 “ Take, none of which have less than thirty or forty, and
 “ some of them about a hundred several Senses, according
 “ to their Use in Phrases, as may be seen in the Dictionary,
 “ wrote by the Right Reverend Father in God, Dr. William
 “ Lloyd, the late Bishop of Worcester (which is to be
 “ met with at the End of Bishop Wilkin’s Real Character,)
 “ it being the best English Dictionary that was ever publish-
 “ ed; and with which, if I should ever have any Leisure, I
 “ may some Time or another present the World, in a more
 “ familiar Dress for the sake of common Readers. But
 “ though the Varieties in Language may seem to contribute to
 “ the Elegance and Ornament of Speech; yet like other af-
 “ fected Ornaments, they prejudice the native Simplicity of
 “ it, and contribute to the disguising of it with false Ap-
 “ pearances; besides that, like other Things of fashion, they
 “ are very changeable, every Generation producing new ones;
 “ witness the present Age, especially the late Times, wherein
 “ this grand Imposture of Phrases hath almost eaten out so-
 “ lid Knowledge in all Professions; such Men being of most
 “ Esteem who are skilled in these canting Forms of Speech,
 “ though in nothing else. And from this Consideration of the
 “ several Significations of English Words, we may observe
 “ how necessary and useful it would be that our Youth be
 “ rightly instructed in the Knowledge of their own Language,
 “ together

“ together with that of the Latin and Greek, since it will be
 “ somewhat hard for a Laid to translate English into Latin,
 “ if he be not acquainted with the Sense of the English. It
 “ may also be worthy our Enquiry how far the Learning the
 “ Principles of Grammar in English, and explaining them
 “ by familiar English Examples, (as far as the Thing will
 “ bear) would conduce to a better, clearer and quicker Un-
 “ derstanding of Grammar, English and Latin. They might
 “ likewise, at the same Time, be admitted to an Acquain-
 “ tance with Abundance of useful Things; which would ren-
 “ der the Study of Words far more easie and pleasant; and
 “ the Terms of Grammar, as they are the most simple, so
 “ are they the most easie of any other to be understood; for
 “ there is no Child, (I was going to say of five or six Years
 “ of Age, and then I should not have exceeded the Truth,
 “ but I am sure of seven or eight,) but what would be able
 “ to understand the Terms, provided they were familiarly
 “ explained to their Capacities: For in this Case the kind
 “ condescending Master will part with his logical Definition
 “ for a plain Description of the Term. This is what I have
 “ often experienced in hundreds of Children, both when I was
 “ Assistant for several Years to a very * great Master in the
 “ Art of Teaching, and since; and can assure you that I
 “ have known a Child as well pleased with being taught af-
 “ ter this Manner, as with his Play; and I never met with
 “ a Child yet, but who counted it a Complement paid to his
 “ Understanding, to be asked the Meaning of Things; and to
 “ say that they are not capable till such an Age of appre-
 “ hending these Things, is to throw a Slur upon human Un-
 “ derstanding, and the Art it self.

“ But these are only Hints, all which I humbly submit to
 “ the Consideration of the more learned and judicious Instru-
 “ ctors of Youth. And it is Time to return to Dr. Wallis,
 “ and give Reasons for undertaking this Work.

“ The Reason of my undertaking this Grammar was, that
 “ Foreigners might be assisted to understand our Language,
 “ and read the many excellent Books which have been written

* Mr. Benj. Morland F. R. S. and the present worthy
 High-Master of St. Paul's-School.

“ in it, upon all Sorts of Subjects ; especially our Books of
 “ Practical Divinity, for which our Divines have acquired
 “ more Fame throughout the Northern Countries of Europe,
 “ than either the Natives of those Places, or any of the mo-
 “ dern French Divines, whether they are Reformed or Popishi.
 “ And I am of Mr. Dennis’s Opinion, that our Language,
 “ by Reason of the Dependance it has upon the Saxon, is not
 “ very difficult to be learnt by the People of the Northern
 “ Countries, and many of their Clergy have learnt enough
 “ of it, to make Advantage of our Ecclesiastical Writings ;
 “ to which the learned Dr. Hickes agrees, as will appear by
 “ the following Scheme of the Northern Languages, as they
 “ depend one upon another.

Gothick.		
Anglo-Saxon.	Frank.	Cimbrick, or Cimbri Gothick.
Dutch, Frisain, English, Scotch.	German.	Islandish, Nor- wegian, Swedish, Danish.

But as many Foreigners are desirous to understand our Language, so some of them complain of the very great Difficulty that there is in learning it : And what I the more wonder at, some of our own Countrymen have entertained this Notion, imagining it to be strangely puzzling and perplexed, and that it is not easily reducible to Grammar Rules. And hence both the Teachers and Learners of the Language, setting about this Work, for the most Part, in a confused and disorderly Manner, it is no wonder they should meet with so much Difficulty and Uneasiness in it : To remedy which Inconvenience, I have undertaken to reduce our Language, which is naturally very easy, to a few short Rules, by which the Language may be rendered more easy to be learnt by Foreigners ; and our
 Countrymen

Countrymen may more clearly perceive the Reason and Genius of their Native Tongue.

I am not ignorant that several Persons have undertaken this Work before me; whose Performances are by no means to be undervalued; namely, Dr. Gill, Master of St. Paul's School, who wrote in Latin; Ben. Johnson the Poet in English; and Henry Hexham in Dutch. But none of these have, in my Opinion, taken the right Method; for all of them forcing our English Tongue too much to the Latin Method (into which Errour almost all who have wrote Grammars of the modern Languages have fallen) have delivered many useless Precepts concerning the Cases, Genders, and Declensions of Nouns; the Tenses, Moods and Conjugations of Verbs, and other such like Things, which our Language hath nothing at all to do with; which Things tend only to confound and perplex Matters, rather than clear and explain them.

And upon this Account I have been obliged to pursue a quite different Method, neglecting the Latin Way, and keeping close to what the particular Nature of our Tongue required; for the Syntax, or Construction of the Noun, is chiefly performed by the Help of certain Words called Propositions, and the Conjugation being easily managed by the Aid of certain Words called Auxiliary, or helping Verbs, that Matter is performed with the greatest Ease imaginable, that uses to create so much Trouble in other Languages.

There are, indeed, in the Latin Tongue, some Words both Substantive and Adjective, which are Aptotes, that is, are undeclined, or do not change their Ending; such are pondo, nihil, instar, fat, (used as a Substantive) frugi, nequam, praeſto, &c. yet they are supposed to have Genders and Cases like other Nouns, although they remain the same (that is, do not change their Ending) in all the Cases and Genders: Now if all the Latin Nouns, as well Substantives as Adjectives, did admit of no Change in their Ending, we should without doubt have heard nothing of the Cases and Genders of Nouns; and a great many of those Rules which are now necessarily laid down in the Latin Syntax, would then have been useless, and would have found no Room there: And the same Thing also would have happened to the various Formation of the Moods and Tenses of Verbs, if all the Tenses of the same Verb in

each Voice, (Active and Passive) were to be expressed only by Circumlocution, as it is in some Tenses of the Passive Voice. Since, therefore, in our Language Things are quite otherwise than in the Latin, where we seldom change the Endings of our Nouns, and express almost all the Tenses by Circumlocutions; what Ground or Foundation can we have to introduce into our Language, without any Manner of Necessity, a feigned and foolish Medley of Cases, Genders, Moods, Tenses, &c. We have however retained the Terms of Art, as received among the Latins, although they may not all of them be, in every Respect, quite so well adapted to our Tongue; and the Reason why I used them, was because their Significations are pretty well known, and I would not make any unnecessary Innovations.

Of the Pro-
nunciation. “ The learned and judicious Dr. Wallis has
“ endeavoured to explain the Sound of Let-
“ ters, after the same Manner as most other

“ Grammarians have done; namely, by com-
“ paring the like Sounds of other Tongues with those of our
“ own; as for Example, when he says our English e is pro-
“ nounced like the French e Masculine. But as this might
“ seem to our Countrymen the Explaining of an unknown
“ Thing, by what is yet more so; and the Doctor designing
“ those Rules of his, concerning the Pronunciation chiefly for
“ Foreigners; I have for this Reason thrown some of his Text
“ among the Notes.

“ And the Doctor to obviate this Objection, has wrote an
“ admirable Treatise of Speech, wherein he doth very dis-
“ tinctly lay down the Manner of Forming all Sounds of
“ Letters usual in Speech, as well of the English, as of other
“ Languages. And the Doctor says, that being prepared by
“ this Treatise, he had taught not only several of our Coun-
“ trymen, who stuttered extreamly, and who were not able to
“ pronounce some Letters, to speak distinctly and readily; but
“ he likewise caused several Foreigners, that complained of
“ the difficult Sound of some of our Letters, to pronounce
“ them easily, and without any Trouble; by directing them
“ to apply their Tongue, Lips, and other Organs of Speech,
“ to such Postures and Motions as are proper for the For-
“ mation of such and such Sounds. He taught also two Per-
“ sons

“ sons who were Dumb (because Deaf) not only to read
“ English distinctly, but to pronounce the most difficult Words
“ of other Languages, which Foreigners proposed to them ;
“ and they were likewise able to express their Minds, and
“ could understand Letters written to them, and write An-
“ swers. But I shall refer the curious Reader to the Doc-
“ tor's own Account.

“ But we shall conclude this long Preface with these Words
“ of Dr. Wallis, ” If there be any Persons who shall judge
that this Performance, whatever it be, might have been as
well let alone, (thinking the Knowledge of their Native Tongue
to be of little Worth) let them take this along with them ;
that though there are many Things, the Knowledge of which
may not deserve any great Praise, yet it is a very shameful
thing to be ignorant of them.



BOOKS lately printed for A. Bettefworth.

I. **T**HE Entertaining Novels of Mrs. Jane Barker. Containing, 1. Exilius : Or, The Banish'd Roman. 2. Clelia and Marcellus : Or, The Constant Lovers. 3. The Reward of Virtue : Or, The Adventures of Clarinthia and Lysander. 4. The Lucky Escape : Or, The Fate of Ismenus. 5. Clodius and Scipiana : Or, The Beautiful Captive. 6. Piso : Or, The Leud Courtier. 7. The Happy Recluse : Or, The Charms of Liberty. 8. The Fair Widow : Or, False Friend. 9. The Amours of Bosvill and Galefia. The 2d Edition. In 2 Vols. Price 5 s.

II. A Patchwork Screen for the Ladies : Or, Love and Virtue recommended, in a Collection of Instructive Novels, related after a Manner intirely New, and interspers'd with Rural Poems, describing the Innocence of a Country Life. Price 2 s. 6d.

III. A Lining for the Patchwork Screen : Designed for the farther Entertainment of the Ladies. Price 2 s. 6d. These Two by Mrs. Barker.

IV. The Life of Charlotta du Pont, an English Lady, taken from her own Memoirs : Giving an Account how she was trappann'd by her Step-Mother to Virginia ; how the Ship was taken by some Madagascar Pyrates, and retaken by a Spanish Man of War ; of her Marriage in the Spanish West-Indies, and Adventures while she resided there, with her return to England ; and the History of several Gentlemen and Ladies whom she met withal in her Travels, some of whom had been Slaves in Barbary, and others cast on Shore on the Barbarous Coasts up the great River Oroonoque ; with their Escape thence, and safe Return to France and Spain. A History that contains the greatest Variety of Events ever yet publish'd. By Mrs. Aubin. Price 2 s.

V. The Tragical History of the Chevalier de Vaudray and the Countess de Vergi. In Two Parts. To which is annex'd a short Novel, intitled, The Inhuman Husband. Done from the French by Mr. Morgan. Price 2 s.

T H E

THE
English Grammar.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

MAN, although he has a great Variety of Thoughts, and they are such by which others, as well as himself, might be Profited and Delighted ; yet they are all within his own Breast, invisible and hidden from others, nor can of themselves be made to appear. The Comfort and Advantage of Society, not being to be had without Communication of Thoughts ; it was necessary that Man should find out some external or *outward* sensible Signs, whereby those invisible Ideas or Notions, which his Thoughts are made up of, might be made known to others. For this Purpose nothing was so fit, either for Plenty or Quickness, as those Articulate Sounds, called *Words*, which with so much Ease and Variety he found himself able to make. The Intentions of Men in Speaking are, or at least should be, to be

be understood; which cannot be, where Men do not use their Words according to the Propriety of the Language in which they speak; for Propriety of Speech is that which gives our Thoughts Entrance into other Mens Minds with the greatest Ease and Advantage; and therefore deserves some Part of our Care and Study. Wherefore those Persons, who are desirous to speak or write clearly and correctly in any Language, ought to study *Grammar*.

Note, Articulate Sounds are such as may be express'd by Letters. *Inarticulate Sounds* are such as cannot be well express'd by Letters, as *Hissing, Coughing, Groaning, Laughing, &c.* Of *Articulate Words* there are two Sorts; one Sort that denotes or signifies some Person or Thing; and another Sort that has no Signification or Meaning at all; as *Scindapsus, Blictri, Lirum, Larum, Screlum, Scraulum, &c.* where there is nothing but Sound.

C H A P. I.

Of Grammar, and its Parts.

* *Grammar* is the Art of Speaking and Writing truly and properly.

Grammar may be distinguished into two Kinds,
 1. *Natural and General.* 2. *Instituted and Particular.*

1. *Natural Grammar*, (which may likewise be stiled *Philosophical, Rational, and Universal*) should contain all such Grounds and Rules as do naturally and necessarily belong to the Philosophy of Letters and Speech in general.

2. *Instituted and Particular Grammar*, doth deliver the Rules which are proper and peculiar to any one Language in Particular. Wherefore Dr. Wallis justly finds Fault with our

our *English* Grammarians; where he says, All of them forcing our *English Tongue* too much to the *Latin Method*, have delivered many useless Precepts concerning Cases, Genders, and Declensions of Nouns; the Tenses, Moods, and Conjugations of Verbs; as also the Government of Nouns and Verbs, and other such like Things, which our Language hath nothing at all to do with.

* There are four Parts of Grammar.

Orthography,
Syntax,

Etymology,
Prosody.

Note. For since *Speech* consists or is made up of *Words*, a *Word* of *Syllables*, and a *Syllable* of *Letters*: We may divide Grammar into four Parts.

1. That Part which treats of *Letters*, or of the most convenient and proper *Marks* or *Sounds* for the Expression of *Words*; whether by Writing, called *Orthography*, or by *Speech* called *Orthoepy*, which ought to have been reckoned as a Part of *Grammar* before *Orthography*, since *Speech* preceeds *Writing*.

2. That Part which relates to *Syllables*, and treats of their true Pronunciation in observing due *Accent* and *Time*, called *Prosody*.

3. That Part which relates to *Words*, and treats of their Kinds, their Derivation, their Endings, Changes, their Analogy, or Likeness to one another in any Language, called *Etymology*.

4. That Part which treats of the *right* Placing or Joining of *Words* together in a Sentence, called *Syntax*; and this Part is the End of *Grammar*. For to what purpose is it to have *Words*, if we do not join them together? and yet this is not sufficient, unless we rightly join them, that is, as the best Speakers used to do; for Example, *A Stone the Parrot the Boy with killed*: Here are *Words* joined together, but here is no *Syntax*; that is, there is no *right Joining* of them; for the best Speakers would thus join them, *The Boy killed the Parrot with a Stone*.

The

The Ends of Language in our Discourse with others are chiefly these three. *First*, To make known our Thoughts or Idea's to one another. *Secondly*, To do it with as much Ease and Quickness as is possible. And, *Thirdly*, Thereby to convey the Knowledge of Things. Language is either abused or deficient when it fails of any of these Three.

Questions relating to the first Chapter.

Q. What is Art ?

A. Art is a Method or Way of doing any Thing well.

Q. What do you learn Grammar for ?

A. To learn to speak and write truly and properly.

Q. What do you mean by speaking and writing truly and properly ?

A. Speaking and Writing after the Custom of the best Speakers and Writers.

Q. What are those Sounds called, which Men frame or make in Speaking ?

A. Words.

Q. What does Grammar treat of ?

A. Words.

Q. What is the End or Design of Speech ?

A. To declare our Meaning; or convey the Thoughts of our Minds from one to another.

Q. What is English ?

A. A Language or Tongue which the People of England speak.

Q. What is English Grammar ?

A. English Grammar, is the *Art* of speaking and writing *English* truly and properly.

Q. When does a Man speak and write English truly and properly ?

A. When he speaks according to the Custom or Use of the best Speakers.

I shall endeavour to explain what I mean by the Use or Custom of the best Speakers, in the Translation of an Elegant Passage out of *Quintilian*, a judicious Roman Author, l. 1. c. 6. " We ought to determine in the first Place, says he, what we mean by that we call Custom; which if it should take its Name from the Practice of the Majority,

" will

will have a very dangerous and bad Influence, not only upon Speech, but what is of greater Importance, upon Life. Whence can we expect so great a Good, that those Things which are right should please the Majority? Therefore, as effeminately to smoothe the Body, to curl the Hair, and to tipple in the Baths; though these are Things that have prevailed in this City, yet they are not reckoned as Customs, because there is none of these Actions but what are blameable and deserve our Reproof; but we wash, we shave, and we live, or eat and drink together, according to Custom: So likewise in Discourse, if there be any Thing that has corruptly prevailed among the Multitude, we must not receive or embrace that for the Rule or Standard of Speech. For we know that whole *Theaters*, and all the Company of the **Circus*, have oftentimes declared their Satisfaction or Dislike in the same barbarous Expressions with those of the ignorant Multitude: I shall therefore call the Custom of Speech, the Agreement of the Learned, as that of Life, the Agreement, or Practice of the Good. *A. Gellius*, does likewise rightly distinguish between the Use of the Vulgar, and that of the Learned, l. 1. c. 7.

Q. What is Latin?

A. The Language which the Romans spoke.

Q. Is there any real Difference between the Words Language and Tongue?

A. No.

I know the Objection generally made against calling the *English* a *Language*, is because it is but a Branch of some other: But this Objection seems to be of no Force; for the Dispute turns upon the Use of the Words *Language* and *Tongue*, which we use indifferently one for the other. Nay, we translate *Lingua Matrices*, the Mother Tongues; though if you had rather say the *Mother Languages*, I shall not be angry. The whole Dispute is trifling, and did not deserve this Note; but People must be pleased.

* The Circus was a large Place in Rome, where the People sat to see Horse-Races, and other Publick Shows.

Q. How

Q. How many Parts of Grammar are there?

A. Four, * viz. Orthography or Orthoepey, Etymology, Prosody, Syntax.

Q. What is Orthography?

A. Orthography, is the Art of true Writing, or that Part of Grammar which teaches us how to write every Word with proper Letters. It comes from the Greek Words *Orthos* right, and *Graphe* Writing. For Example, we must write, *Bishop*, not *Bushop*; so *did*, *foot*, *might*, *neither*, *frumenty*; not *dud*, *fut*, *mought* or *med*, *nother*, *furmity*.

Q. What is Orthoepey?

A. Orthoepey, is the Art of True Speaking, and gives Rules for the right Pronouncing of Letters, from *Orthos*, right, and *Epos* a Word. For Example, We must not pronounce *stomp*, *shet*, *sarvice*, *tunder*, *gove*, *eend*, *ommost*; but *stamp*, *shut*, *service*, *tinder*, *gave*, *end*, *almost*.

The Difference between Orthography and Orthoepey is, that the former relates to the True Writing of Words, and the latter to the Right Pronouncing of them. Wherefore Teachers ought to take great Care that their Scholars speak out their Words clearly and distinctly, and observe what Impediments of Speech they labour under, and what Letters they are which the Scholars are less able to pronounce; and so shew them how to mend those Defects, by directing them to apply their Tongue, Lips, and other Organs of Speech, to such Postures and Motions, as are proper for the Formation of such Sounds or Letters.

Q. What is Etymology?

A. It is that Part of Grammar which teaches you what belongs to each Part of Speech. It comes from *etymos*, true, & *logos*, Speech.

Q. What is Syntax?

A. It is a right Joining of Words in a Sentence. It comes from the Greek Preposition *Syn*, together, and *taxis*, ordering, or ranking. In Latin it is called *Constructio*, Con-

* The Answer might be made thus: Five, viz. Orthoepey, Orthography, &c. making a Distinction between Orthoepey and Orthography, as there really is.

struction;

structio; from *Con* together, and *structio* a Building, or a Setting Things in good Order.

Q. What is Profody?

A. Profody is the Art of Pronouncing Words according to due *Accent* and *Time*. It comes from *pros*, *to*, and *ode*, a Song.

Q. What is Accent?

A. It is *Tone* or *Tune*; which is of two Sorts, The *Grave* or low *Tune*; the *Acute* or higher *Tune*; in Latin *Accentus*, from *ad*, *to*, and *cantus*, a *Tone*.

Q. What do you mean by pronouncing with Time?

A. Sounding the *Syllables* swifter or slower.

Q. Whence comes the Word Grammar?

A. From *Gramma* a Letter. Grammar begins with the Letters which are the Foundation of Words, and proceeds to the Explaining of the Properties of the Words themselves. It takes its Name from the *Grecians*. who not much minding the Study of Foreign Languages, sent their Children to School only to learn to read and write their own Language. Hence *Aristotle* calls Grammar *The Knowledge of Reading and Writing*.

CHAP. II.

Of Etymology, or that Part of Grammar which teaches what belongs to each Part of Speech.

* Words are *Primitive*, or *Derivative*.

* A *Primitive Word* is that which comes from no other Word in our Language; as *Fish*, *Babe*.

* A *Derivative Word* is that which comes from some other Word in our Language; as a *Fisher*, *Fishy*, from *Fish*; *Babler*, *Babbling*, from *Babe*; so *Rational*, from *Rationalis*.

Of the Eight Parts of Speech.

TO signify the Difference of our Thoughts or Notions in any Language, there is need of several Sorts of Words: Now every Word being considered as a Part of our Speech or Discourse, the *Grammarians* (or they who write of Grammar) do reckon up eight Sorts of Words of a different Nature, which they call, *Eight Parts of Speech*.

* The Eight parts of Speech are,

<i>Noun,</i>	<i>Adverb,</i>
<i>Pronoun,</i>	<i>Conjunction,</i>
<i>Verb,</i>	<i>Preposition,</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>Interjection.</i>

Of all which we shall treat in their proper Place.

Questions relating to the Second Chapter.

Q. *What is Speech?*

A. Speaking or Discourse.

Q. *How many Parts of Speech are there?*

A. Eight.

Q. *What are their Names?*

A. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, &c.

Q. *What do you mean by Eight Parts of Speech?*

A. Eight Sorts of Words, which Men use in speaking.

Q. *Are there no more than eight Words in a Language?*

A. There are Thousands of Words, but yet there are but eight Sorts; for every Word which Men use in speaking, is either a *Noun*, or an *Adjective*, i. e. a Word that signifies the Quality or Manner of a *Noun*, or a *Pronoun*, or a *Verb*, or a *Participle*, or an *Adverb*, or a *Conjunction*, or a *Preposition*, or an *Interjection*.

Q. *Why do they give different Names to the Parts of Speech?*

A. To distinguish one Part of Speech from another; in like manner as a *Carpenter*, to distinguish one Tool from another,

another, calls one an *Hammer*, another a *Chissel*, another a *Saw*.

Q. Are the Parts of Speech the same in English as in Latin?

A. Yes. For that which is a *Noun* in *English*, is a *Noun* in *Latin*, and so of the rest. But as for *Numbers*, *Cases*, *Genders*, *Declensions*, *Conjugations*, &c. These are not the same in both Languages.

CHAP. III.

Of a NOUN.

A *Noun* is a general Name expressing either the Thing it self, or any Property, Quality, or Attribute inhering in, or belonging to the Thing.

* A *Noun Substantive* is the Name of the Thing it self; as, a *Man*, a *Horse*, a *Tree*.

* The *Adjective* is a Word that expresses the Qualities or Properties of a Thing: as *good*, *bad*, *wise*, *foolish*, *great*, *small*, &c.

Questions relating to the Third Chapter.

Q. What is a Noun?

A. A *Noun* is a general Name expressing either the Thing it self, or some Property or Quality of it.

Q. Is it not the Thing it self?

A. No: For *Grammar* treats of Words and not of Things.

Q. How do you make it appear that the Words, Man, Horse, Tree, are Substantives?

A. Because if any one says, *I see a Man*, *I see a Horse*, *I see a Tree*, in each Saying the Sense is plain and full, and I understand the Meaning.

Q. How do you make it appear that the Words, good, bad, wise, foolish, great, small, are Adjectives?

F 2

A. Because

A. Because if any one says, *I see a good, I see a bad, I see a wise, I see a foolish, I see a great, I see a small,* in these Sayings there is no Sense, nor do we understand the Meaning of them, but there needs to be put in a *Substantive* to each *Adjective* to make Sense; as *I see a good Man. I see a small Horse, I see a great Tree.*

Q. In these Sayings following, tell me which Words are Substantives, and which are Adjectives, and the Reason why.

*The Cat catches Mice,
The Boy writes a good
This is a foolish,
Peter loves Pudding,
We love sweet,*

*This is a wise,
A wise reads Books,
They play a small,
Horses drink Water.*

Q. Whence comes the Word Noun?

A. From the Latin Word *Nomen*, a Name.

Q. From whence comes the Word Substantive?

A. From the Latin Word *Substantia*, *Substance*; because it signifies the *Substance* of the Thing.

Q. Whence comes the Word Adjective?

A. From the Latin Word *Adicere*, to add, because it is to be added to the *Substantive*.

In the Word *Noun Substantive*, you may leave out *Noun*, and call it a *Substantive*.

Definitions being only the Explaining one Word by another that is more familiar, so that the Meaning or Idea it stands for, may be certainly known, Languages are not always so made according to the Rules of *Logick*, that every *Term* can have its Signification exactly or clearly expressed by two others: I have therefore rather endeavoured after a Description of what the *Terms* mean, than after a strict Definition of them. And I believe it will be objected to me that I have too strictly followed an old Direction;

Σαφέστερον μοι καὶ ἀμαθέστερον φράσον.
Speak more clearly, and less like a Scholar.

C H A P. IV.

Of Substantives Proper, and Common.

THE far greatest Part of Words, that make all Languages, are general Terms; but because there is Occasion to mention this or that Particular Person or Thing, they must have their proper Names to be known and distinguished by.

* *Nouns Substantive* are either *proper*, or *common*.

* A *Noun Substantive proper* is a Word that belongs to some (*individual*) particular One of that Kind; as *Anne, Peter, James, Mary, &c.*

* A *Noun Substantive common* is a Word which belongs to all of that Kind; as *Man, Woman, Horse, Tree, &c.*

Besides Persons, Countries also, Cities, Rivers, Mountains, and other Distinctions of Place, have usually found peculiar Names, they being such Words as Men have often Occasion to mark particularly. And it is not to be doubted, but if we had Reason to mention particular *Horses*, as often as we have to mention particular *Men*, we should have proper Names for the one, as familiar as for the other; and *Bucephalus* would be a word as much in Use, as *Alexander*. And therefore we see amongst *Jockeys*, *Horses* have their proper Names to be known and distinguished by, as commonly as their Servants; because amongst them, there is often Occasion to mention this or that particular Horse, when he is out of Sight.

It may be farther observed that *proper Names*, when they are attributed to diverse Persons, become *common Names*; as the *Cæsars*, the *Alexanders*; any brave Men being called by those Names.

Questions relating to the fourth Chapter.

Q. Is the Word Anne, a proper or common Name?

A. It is a proper Name; because it belongs to some particular One of that Kind; for *Anne* is not the Name of every Woman.

Q. Is the Word Woman, a proper or common Name?

A. It is common, because it belongs to all of that Kind; for every Woman is called a Woman, but every Woman is not called *Anne*.

Q. Are the Words Ship, River, Horse, proper or common Names?

A. They are common; for every *Ship* is called a *Ship*, and every *River* is called a *River*, &c.

Q. Are the Words Albemarle [the Name of a Ship] the Thames, Bucephalus, proper or common Names?

A. They are proper, because they belong to some particular Ones of that Kind; for every *Ship* is not called the *Albemarle*, neither is every *River* called the *Thames*, nor every *Horse* *Bucephalus*.

Of the English Proper Names.

I am sensible that this Account of the *English* proper Names, does not strictly relate to the Subject of this Book; yet because it has some small Relation thereto, and might entertain the Curiosity of some Persons, I had made a Collection of what several Authors have wrote of these Matters, with which I designed to present the Reader; but being luckily prevented by the better Performance of the late ingenious and learned *John Chamberlayne Esq;* in his most useful Book, *The Present State of Great-Britain*; I have chosen rather to give you his Account than my own.

Nomina quasi Notamina. 'Name, in Sax. *Nama*, Gothic. ' *Namo*, Alem. *Namo*, Perf. *Nam*. All from the *Hebr. naam* ' *dixit, he said.* *Jun. Gloss. 263.* Names were first imposed on Men for Distinction sake, by the *Jews* at their Circumcision, by the *Greeks* at the seventh or tenth Day, by the *Romans* at the ninth Day after their Birth, and by the *Christians* at their Baptism, of such Signification for
the

the most part, that might denote the future good Hope, or good Wishes of Parents towards their Children.

The *English* Names at Baptism, are generally either *Saxon* or *Norman*; as, *Robert, Richard, Henry, William, Edward, Edmond, Edwin, Gilbert, Walter, Leonard, &c.* or else (especially in latter Ages) out of the Old and New Testament; as, *Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, John, Thomas, James, &c.* Or sometimes the Mothers *Sur-name*, especially if she has been an Heiress, or of superiour Birth or Quality to her Husband, and rarely two Christian Names, which yet is usual in other Countries, especially in *Germany*.

Sur-names.] Names superadded to the Christian Names, the *French* call *Sur-noms* (i. e.) *Super Nomina*. ' The Word *Sur-name* is in old *English* Manuscripts. The *English* formerly called it a *To-name*; as is in *Robert of Gloucester*, and in *Langtoft*. *To-name* literally answers to *Agnomen* or *Cognomen*, as *Sur-name* to *Super Nomen*. Our *Saxon* Ancestors had no single Word to express *Sur-name*, but called it the *other Name*. *Se waes othre Naman Scarioth*. *Luc. xxii. 3.*

The * *Hebrews, Greeks*, and most other Nations, had no *Sur-names* fixed to their Families, as in these Days, but counted thus; for Example among the *Hebrews*, *Melshi Ben Addi, Addi Ben Casam, &c.* So the *Britains*, *Hugh ap Owen, Owen ap Rhese*: So the *Irish*, *Neal Mac Con, Con Mac Dermoti, &c.*

As Christian Names were first given for Distinction of Persons, so *Sur-names* for Distinction of Families.

About *Anno 1000*, the *French* Nation began to take *Sur-names*, with *De* prefixt, of a Place, and *Le* prefixt, for some other Qualifications, as at this Day is their usual Manner. The *English* also took to themselves *Sur-names*; but not generally among the common People, till after the Reign of *Edward I.*

Great Offices of Honour have brought divers *Sur-names*; as *Edward Fitz-Theobald*, being long ago made Butler of *Ireland*, the Duke of *Ormond*, and his Ancestors descend-

* See *Macc. ii. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.* *Sur-names* were common after the Captivity, in Use also before, but not such as ours now.

ing from him, took the *Sur-name* of *Butler*. So *John Count Tankerville* of *Normandy*, being made *Chamberlain* to the King of *England*, above 400 Years ago, his Descendants of *Sherborn-Castle* in *Oxford-shire*, lately extinct, and of *Prestbury*, *Mangersbury*, and *Oddington* in *Gloucestershire*, (from whom the Author of this Account was descended) bear still the same Coat of Arms, by the Name of *Chamberlain*.

At first, for *Sur-names* the *English* Gentry took the Name of their Birth-place, or Habitation; as, *Thomas* of *Aston*, or *East-Town*; *John* of *Sutton*, or *South-Town*; *Henry* of *Wotton*, or *Wood-Town*; and as they altered their Habitation, so they altered their *Sur-name*. After, when they became Lords of Places, they called themselves *Thomas Aston*, of *Aston*; *John Sutton*, of *Sutton*; *Henry Wotton*, of *Wotton*.

The *Saxon* common People (as the Generality of the *Dutch*, *German*s, *Danes*, *Islanders* and *Swedes* do to this Day) for *Sur-names*, added their Father's Name, with *Son* at the End thereof; as, *Thomas Johnson*, *Robert Richardson*, and sometimes their Mother's Name, in like Manner; as *Bettison*, *Nelson*, and *Margetson*; they also oft took their Father's Nick-name, or Abbreviation with the Addition of *s*, as *Gibs*, the Nick-name, or Abbreviation of *Gilbert*; *Hobbs* of *Robert*, *Nicks* of *Nicholas*, *Batts* of *Bartholomew*, *Sams* of *Samuel*, *Hodges* of *Roger*, *Sanders* of *Alexander*; and thence also *Gibson*, *Hobson*, *Nickson*, *Batson*, *Samson*, *Hobson*, *Sanderson*, and *Hutchinson*, &c. Many were also *Surnamed* from their Trade; as, *Smith*, *Foyner*, *Weaver*, *Walker*, that is, *Fuller* in old *English*, and *Goff*, that is *Smith* in *Welsh*, &c. Or from their Offices; as, *Porter*, *Steward*, *Shepherd*, *Carter*, *Spencer* (that is *Steward* or *Dispenser*) *Cook*, *Butler*, *Kemp*, that is in old *English*, *Soldier* from *Campus*; or from the Place of Abode; as, *Underwood*, *Underhil*; also *Atwood*, *Atwell*, *Athil*, which three last are shrunk into *Wood*, *Wells*, *Hill*; or from their Colour or Complexion, as, *Fairfax*, that is, *Flaxen Hair*. So from Birds; as, *Arundel*, that is, *Swallow*, from *Hirundo*; *Corbet*, that is *Raven*, from *Corvus*; *Wren*, *Finch*, *Woodcock*, &c. So from Beasts; as, *Lamb*, *Fox*, *Moyle*, that is, *Mule*. From Colours; as *Black*, *White*, *Brown*, *Red*, *Green*. From the Winds, as *East*, *West*, *North*, *South*. Sometimes from *Saints*; as *St* *John*

John, St. George, St. Leger, St. Amand, Seymour (i. e.) St. Maur, &c.

The Normans at their first coming into England, brought *Sur-names* for many of their Gentry, with *De* prefixed, as the French do generally at this Day, and their Christian Names were generally *Scandic*, they being originally descended from Norway, inhabited by the Progeny of the old *Scandians*; and some, for about 200 Years after the Conquest, took for *Sur-names* their Father's Christian Name, with *Fitz* or *Fils* prefixed, as Robert Fitz-Williams, Henry Fitz-Gerard, which is as much as *Williamson*, *Gerardson*, &c.

The Britains, or Welch, did not take *Sur-names* till of late Years, and that for the most Part only by leaving out *a* in *ap*, and annexing *p* to their Father's Christian Name; as, instead of *Evan ap Rice*, now *Evan Price*; so instead of *ap Howel*, *Powel*; *ap Hugh*, *Pugh*; *ap Rogers*, *Progers*, &c.

The most ancient Families, and of best Account for *Sur-names* in England, are either those that are taken from Places in Normandy, and thereabouts in France, and from some other Transmarine Countries; or else from Places in England and Scotland; as, *Evereux*, *Chaworth*, *Nevil*, *Monague*, *Mohun*, *Biron*, *Bruges*, *Clifford*, *Berkly*, *Anvers*, *Arcy*, *Stourton*, *Morley*, *Courtney*, &c. which anciently had all *De* prefixed, but of latter Times, generally neglected, or made one Word, as *Devereux*, *Danvers*, *Darcy*, &c. unless we should more esteem those, whose Ancestors were of great Account here before the Norman Conquest, and their Posterity have still flourished ever since, as *Arden*, *Ashburnham*, &c.

C H A P. V.

Of NUMBERS.

Number is the Distinction of One from Many.

THere are two Numbers. the *singular*, and the *plural*.

* The *Singular Number* is used when we speak but of one *Thing* or *Person*; as, a *Stick*, a *Boy*.

* The

* The Plural Number is used when we speak of more than one *Thing* or *Person*; as, *Sticks, Boys.*

* The Plural Number in *English* is commonly made by putting *s* to the Singular; as *Stick* makes in the Plural *Sticks*; so *Boy* makes in the Plural *Boys*.

But when the Singular ends in *ch*, *sh*, *fs*, or *x*, then the Pronunciation requires that *e* be put before *s*, or (which is all one) that *es* be added to the Singular, as,

Church,
Brush,
Witness,
Box,

} makes }

Churches,
Brushes,
Witnesses,
Boxes.

Note, The Plural Number (when it is made by putting only *s* to the *Singular*) has no more Syllables than there are in the *Singular*; as in *Boy* there is but one Syllable, so the *Plural, Boys*, has likewise but one; and as in *Father* there are but two Syllables, so in the *Plural, Fathers*, there are no more. But when the *Singular Number* ends in *se, ze, or in ce, ge*, pronounced soft, then the *s* that is added cannot be heard in the Sound, except it makes another entire Syllable. For Example, *Horse* in the *Singular* hath but one Syllable, but *Horses*, in the *Plural*, has two; so *Face*, in the *Singular*, has but one Syllable, but *Faces*, in the *Plural*, has two.

Formerly all *Nouns* received the Addition of *es* for the *Plural*, which is to this Day retained in several Counties of *England*.

* But Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, do (for better Sound's sake) make the *Plural* by changing *f* and *fe* into *ves*, as

Calf,	}	<i>makes</i>	}	Calves,		}	<i>makes</i>	}	Sheaves,	
Half,				Halves,					Sheaf,	Shelves,
Knife,				Knives,					Self,	Selves,
Leaf,				Leaves,					Thief,	Thieves,
Loaf,				Loaves,					Wife,	Wives,
									Wolf,	Wolves.
									Yet	

Yet this is not always so, for these Words following, with several others, are excepted; as,

Hoof,	}	makes	{	Hoofs,
Roof,				Roofs,
Grief,				Griefs.

So Dwarf, Mischief, Handkerchief, Relief, Scarf, Wharf, Reproof, Strife, Scoff, Skiff, Muff, Ruff, Cuff, Snuff, Stuff, Puff, &c. And generally speaking, Words ending in double ff make the Plural by the Addition of s. But Staff makes Staves.

So in Words ending in s and th, though the Writing is not changed, yet the Sound is softened; for in House, the Sound of s is changed into z, as House. Houses [Houzes]; so th is sounded as dh, as in Path, Paths [Padhs]; Cloth, Clothes, [Clodhes]; Sheath, Sheaths, [Sheadhs]. But Earth, Birth, keep their own Sound, and all that end in rth.

As Nouns ending in y do often change y into ie, so ys in the Plural, is often changed into ies, as,

Herefy,	Herefys,	or	Herefies,
Cherry,	Cherrys,		Cherries,
Inquiry,	Inquirys,		Inquiries.

* Some Words do form or make the Plural otherwise than by taking s or es, and are therefore Irregular.

Singular.		Plural.		Singular.		Plural.
Die,	}	Dice,(a)	}	Foot,	}	Feet,
Moufe,		Mice,		Tooth,		Teeth,
Loufe,		Lice,		Penny		Pence,
Goofe,		Geefe,		which is a Contraction of Pennys.		

(a) Dice is irregular more in the corrupt Spelling than in the Sound, it should be Dies; unless we intended to express the French Dez, as we borrowed the Word from thence. Pence is made from Pens, a Contraction from Penes, Penies, &c. N. B. Dyse is our ancient Spelling, for Dice in the Singular.

But

But these, *Ox*, (b) *Oxen*; *Child*, *Children*; *Brother*, *Brethren*; are Imitations of the *Dutch Plural* which ends in *s*, and frequently in *en*, *Man* among the *Saxons* was an irregular Word, and makes *Men* in the *Plural*, Also all the Compounds of *Man*, make their *Plural* in *en*; as, *Woman*, *Footman*, *Horseman*, *Statesman*, in the *Plural*, *Women*, *Footmen*, *Horsemen*, *Statesmen*, &c.

Some Words are used in both Numbers, as *Sheep*, *Hofe*, *Swine*, *Fern*, (c) *Pease*, *Deer*. *Chicken* is not *Plural*, for we say *Chickens*; as to *Fish*, *Mile* they are rather ill speaking; as when they say, (d) five *Shilling*, seven *Foot high*, twenty *Year old*. (e) So Abundance of *Fish*, is not the *Plural*; any more then Abundance of *Meat*.

Note, *Swine* is a Contraction of *Sowin*; we likewise say *Sows* from *Sow*, which is spoken of the Female only; but *Swine* is used in both Numbers, and spoken of both Sexes.

(b) *Oxen* is the remains of the *Saxon Termination*, as Words in a Singular make *an* in the *Plural*; *Oxa*, *Oxan*, see *Hickes* of the *Second Declension*, p. 10.

(c) *Pease* should be *Peasen*, or *Peases*: But the old Custom would not suffer *Peases* to come in: And the new Method has discarded *Peasen*, and is content with a *Plural* that Sounds like one, and is none. *Deer*, *Sax. Deor* retains its ancient Form, as in *Saxon*. *Chicken*, in *Saxon*, *Cicen*, is a Singular, and of the third Declension: *Plural Nominative Cicenu*, and in old *English Chickenes*.

(d) *Seven-foot-high* is as one Word, *septempedalis*. And so *five-Years-old quinquennis*. But *fifgear*, *Five-Year* is true *Saxon*, *Five-Shilling Piece*, is a Similar Expression. *Ten Pound* is good *English* upon the old Foot: in *Saxon*, *Tyn Pund*: For *Pund* is of the fourth Declension, and the same in the *Nominative Plural* as in the Singular. But *ten Pounds* is better *English* upon the modern Analogy.

(e) A learned Gentleman is of Opinion that Abundance of *Fish* is not ill-speaking, but proper; for *Fish* is in that Instance a specific Name, like as *Flesh* is always. See below, *Fern* is a specific Name, and has no *Plural*.

It is better also to say in the Singular a *Pea*, in the Plural *Peas*.

Brother makes also *Brothers*, for we seldom use *Brethren*, but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.

Some do use *Kine* (a Contraction of *Cowin*) for *Cows*, *Shoon* for *Shoes*, *Eyen* for *Eyes*, and *Housen* for *House*: But these *Plurals* are not to be imitated.

* Some Words have no Singular Number.

As *Ashes*, *Bellows*, *Bowels*, *Breeches*, *Entrails*, *Lungs*, *Scissars*, *Shears*, *Snuffers*, *Thanks*, *Tongs*, *Wages*.

* Some Words have no Plural Number.

As the proper Names of *Cities*, *Countries*, *Rivers*, *Mountains*; the Names of *Virtues*, *Vices*; So the Names of *Metals*; (a) as, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, &c. The Names of most *Herbs*;

as,

(a) It is common to all Languages for the *Specifick* Names, meerly such, to be singular. *Gold* is the Name only of the *Species*, and so is *Iron*: But then it is sometimes made a Name for the Individual too, and so admits of the Plural Number, *Irons*.

The Reason is plain why *Specifick* Names, as such, admit of no Plural: Plurality is in the Individuals, while the Kind is One. *Man* considered only as a *Specifick* Name means *human Kind*, or *human Nature*; which is one, not many. *Flesh* is the whole *Fleshy Kind*, *Silver* the whole *Silver Kind*. Indeed, it often happens that the same Word shall serve both for the Kind, and the Individual; as the Word *Man*, *Fish*, and many more: And then such Word admits of the Plural Number. Some Words, in one Language, signify both the Kind and Individual, and not in another. *Caro* in Latin is a Name for the *Species*, and for the *Individuals* too: And therefore there is *Caro*, and *Carnes*. But *Flesh* in *English* is meerly *Specifick*: And therefore we have not *Fleshes*.

as, *Grass, Marjoram, Parsley, Sage, Mint, &c.* except, *Nettles, Poppies, Lillies, Coleworts, Cabbages, &c.* The Names of several Sorts of Corn and Pulse; as, *Wheat, Rye, Barley, Darnel, &c.* except *Bean*, which makes *Beans*, and *Pea, Peas*. So *Bread, Wine, Beer, Ale, Honey, Oyl, Milk, Butter*, want the *Plural*, with many others; but these Examples may suffice for the present. And some of these, when they signify several Sorts, are used in the *Plural*; as, *Wines, Oyls, &c.*

* *Adjectives* have no Difference of *Numbers*.

Note, As we say, a good Boy in the *Singular*, so we say, good Boys in the *Plural*; where you see the *Adjective* is the same. Yet sometimes we meet *Adjectives* with an *s* added to make them *Plurals*; as *Good, Goods*; *New, News*; but then they become or are made *Substantives*; as, *Goods* for good Things; so *News* for new Things; *Blacks* for black Men, or black Colours, *Whites, Reds*, for white or red Colours. In like Manner the *Grammarians* use *Substantives, Adjectives*, for *Nouns Substantive*. Note, *This*, makes *these*, and *that these*.

Questions relating to the Fifth Chapter.

Q. What is Number?

A. Number is the Distinction of one from many.

Q. How many Numbers are there?

A. Two, the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

Q. When do we use the *Singular* Number?

A. When we speak but of one Person or Thing.

Q. When do we use the *Plural* Number?

A. When we speak of more Things or Persons than one.

Many like Instances may be observed in the comparing of one Language with another.

The *Specifick* Names are easily distinguished in our Language: For besides that they have no *Plural*, they are never used in the *Singular* with, *a*, before them, as other Names are. We never say, *a Flesh, a Gold, a Silver*, but *Flesh, Gold, Silver*: And when we use a Word specifically we leave out the *a*, as *Man* is mortal, and the like.

Q. How

Q. How is the Plural Number in English made ?

A. By adding s to the Singular.

Q. Is it always thus made ?

A. Not always; for to Words that end in ch, sh, fs, or x, es is added; as, Church, Churches, &c.

Q. What do you note or observe in Words that end in fe, ze, or in ce, ge ?

A. Those Words gain a Syllable more in the Plural than they had in the Singular.

Q. How comes this to pass ?

A. The s, that is added to make the Plural, would not be heard in the Sound, unless it made another entire Syllable.

Q. How do Words that end in f or fe, make their Plurals ?

A. By changing f or fe into ves.

Q. What is the Reason of this Change ?

A. It is for better Sound's sake; f and v being Letters that are easily changed the one for the other.

Q. Do all Words form or make their Plural by adding s to the Singular ?

A. No: Some do not; for Mouse makes Mice, and Tooth, Teeth, &c. with several others which are irregular.

Q. What do you mean by Irregular ?

A. That Word is said to be irregular, or excepted, which is contrary to, or that does not follow the general Rule.

The General Rule in this Place is, that the Plural Number is made by adding s or es to the Singular.

Q. What is a compounded Word ?

A. It is a Word that is made up of two or more single Words; as, Footman is made up of Foot and Man; so Coachman, is made up of Coach and Man.

Q. Have all Nouns a Plural Number ?

A. No: For some Nouns have no Plural, and others have no Singular; and some few on the other hand are used in both Numbers.

Q. Whence comes the Word Number ?

A. From the Latin Word Numerus, Number.

Q. Whence comes the Word Singular ?

A. From Singularis or Singulus, a single one.

Q. Whence comes the Word Plural ?

A. From Pluralis or Plus more.

C H A P. VI.

Of the English Genitive Case, with a Note concerning Gender.

THE Mind is not always employed about single Objects only, but compares likewise one Thing with another, in order to express the Relation and Respect that Things have to one another : in the Latin and Greek Tongues, and our antient Saxon, following therein the Greek, they make different Endings of the same Noun, to denote these References or Respects, and these different Endings are called Cases. The Latins have six in each Number, whose Names are as follow.

The Nominative,
The Genitive,
The Dative,

The Accusative,
The Vocative,
The Ablative.

But the Respect of Things to one another in our Language is shewn by the Help of certain Words called Prepositions ; such are *of, to, from, &c.* So that we have no Cases, except the Genitive ; whereby we are freed from a great Deal of Trouble and (a) Difficulty that is found in other Languages.

* The

(a) We have gradually reduced the Cases without observing it ; Nature it self, as it were teaching the easiest and shortest Way. In like Manner the *Italians* and *Spaniards* have reduced the Cases of the Singular Number all to one ; which is the Dative, or Ablative : *Cavallo, Porco, Cane, &c.* And in the Plural, the *Italians* have commonly aimed at the Nominative Case : *Cavalli, Porci.* While the *Spaniards* have the Accusative ; *Cavallos, Porcos, &c.* vid. Lhuyd p. 20. I have wondered, says a Learned Divine, how the *Greeks* from whom the *Latins, Goths, Saxons, &c.* have copied,

* *The Genitive Case in English ends, in the Singular and Plural Number, in s or es (if the Pronunciation requires it;) as, Man's Nature, or the Nature of Man; Men's Nature, or the Nature of Men; Milton's Poems, or the Poems of Milton; the Churches Peace, or the Peace of the Church.*

Note, This Genitive Case answers to the Genitive of the Latins, and to the English Preposition of, signifying, 1. The Possessor. 2. The Author. 3. The Relation of a Thing, as Peter's Horse, or the Horse that Peter possesses, or has. So Milton's Poems, or the Poems of Milton, that is, the Poems that Milton made. The King's Son, or the Son of the King.

* *If the Substantive be of the Plural Number, the first s is cut off; as, the Warriour's Arms, or the Arms of the Warriours; the Stone's End, or*

copied, came to invent Cases. The Vulgar, one may think, could never naturally fall into such a perplexed Method, and burdensome to the Memory: And yet how could any Language come but by Use and Custom? Rules are formed upon Use, and not Use upon Rules. Were I to make a Conjecture, from the Nature of the Thing, in a Case where we have no Records early enough to determine it, I should suspect that at first the Greeks had no Cases but made their Declensions by the Article δ , η , $\tau\delta$, $\tau\tilde{\epsilon}$, $\tau\tilde{\eta}\varsigma$, $\tau\tilde{\epsilon}$, and so on, as we do by the Help of Prepositions, and that this Method led them by Degrees for Brevity's Sake to make the Terminations Similar to the Articles; which being done, they might then omit the Article, and the Terminations alone might serve the Purpose.

The Latins therefore, we see, content with the Terminations, have no Article.

the End of the Stones; for the Warriours's Arms, the Stones's End (a).

Note, I say, the first *s* is cut off, or left out ; for when the Substantive Plural ends in *s* (it sometimes ending in *en*, as *Women*) there will be a double *s*; one *s* that makes the Plural, as *Warriours*, and another *s* that makes the Genitive Case, as *Warriours's*; then the former *s* is cut off, or left out for better Sound's Sake.

* But when the Singular Number ends in *s*, both the *s's* are for the most Part expressed ; as, *Charles's Horse, St. James's Park.*

(a) I cannot but be of Opinion with a Learned Divine, who conceives this Way of Speaking to be contrary to Analogy, and not justifiable: We have a good Way of denoting the Genitive in the Singular, which Way we derive from our *Saxon* Ancestors: But they never used it for the Genitive Plural: Neither did we. I have observed several good Writers, who being offended at this Way of Speaking, have chosen to clap in *their*; as, *Warriours their Arms*, thinking thereby to make the Genitive Plural answer to the Singular; one by *his*, and the other by *their*: But they have gone upon a false Supposition, in taking the *'s* to be a Contraction of *his*, in the Genitive Singular. I know no justifiable Way of coming off here, but to alter the Form of Expression, and to say *Arms of the Warriours*. No pretence, that I can think of, will ever make the other pass for correct Writing. The ignorant Vulgar began it; and the Learned have followed it as ignorantly, not understanding the Nature of the Expression, or whence it came. And yet every Body almost at the first hearing perceives that there is something amiss, some Flaw in the Expression, and are not satisfied with it while they use it. We have really no distinct Genitive Plural, though we have a Genitive Singular: There is the Flaw.

Note,

Note, Yet here, when the Pronounciation requires it, you may leave out the first *s*; as, for *Righteousness* Sake.

* But when three Substantives come together, the *Genitive Case* is made by adding *s* to the second; as, *The Queen of England's Crown*, the *King of Spain's Court*.

Where you may see *s* is added to the second Substantive, and for this Reason, because the *Queen of England's*, is reckoned but as one Substantive.

Sometimes you will find two or three of these *Genitives* put together; as, *Peter's Wife's Portion*; that is, the Portion of the Wife of *Peter*; *Peter's Brother's Wife's Portion*; that is, the Portion of the Wife of the Brother of *Peter*.

* This *Genitive Case* is always put before the Substantive it is to be joined to; as, *Man's Nature*, not *Nature Man's*; *Milton's Poems*, not *Poems Milton's*.

Note, This *Genitive* is a plain Imitation of the *Saxon Genitive Case*, which ends in *es*; as, *Godes Sunu*, the Son of God. It is farther observable, that the *Saxons* did seldom change the Cases of the *Latin Proper Names* in their Translations, but let them remain in the *Nominative, Dative*, and other Cases, as they found them. Yet they used to change the *Genitive* of those Names into *es*, in Imitation of their own *Genitive*; *Christes, Albanes*, of *Christ, of Alban*. The *Dutch Genitive* does likewise end in *s*; as, *Peters Boek, Peter's Book*; *David's Psalmen, David's Psalms*. But to conclude, the Learned Dr. *Hickes*, whose Judgement in these Matters no one will pretend to dispute, speaking of the following *Saxon Declension*,

Singular

Singular Numb.

Nom. Smith,
 Gen. * Smithes,
 Dat. Smithe,
 Accu. Smith,
 Voc. Smith,
 Abl. Smithe.

Plural Numb.

Nom.* Smithas,
 Gen. Smitha,
 Dat. Sm thum,
 Accu. Smithas,
 Voc. Smithas,
 Abl. Smithum.

Says, hence (that is from the *Genitive Singular*, and *Nominative Plural*, marked with * an *Asterism*, or *Star*.) the *Genitive Singular*, and *Nominative Plural* of *English Nouns* end regularly in *s* or *es*, as in *Stones*, which is as much as *Lapidis*, of a *Stone*, and *Lapides*, *Stones*, that is more than one.

But they are mistaken, who think the *s* is added instead of *his*, (the first Part of the Word *his* being cut off) and therefore that an (') *Apostrophe* is either always to be written, or at least to be understood: For though we do not deny but that the Mark of the *Apostrophe* may sometimes be properly enough made, that the Use of the Letter *s* may, when there is Occasion, be more clearly perceived; yet that the *Apostrophe* ought always to be made, and that it is therefore to be made, to denote the Word (a) *his*, is what we can by no Means grant: For it is added to the *Proper Names* of *Women*, and to *Sustantives* of the (b) *Plural Number*, where the Word *his* cannot, without a *Solecism*, or *Impropriety* of *Speech*, have Place. It is likewise added to the Word (c) *Ours*,

(a) We never find *his* in old *English* at the End of such Words in Construction, but either *es*, or *ys*, or *is*: *Womanis* for *Woman's*; *Mannes*, or *Mannys*, or *Mannis*, for *Man's*.

(b) Where it should not be added, because *s*, or *es*, is not the Termination of the *Genitive Plural*, as before observed, but of the *Singular* only.

(c) If the *Substantive* be added, we say *our*, *your*, answering to the *Saxon Nominative ure*, *eower*: But without the *Substantive*, *ours*, *yours*, answering to the *Saxon Genitive ures*, *eoweres*; and understanding Possession, or some other *Substantive* of the like Kind, taken in the *Genitive*. *Yours*, i. e. of your Keeping or Property.

yours,

yours, theirs, hers, where no one can imagine the Word *his* to be included. And indeed the (*d*) Word *his*, as likewise the Interrogative *whose*, are nothing else, but *hee's*, (*e*) *who's*; where *s* has the same Power, as in the Genitive Case of other Words; for *hee's Book*, is the *Book of him, who's Book*, or the *Book of whom*. So *its* is wrote for *it's* or of *it*. But *his* is written for *hee's*, by the same Mistake as we sometimes write *bin* for *been*; likewise *whose* or *who's* proceeds from the same Mistake, as when we write *done*, *gone*, *knowne* or *known*, *growne* or *grown*, for *doen*, *goen*, *knowen*, *growen*, or for *do'n*, *go'n*, *know'n*, *grow'n*, every where against the Analogy of the Language.

A Note concerning Gender,

As we have just mentioned one great Advantage of our Language, in being freed from that Trouble and Difficulty which arises in the *Greek* and *Latin* from the Variety of Cases; so we shall now take Notice of another Advantage it has, full as great as the former.

Of all the *Languages*, both *ancient* and *modern*, there is none but what admits of a Difference of *Gender*, in their,

(*d*) *His*, *hys*, are the Genitive of *he* regularly in *Saxon*, the same as *illius*, or *ejus*. There is no Mistake in Writing *his*; but *Hee's* is wrong. There should be no Apostrophe, in the Genitive Singular, but where some Letter or Letters are left out.

Smith's, for what was anciently *Smithes*, the *e* is left out, which is the sole Reason of the Apostrophe. In *Man's* there are left out *n*, and *e*, it is for *Mannes*. In my *Wifes Mother*, there is no Letter left out; the Original Genitive is *Wifes*, and so there is no Occasion for an Apostrophe, or to write *Wife's*; the like may be said of any other Noun ending in *e*, as, *Life*, *Knife*, &c.

(*e*) *Whose* is the *Saxon* *hwes*, the Genitive of *hwa*, it used to be Spelled *whos*: We have added the final *e* to preserve the Quantity of the Vowel. It should not be written *who's*, but *whos*: There is no Letter dropped, or left out. Dr. Wallis therefore is mistaken in this Paragraph.

Nouns,

Nouns, except the *English*, and *Chinese* Languages. For as Mr. *Web* (in his *Essay toward a primitive Language*, p. 192.) says, The *Chinese* are not troubled with Variety of *Declensions*, *Conjugations*, *Numbers*, *Genders*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, and other Grammatical Niceties, but are absolutely free from all such perplexing Accidents, having no other Rules in Use, than what the Light of Nature dictated unto them, whereby their Language is plain, easie, and simple, as *natural* Speech ought to be.

* *Gender* is the *Distinction* of *Sex*.

* There are two Sexes the *Male* and *Female*.

* We have Four *Ways* of distinguishing the *Sex*.

I. When we would express the Difference of *Sex*, we do it (after the same Manner as we distinguish the *Ages* and other Accidents) by different Words.

So in the Relation of Persons,

<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male.</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Batchelour	Maid Virgin	King	Queen
Boar	Sow	Lad	Lass (a)
Boy	Girl	Lord	Lady
Bridegroom	Bride	Man	Woman
Brother	Sister	Master	Dame
Buck	Doe	Milter	Spawner.
Bull	Cow	Nephew	Niece
Bullock	Heifer	Ram	Ewe
Cock	Hen	Sloven	Slut
Dog	Bitch	Son	Daughter
Drake	Duck	Stag	Hind
Drone	Bee	Uncle	Aunt
Father	Mother	Widower	Widow
Friar	Nun	Wizard	Witch
Gander	Goose	Whoremonger	Whore or
Horse	Mare		(Strumpet
Husband	Wife		

(a) *Lass* is a Contraction of *Laddeſs*.

II. But

II. But when there are not two different Words to express both *Sexes*, or when both *Sexes* are comprehended under one *Word*, then we add an Adjective to the Word to distinguish the Sex, as a *Male Child*, a *Female Child*, a *He-Goat* for the Male, a *She-Goat* for the Female.

III. Sometimes we add another Substantive to the Word, to distinguish the Sex; as a *Man-Servant*, a *Maid-Servant*, a *Cock-Sparrow*, a *Hen-Sparrow*.

IV. There are likewise, some few Words, which distinguish the *Female Sex*, from the *Male*, by the Ending (a) [*ess*]

<i>Male,</i>	<i>Female.</i>	<i>Male,</i>	<i>Female.</i>
Abbot	Abbess	Jew	Jewess
Actor	Actress	Lion	Lioness
Adulterer	Adulteress	Marqueſs	Marchioness
Ambaſſadour	Ambaſſadreſs	Maſter	Miſtreſs
Baron	Baroneſs	Patron	Patroneſs
Count	Counteſs	Prince	Princeſs
Deacon	Deaconeſs	Prior	Prioreſs
Duke	Dutcheſs	Poet	Poeteſs
Electoꝝ	Electreſs	Prophet	Propheteſs
Emperour	Empreſs	Shepherd	Shepherdreſs
Governour	Governeſs	Tutor	Tutreſs
Heir	Heireſs	Viſcount	Viſcounteſs
Hunter	Huntreſs		

(a) This Kind of Termination we have borrowed from the French *eſſe* and *ice*; which they have taken from the Latin *iſſa*, and *ix*. *Abbatiffa*, *Abbaſſe* in old English, *Abbess*. *Actrix*, *Actrice*, *Actreſs*. But the French diſtinguiſh between *eſſe*, and *ice*; we bring both to one, the Sound being nearly the ſame. Theſe are all of Norman deſcent, unknown to the antient Saxons. In Normanno-Saxon, we have *Emperice*, *Abbedeſſe* and *Counteſſe*, which are three of the oldeſt. The Original of this Termination may be run up to the Greek Feminine Termination *is*, *ισα προφητις*, *Prophetiſſa*, French *Prophetiſſe*, old English, *Profeſeſſe*, now *Propheteſs*, *βασιλεῦς*, *βασιλῆς*, vel. *βασιλιſſα*. And

And two Words in [ix,] *Administratrix, Executrix.*

But the common Words that we use to express the Difference of Sex by, are *He* and *She*. When we speak of the *Male Sex*, we use the Word *He*; when we speak of the *Female Sex*, we use the Word *She*; But when we speak of a *Thing* that is neither of the *Male* nor *Female Sex*, we use the Word *It*. For example, speaking of *Butter*, we do not say *He* or *She* melts, but *It* melts; so speaking of *Beer*, we do not say *He* or *She* is good, but *It* is good. *It*, is also sometimes used when the Sex is undetermined; as, *Do not awake the Child, it is a sleep.*

But these Words, *He, She, It*, are Adjectives, and so fall under the *Second Rule*.

There are some Words, which though they denote, or express Things that cannot be said to be of any Sex, yet common Custom does often use them, as if they were of the *Male* or *Female Sex*. For, speaking of the *Sun*, we say, *His going forth is from the End of the Heavens, and his Circuit to the Ends of it.* Speaking of the *Church*, we say, *She hath nourished her Children, but they have rebelled against her.*

Where in the first Example, we may take Notice, that *His* is spoken of the *Sun*, as if *Sun* was of the *Male Sex*; And in the second Example, *She* is spoken of the *Church*, as if *Church* was of the *Female Sex*.

Mr. Ray says, that *Queen* was used by the Saxons to signify the *Female Sex*, because *Queen Fugol* was used for a *Hen-Fowl*. So *Wheen Cat*, is used in the North for *Queen Cat*; and *Carl-Cat* for the Male, the *Boar Cat*. Saxon *Carl*, Masculus, *Carl-fugol*, is Saxon for a *Cock-Fowl*. And these two answer to the two mentioned by Mr. Ray. *Quino* or *Quens* is Gothick for a Woman or Wife, and *Gune* γυνή is Greek.

Though what has been already said, may be counted unnecessary, since the *English Tongue* has no Genders; yet because it may gratify some Readers, I will venture to add another Observation, which is, that the *Genders* called *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter* do not even among the *Latins* always distinguish the Sex; for *Mancipium* a *Slave*, *Scortum* a *Whore*, are of the *Neuter Gender*; *Gladius* a *Sword*, *Arcus* a *Bow*, are of the *Masculine Gender*; *Sagitta* an *Arrow*, and

Acus

Acus a Needle, are of the *Feminine Gender*. For such has been the Inconstancy of Custom in Relation to Gender, that sometimes Regard has been had only to the Signification of Nouns; that is, whether they denoted Things that were of the *Male* or *Female Sex*: At other Times, without considering either Signification or Ending, It has given to Nouns, *what Gender it pleased*. The Learned Dr. *Hickes* observes, that the Sun [*Sunna* or *Sunne*] among the Saxons and among the antient *Franks* or *Teutones*. (Vid. *Hickes*. Gr. Angl. 16. Gr. Fr. 10.) is of the *Feminine Gender*, and Moon [*Mona*] of the *Masculine Gender*. To which we may add, that *Sun* likewise in the German Tongue is of the *Feminine Gender*; and *Wife* in the Dutch of the *Neuter*. And so it is in the *Saxon*, and in all the Mother Languages, says Dr. *Hickes*, p. 80.

Questions relating to the sixth Chapter.

Q. *What is Case?*

A. Case is the Ending the Noun has in declining.

Q. *How many Cases have the Latins?*

A. Six, the *Nominative*, the *Genitive*, the *Dative*, &c.

Q. *What did the Latins mean by declining a Noun?*

A. Changing its Ending; as for Example, in the Word *Deus* which is Latin for *God*, the *Nominative Case* which ends in *us* is changed in the *Genitive Case* into *i*, and in the *Dative Case* *us* is changed into *o*, and in the *Accusative Case* *us* is changed into *um*. As,

Nominative, *Deus*.

Genitive, *Dei*.

Dative, *Deo*.

Accusative, *Deum*.

Q. *Why did the Latins change the Endings of their Nouns?*

A. To show the Relation or Respect that Things have to one another; as *Equus Petri*, the Horse of *Peter*; *dedit Petro*, he gave to *Peter*; where *i* in *Petri* answers to our Word *of*, and *o* in *Petro*, answers to our Word *to*.

Q. *Have the English any Cases?*

A. They have but One called the *Genitive Case*.

H

Q. *How*

Q. How is the Genitive Case made ?

A. By putting *s*, or *es*, if the Pronunciation requires it, to the *Singular* or **Plural Number*; as the *Masters Book*, or the *Book of the Master*; the *Churches Peace*, or the *Peace of the Church*.

Q. If the English have but one Case, how do they express the Relation and Respect of Things to one another ?

A. They do it by the Help of certain Words called *Prepositions*; such are, *of*, *to*, *from*, *with*, &c.

Q. Is not, of God, in this Sentence, the Love of God, a Genitive Case ?

A. No, for they are two Words; *Of* is a *Preposition*, and *God* is a *Noun*. Now *Case* is the *Alteration* of the *Noun*: But you see the *Ending* of the *Noun God*, is not changed to make a *Case*: For we say, *God loves*, the *Love of God*, *Enoch walked with God*; which Words if wrote in *Latin*, would be, *Deus God*, *Dei of God*, *Deo with God*. Where you may observe that the *Latin Word* has three *Endings* or *Cases*, that is, *us*, *i*, *o*; but the *English Word*, *God*, is the same in all the three Places.

Q. Suppose two s's to meet together in the Genitive Case ?

A. We cut off the first *s*, thus; the *Warriour's Arms*, for the *Warriours's Arms*.

Q. How come two s's to meet together ?

A. Because there is one *s* that makes the *Plural Number*; as, *Warriour*, in the *Plural Warriours*; and another *s* that makes the *Genitive Case*, as *Warriours's*.

Q. When the Singular Number ends in s, are both the s's to be written in the Genitive Case ?

A. Yes, for most Part; as *St. James's Park*.

Q. Is it then always necessary to do so ?

A. No; for when it sounds better without the *s*, the first *s* may be left out; as for *Righteousness sake*.

Q. But if three Substantives come together, how do you make the Genitive Case then ?

A. By adding *s* to the *second Substantive*; as, the *Queen of England's Crown*.

* Not regularly to the Plural, see above Page.

Q. How happens this?

A. Because the *Queen of England's* is reckoned but as one Substantive.

Q. Mayn't I say, the *Book Master's*, as well as the *Master's Book*?

A. No; for the *Genitive Case* is always set before the Substantive it is to be joined to.

Q. Is not this *s* added instead of *his*?

A. No; for then *Mary's Book*, would signify *Mary his Book*; so likewise when I say, *Susan's Fan*, the Sense would be, if *s* was put for *his*, *Susan his Fan*, &c.

Q. Is it necessary that an ['] Apostrophe should be always written before the *s*?

A. No.

Q. When must I write it?

A. When some Letter or Letters are left out in the *Genitive Case*.

Q. What is Gender?

A. The Distinction of Sex.

Q. How many Sexes are there?

A. Two, the *Male* and *Female*.

Q. Has the English Tongue any Gender?

A. No.

Q. How do the English distinguish the Sex?

A. They do it Four Ways

I. By two different Words; as, *Boy* for the *Male*, *Girl* for the *Female*.

II. By putting an *Adjective* to the Word, when there are not two different Words to express both Sexes; as, a *Male Child*, a *Female Child*.

III. By adding another Substantive to the Word; as, a *Man-servant*, a *Maid-servant*; a *Cock sparrow*, to express the *Male*, a *Hen-sparrow* for the *Female*.

IV. In some few Words the *Female* is distinguished from the *Male*, by the Ending, *ess*; as *Dutchess* is the *Female*, of *Duke* the *Male*.

Q. But what are the Words that you generally use, when you speak of a Thing that is Male or Female? &c.

A. When we speak of the *Male* we say *He*, when we speak of the *Female* we say *She*, but when we speak of a Thing,

a Thing, that is, neither of the *Male* nor *Female* Sex, we say *It*.

Q. *How many Genders have the Latins?*

A. They commonly reckon *Seven*; but the *Three* Chief are, the *Masculine*, signifying the *Male* Sex; the *Feminine*, signifying the *Female*; and the *Neuter*, signifying neither one nor the other. But I have already observed that these *Genders* among the *Latins*, do not always distinguish the Sex.

Q. *From whence comes the Word Case?*

A. From the *Latin* Word *Casus*, which comes from *Casum* the *Supine* of *Cadere*, to fall. *Case* being as it were (among the *Latins*) the *Falling* of the *Noun*; for the first, or *Nominative* Case, is *Deus*, then by declining or bending down, it falls into *Dei*, which falls into *Deo*, &c. But *Ut jocularia, ridens, Percurro: quanquam ridentem dicere verum Quid vetat?*

Q. *Whence comes the Word Gender?*

A. From the *Latin* Word *Genus*, which comes from the *Greek*, *Genos*, a Word of the same Signification.

CH A P. VII.

Of the A R T I C L E S.

BECAUSE *Nouns* commonly signify *Things* in a general and large Sense and Manner, certain Words called *Articles* are made use of in some Languages, as in the *Greek*, *Welsh*, *English*, and several others, to determine and fix their Signification, and apply them to a particular Thing.

For Example, if we say, It is a Happiness to be a King; this Expression is large and not determined, for it may be King of *England*, *Sweden*, or any other Place; but if you add *the* to the Word *King*, it fixes and determines of what Place you mean it is a Happiness to be King, and cannot be understood but of the King of a particular Place or People, mentioned just before. We therefore generally set before *Substantives* for the more clear and particular

cular expressing of them, two Words called *Articles*, *A* and *The*.

* An *Article* is a Word set before a *Substantive*, for the clearer and more particular expressing of it; as, a *Man*, that is, *some Man* or *other*; *the Man*, that is, *some certain Man*, of whom you have spoke before.

* There are two *Articles*, *A*, and *The*.

Note, These are really *Adjectives*, and are used almost after the same Manner as other *Adjectives*. Therefore I have not made the *Article* (as some have done, and as the late Learned Dr. *Hickes* told me he was for having it made) a distinct Part of Speech. These *Articles* answer to *Un* and *Le* of the *French*, and to *Ein* and *Der* of the *Germans*. It is true, the *Articles* are but few, but they are of very frequent Use; and such as will discover any Stranger in the World from a natural *Englishman*: And indeed it is not every *Englishman* that knows how rightly to use them. Though these be not absolutely necessary to some Languages, for the *Latin* is without them; yet they are so convenient, for the Clearness and Distinctness of Speech to others, that all the *Western* Languages have them, though variously used in each; and the *Eastern* Tongues have their *He Emphaticum*, and the *Greek* has its *ὁ*, which answers to one of our *Articles*.

* *A* is an *Article* that may be applied indifferently to any one particular Person or Thing.

A is a Numeral *Article*, or an *Article* of Number; and signifies as much as *One*; though less emphatically; that is, not in so strict a Sense as *One*, unless in this Phrase *all to a Man*.

* But when the *Substantive* begins with a Vowel, or *h*, then we write * *an*, instead of *A*, if the *h* be sounded; as, an *Eye*, an *Hour*; but a *Hare*, a *Hand*, an *Habit*, or a *Habit*.

Note, *A* or *An*, denotes or signifies the Applying of a general Word to some one particular Person or Thing, in a large and undetermined Sense; that is, not telling what particular Person or Thing you mean; as, *Patience is a Virtue*; and therefore is set only before Nouns of the *Singular* Number; for if a general Word be applied to more Particulars than *One*, it is expressed by the *Plural* Number. This is a particular Phrase, *a very few Verses*; *a very few Men*; where *note*, *A* is not put before the *Substantive Verses* or *Men*, but before the *Adjective Few*, used as a *Substantive*; for, *a Few of the Men*, *of* being left out.

* *The* is an *Article* that declares, or shows, what particular Thing or Person is meant in speaking or writing. It signifies as much as *that*, but less emphatically, that is not so fully.

Note, *The*, denotes or signifies the Determination or fixing the Sense of one or more Particulars; as we say, *Earth*, when we mean the *Element of Earth*; but we say, *the Earth*, when we mean the *Terrestrial Globe*, or the *Globe of the Earth*, (which is a determinate or fixed Individual, or Particular.) So we say, *a Bottle*, when we speak of some one particular *Bottle*.

The, is a *Demonstrative Article*, because it shows what Particular you mean; and is applied only to such a Person or Thing, as the Hearer or Reader knows or hath Reason to know, because of its Eminence, or because of its being mentioned before.

This *Article* is set both before the *singular* and *plural* Number; because we can speak determinately, or in a fixed

* *An* from the Saxon, *An*, *unus*, Goth, *Ains*, Greek *ἓν*, *Unum*. Vide Voss. Etymol. in Voce *Unus*.

Sense, as well of *many* as of *one Particular*; as, *the Man*, that is, *he who wrote the Book*; *the Men*, that is, *they who robbed the House*. In short, *A*, or *An*, does mostly note an undetermined Particularity, or Unity: *The* commonly determines the Kind or Kinds, the Sort or Sorts, Particular or Particulars, of Things.

Farther Observations concerning the Articles.

1. The *Articles* do properly belong to the Nouns *Substantive*, and are put before them: yet where the *Adjective* goes before the *Substantive*, as it generally does, the *Article* is put before the *Adjective*; as, *a wise King*, *a pretty Bird*.

Except, after *such* and *what*, and the Adverbs of Comparison; as, *so*, *too*; (and scarcely after any other Words;) where the *Article A* is put between the *Adjective* and its *Substantive*; as, *Such a Man*, *he gave me such a Book*; *too little a Coat*; *too big a Pot*. *What a Man is he?* *What a Noise is that?* *He is as great a Clown as you*. *He is as silly a Man*, &c. *What a sneaking Man is he?* (which otherwise is generally placed before them.)

These are particular Phrases or Ways of Speaking; *Many a Man*, for *many Men*; *never a Man*, for *no Man*: Though there is the same Difference between *many a Man*, and *many Men*; *never a Man*, and *no Man*, as there is between *every Man*, and *all Men*; for *many a Man*, *never a Man*, *every Man*, are taken Distributively, and the others are taken Collectively, as they call it.

2. We do not set these *Articles* before any *Adjective*, that does virtually, or in effect include them in it self; as in, *one Man*, *some Man*, *any Man*, *this or that World*; where *one*, *some*, *any*, do virtually include, *a*. So *that* and *this* signify as much as, *the*.

3. The *Articles* are not put to the *Pronouns*, *I*, *Thou*, *You*, *We*, *Ye*, *My*, *Thy*, *Our*, &c. We do indeed use them before, *same*, *self*, *he*, *she*; as, *the same*, *the self*, *a or the he*, *a or the she*; yet here some *Substantive* is understood, as *the same*, that is, *Person* or *Thing*; and so of the rest.

4. *Adjectives*, when they are used as *Substantives*, admit of the *Articles* before them; as *the News*, *the Adjective*, *the Substantive*: Where in the first Word *Things*, in the other two

two *Noun* and *Word* are understood: So likewise in these Examples, *A many*, put for a Multitude; *a Score*, *a Hundred*, *a Thousand*, *a Million*; the Article *a* is set before them, because they are counted Substantives: But all the other *Cardinal Numbers*, such are, *one*, *two*, *three*, and their Compounds, *thirteen*, *fourteen*, &c. have no Articles before them; but the *Ordinal Numbers*, such are, *first*, *second*, *third*, and their Compounds, *thirteenth*, *fourteenth*, &c. admit or take the before them, as *the first Book*, *William the Third*.

5. The Articles are not put before *Nouns*, when used in a general and large Sense, as, *Virtue alone makes a Man happy*. *Money answers all Things*. For in this Sentence, *the Piety of the Queen makes her beloved*; here we must say *the Piety*, because *of the Queen* being added to it, makes it particular.

6. The Articles are not set before the particular Names of *Virtues*; as, *Justice*, *Sobriety*, &c. Of *Vices*; as, *Drunkenness*, &c. Of *Metals*; as, *Gold*, *Silver*, &c. Of *Corn*; as, *Wheat*, &c. Of *Herbs*; as, *Marjoram*, &c.

7. The Articles are not put before a proper Name, because that of it self includes or signifies a determinate Individual or particular Thing.

Except. 1. When it is for Distinction Sake; as *He is a Churchill*; that is, *one whose Name is Churchill*; so *the Talbots*, that is *the Family of the Talbots*: Or by Way of Eminency; as, *the Alexanders*, *the Casars*, *the Marlboroughs*, *the Eugenes*; any brave and valiant Men being called by those Names.

2. When some Substantive is understood; as, *the Albemarle*, that is, *the Ship Albemarle*. *He was drowned in the Thames*, *in the Rhine*, or *in the Danube*, i. e. *In the River Thames*, &c. River being understood.

8. Sometimes the Articles alter the Sense of the Expression; as, *Thomas is a good Man*, *Thomas is the good Man*; that is, *the Master of the House*, or *the Husband*.

There are several other Observations which we might add concerning the Article; but these shall suffice for the present: Only we shall take Notice of the Division of the Articles into *Definite* and *Indefinite*.

The *Definite Article* is, *The*, which restrains or determines the Sense of the Word, it is put before, to some Particular.

The

The *Indefinite Article* is, *A*, which leaves the Sense of the Word, to which it is prefixed, undetermined to what Particular you mean.

Questions relating to the Seventh Chapter.

Q. *What is an Article ?*

A. An Article is a Word set before a Substantive, for the clearer and more particular expressing of it.

Q. *How many Articles are there ?*

A. Two, *A* and *The*.

Q. *What is the Use of the Articles ?*

A. To determine and fix the Signification or Sense of Nouns, and apply them to a particular Thing.

Q. *What is the Difference betwixt A and The ?*

A. *A* is used in a larger and more general Sense; as, *See what it is for a Man to have to do with ungrateful People. A Man, that is any Man.* But *The* is used to determine and distinguish *individually* and *particularly* Substantives common, which are applicable to diverse Subjects: For Example, *The Grecian Empire flourished under Alexander the Great, that is, that particular Empire.* So the Words *Palace* and *Prince* are common Nouns, which may be applied to any *Palace* or any *Prince*: which Words being put without an Article before them, in this Phrase, *a Palace of a Prince*, they afford no distinct Idea or Notion of what *Palace*, or of what *Prince* you speak; but if you put to those two Words the Article *The*, as *The Palace of the Prince*, thereby we are given to understand, that it is such a *Palace*, and the *Palace* of such a *Prince* which we are supposed to know, or to have heard mentioned just before.

Q. *In this Sentence Peter loves God; why has the Word Peter never an Article before it ?*

A. Because it is a *proper Name*; and *proper Names* have naturally no Article set before them; because they do of themselves *individually* or *particularly* distinguish the Things or Persons of which one speaks; and they being thus particularly distinguished, need not any more particular Distinction. And for this Reason, the Word *God*, signifying the *Sovereign Being*, has no Article before it. So likewise the Names of *Countries*, *Provinces*, *Rivers*, *Mountains*, &c. have no Articles before them.

Q. Do

Q. Do they then never set the Article before proper Names?

A. Yes sometimes: But then it is when some Word is understood; or else when it is used by Way of Distinction or Eminence; so we likewise say, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob; by way of Distinction from the false Gods, worshipped by the Heathens.

Use, it is true, has established a great many Exceptions, but they may be pretty fairly accounted for by the Rules we have already laid down, if not reduced to them.

Q. Are the Articles ever put before the Adjectives?

A. Yes: For though the Adjectives are not of themselves capable of receiving an Article before them, they being only applied to Substantives, to tell what they are; yet they often do admit one before them, but then it is always by Vertue of some Substantive expressed or understood; as will more fully appear by the following Examples; as, Alexander the great, Anne the renowned, Charles the First; that is, Alexander the great King, or, the great Alexander: So Anne the renowned Queen, or the renowned Queen Anne; so Charles the First King, that is, who was the first King of England of that Name; so, He is the happiest of all Men, that is, the happiest Man, &c. The Good of Goods, i. e. the good Thing of good Things: He came the last, i. e. the latest Man. In like Manner, we say, The Goods, the Whites, the Blacks; but these are put substantively, for the good Things, the white Colours, the black Colours; where you see Things and Colours are understood.

Q. Have the Pronouns any Articles before them?

A. No: And the Reasons why they have them not, are the same with those given under the fifth Question. But if by Chance any Pronoun should receive an Article, the Reason is the same with that given under the sixth Question.

Q. Have all Languages the Articles?

A. No: For the Latin is without them.

Q. Is the Article of any great Service to a Language?

A. Yes: For it contributes very much to the expressing neatly and clearly certain Respects, and certain Properties which could not be signified but by Help of the Article, and consequently there is no Doubt to be made, but that all those Tongues which admit of the Article, have a great Advantage over the Latin, in that the Article being expressed,

or

or left out, makes a great Alteration in the Sense, which cannot be distinguished in *Latin*; For Example, The Devil said to our Saviour in the Wilderness, *Si tu es Filius Dei*, which is, *If you are a Son of God*, or, *If you are the Son of God*; for these *Latin* Words may receive two Senses, which may be easily determined in the Languages which have the Article, but cannot so well in the *Latin*.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Article?*

A. From the *Latin* Word *Articulus*, a little Joint: The Article having in some Sort the same Use in a Sentence, as a Joint has in the Body.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Definite?*

A. From *Definitus*, which signifies determined or limited.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Indefinite?*

A. From *Indefinitus*, which signifies undetermined or unlimited.

Q. *What do you mean by Individual?*

A. By *Individual*, I mean any one Thing or Person, From *Individuus*, that is, indivisible; for one *individual* Thing or Person, cannot be divided into more Particulars of that Sort: or *Individual*, is *Single*, *Individually*, *Singly*.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the PREPOSITIONS.

THE *Prepositions*, of which we shall now treat, and the *Conjunctions*, of which we shall speak hereafter, are, as it were, the *Nerves* and *Ligaments* of all Discourse; and we cannot attain to a right Knowledge of any Language, without a good Understanding of these two Parts of Speech. The other Parts of Speech are Materials prepared for the Building; but the *Prepositions* and *Conjunctions* are the *Mortar* and *Lime* which are to cement and join those Materials together. But we must not say so of those *Prepositions* which are *inseparable* from Words; and which more strictly speaking are not so much *Prepositions*, in respect to our Language, as they are in respect to the Language from whence we have borrowed them. We might therefore pass them by, as supposing them to be sufficiently

sufficiently comprehended under the Words from which they are inseparable ; but for the Sake of those who know nothing but *English*, and that I may give them a clear Idea or Notion of this Sort of *Prepositions*, I shall explain the chief of them, when I come to that Part of the *Grammar* called *Etymology*.

But before I come to define what are *Prepositions*, and shew you their Significancy and Force ; I shall entertain you with an Observation of the Great Mr. *Locke's* relating to *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, &c. which by some are called *Particles*, as it were, little Parts of Speech. “ Besides Words, says that great Man, which are Names of Idea's [Notions] in the Mind, there are a great many others that are made use of, to signify the *Connexion* [*Joining*] that the Mind gives to Idea's or *Propositions*, one with another. The Mind, in communicating its Thoughts to others, does not only need Signs of the Idea's it has then before it, but others also, to shew or intimate some particular Action of its own at that Time, relating to those Idea's. This it does several Ways ; as, *Is* and *Is not*, are the general Marks of the Mind, affirming or denying. But besides Affirmation or Negation, without which there is in Words no Truth or Falsehood, the Mind does, in declaring its Sentiments to others, connect not only the Parts of *Propositions*, but whole Sentences one to another, with their several Relations and Dependencies, to make a coherent Discourse.

The Words whereby it signifies what Connexion it gives to the several Affirmations and Negations, that it unites in one continued Reasoning or Narration, are generally called *Particles* ; and it is in the Right Use of these, that the Clearness and Beauty of a good Stile more particularly consists. To think well, it is not enough, that a Man has Idea's clear and distinct in his Thoughts, nor that he observes the Agreement or Disagreement of some of them ; but he must have a Train of Thought, and observe the Dependence of his Thoughts and Reasonings one upon another. And to express well such methodical and rational Thoughts, he must have Words to shew what *Connexion*, *Restriction*, *Distinction*, *Opposition*, *Emphasis*, &c. he gives to each respective Part of his *Discourse*. To mistake in any of these, is to puzzle instead of informing his Hearer :
And

And therefore it is, that those Words, which are not truly, by themselves, the Names of any *Idea's*, are of such constant and indispensable Use in Language, and so much contribute to Mens expressing themselves well.

This Part of *Grammar* has been, perhaps, as much neglected, as some others over diligently cultivated. It is easy for Men to write one after another, of *Cases* and *Genders*, *Moods* and *Tenses*, *Gerunds* and *Supines*; in these and the like, there has been great Diligence used; and Particles themselves, in some Languages have been, with great Shew of Exactness, ranked into their several Orders. But though *Prepositions* and *Conjunctions*, &c. are Names well known in *Grammar*, and the Particles contained under them, carefully ranked into their distinct Sub divisions; yet he who would shew the right Use of Particles, and what Significancy and Force they have, must take a little more Pains, enter into his own Thoughts, and observe nicely the several Postures of his Mind in discoursing.

Neither is it enough, for the explaining of these Words, to render them, as is usual in Dictionaries, by Words of another Tongue which come nearest to their Signification; for what is meant by them, is commonly as hard to be understood in one, as another Language. They are all *Marks of some Action*, or *Intimation of the Mind*; and therefore to understand them rightly, the several Views, Postures, Stands, Turns, Limitations, and Exceptions, and several other Thoughts of the Mind, for which we have either none, or very deficient Names, are diligently to be studied. Of these there are great Variety, much exceeding the Number of the Particles that most Languages have to express them by; and therefore it is not to be wondered, that most of these Particles have diverse, and sometimes almost opposite Significations. In the *Hebrew* Tongue, there is a Particle consisting but of one Letter, of which there are reckoned up, as I remember, Seventy, I am sure above fifty several Significations". *Humane Understanding*. l. 3. p. 399, 400, &c.

* A *Preposition* is a Part of Speech, which, being added to any other Parts of Speech,

serves to mark or signify their State or Reference to each other.

Note, By a *Part of Speech*, is meant a *Word*, for every *Word* is a *Part of our Speech*. I use the *Word added*; for though the *Preposition* is added chiefly to the *Noun Substantive*, yet it is also added to other *Parts of Speech*; as for Example; before the *Pronoun*; as, he came *to him*, or *from me*; Before the *Verb*; as, *to fight*, *to read*, &c. Before the *Participle*; as, *after having read*: Before the *Article*; as, *with the Help of a Sword*: Before the *Adverb*; as, *from hence*; and sometimes after the *Word* it governs; as, *What did you sell this for?*

It serves to mark or signify their State or Reference to each other: That is, it shows what Respect or Relation one Thing has to another; as, *Peter goes over the Bridge*, or *under it*: I go *to the Place*, or *from it*: So as to its State; *John dwells at the Market*; *Charles lives in the College*; He lives *within the City*, or *without it*. Or you may take it thus,

A Preposition is a Word added to other Words, to show the Respect, or Relation one Thing has to another.

* The *English Tongue* has no Diversity of Cases, (which the *Greeks* and *Latins* especially have) but does all that by the Help of *Prepositions*, which the *Greeks* and *Latins* did partly by *Prepositions*, and partly by the Diversity or Difference of Cases.

Note, We shall therefore treat of the Doctrine of *Prepositions*, next to that of *Nouns Substantive*, since they are put chiefly before *Substantives*, and because the Meaning of these Particles, or little Words, being rightly understood, the whole *Syntax*, or *Construction* of *Substantives* is learnt at the same time.

For the *Preposition* being prefixed or set before the *Substantive* shows what *Respect* or *Relation* that *Substantive* hath to that *Word* which went before it; whether it be
a *Verb*,

a Verb, a Noun, or any other Part of Speech ; as, *the Temple of the Lord.*

But we shall now proceed to give some Account of the *Prepositions*, which we will not rank into *Classes* or *Heads*, but present you with the different Acceptations of several of them. I am sensible that what I have here done, is but slight and superficial to what may and ought to be done ; but if this shall meet with any Encouragement, I may be excited to make further Improvements in these Matters, by taking more Pains to observe nicely the several Postures of the Mind in Discourse. I shall treat of them in an *Alphabetical* manner.

ABOVE. Sax. BUFAN, BUFON.] * *Above* chiefly relates to *Place*, and answers to *below* or *beneath* ; as, *His Chamber is above mine.*

It has also divers other Acceptations.

1. It denotes being higher in *Greatness*, *Excellency*, or any *Degrees of Honour*, &c. As, *Cæsar could not abide to have any above him*, i. e. in *Power*, &c. *He is above him in Learning.*

2. *Above* signifies *beyond*, or *more than* ; as, *Above his Strength*, i. e. *beyond*. *He minded none of those above the rest*, i. e. *more than the rest.*

3. It denotes, *more*, or *longer than* : As, *He fought above two Hours*, i. e. *more or longer than*, &c.

4. It denotes *besides* : As, *Over and above these Evils, there was*, &c. i. e. *besides.*

ABOUT. Sax. ABUTAN.] * *About* relates both to *Place* and *Time* : As, *About Noon* ; *About the Field.*

1. *About* is used to denote *within* the *Compass*, or *in* some Part of ; as, *They have set up a Shop about Cheapside*, i. e. *in some Part of*, or *near Cheapside.*

2. It signifies *round about* : As, *They made a Hedge about*

the Ditch, i. e. round about, &c. *They made a Mount about the House*, i. e. round about, &c.

Concerning or of : As, *He wrote about the Circulation of the Blood*, i. e. Concerning, or of, &c.

Nigh, at : As, *It was about Night*, i. e. Nigh, or at Night.

About, Being put to Words of Measure signifies almost, near upon, more or less than that Measure : As, *About four Fingers long* ; *About five Bushels*.

About being put to Verbs, signifies ready to do, or the future Time of Action : As, *He is about to fight*, i. e. he is ready to fight ; *he is about to depart to morrow*, i. e. he will.

It denotes also the present Time of Action, and imports one's being busied and employed in the doing of any Thing ; as, *I am about Business*, i. e. doing or designing it.

AFTER. Sax. ÆFTER.] * *After* is a Preposition which relates to Time and Place.

It serves to denote Posteriority of Time, and Inferiority of Place, or Order, and is put in Opposition to Before.

1. Posteriority of Time, i. e. a being or coming after : As, *After the Deluge Abraham was born*, i. e. Abraham came into the World, or his Birth was after the Deluge. *After Julius Cæsar our Saviour was born*, i. e. Our Saviour came into the World after the Reign of Julius Cæsar.

2. Inferiority of Place or Order, i. e. A lower Degree of Place or Order : As, *The Lieutenant comes after the Captain* : *His Place is after the Master's*.

But *After* when it is put to Verbs has then reference only to Time : as, *After he arrived*.

There is a particular Sense of *After* used in Painting ; as when one says, *To paint after Raphael* : *To paint after Titian*, i. e. To copy a Picture made by Raphael, made by Titian. But we may here render *After*, by *According to* : As also in the following Phrase, *He writes after his Copy*, i. e. according to.

There are several other Senses in which *After* is taken ; as, *He longs after it*, i. e. he wishes for it with an ardent Desire. *After all*, i. e. After having well examined all Things ;

Things ; every Thing being well considered. So likewise in, *After that, i. e. It being so.* And this Expression is used by Way of Connexion to Discourse.

AGAINST. Sax. AGEN, ONGEAN, TOGEANES.] * *Against* hath two particular Significations very different from one another. In one it is used to denote *Opposition, Contrariety*; in the other *Situation of Place*.

And each of these two Significations has also two distinct Uses from one another.

1. In the first Acception, *Against* sometimes serves to denote a direct *Opposition* by which one designs to fight, to attack, to destroy a Person or Thing: As, *To march against the Enemy. To conspire against the Queen. To speak against Religion.*

So likewise, to speak *for* or *against*, where *for* and *against* are Prepositions, *Thing* or *Person* being understood.

Against, also, as it relates to *Place*, signifies, *first, over-against*; as, *His House is against mine. He lodges against the Church. I was placed against him.*

Secondly, It denotes *Contiguity*, or, *joining to*; as, in the following Instances, *To fasten a Thing against the Wall: He ran up a Wall against our House.*

It signifies also as much as *From*: as, *To defend the Myrtle against the Cold, i. e. from the Cold.*

For. As, *He prepares a Dinner against to Morrow. i. e. for, &c.*

Lastly, *Against* joined with *over*, i. e. *Over against*, is only used when Reference is made to the opposite Position of some Thing, Person, or Place: as, *That House was straight over against the other. Over against that Place. He stood over against him.*

AMONG, or AMONGST. Sax. ONMANG.] Signifies as much as *Between* or *Betwixt*; but there is a Distinction to be observed in the Use of them. *Between* or *Betwixt* properly signifies between two; and therefore when we speak of more than two Persons or Things, it is better to use *Among*. Though I confess *between* or *be-*

twixt is sometimes used when the Discourse is of more than *two*; but it is an improper Way of Speaking.

A T. Sax. Æ T.] * *At* denotes *Nearness* to a Thing or Place; also, *Time*, *Price*, the *Instrument*, *Cause*, *Manner*, &c. And signifies as much as,

In. As, *At School*, *at Church*, *at London*, i. e. in *the School*, &c. *It lies at the Bottom*, i. e. in *the Bottom*. *At the Beginning*, i. e. in *the Beginning*.

About. As, *At Sun-set*. *At Break of Day*, i. e. about *Sun-set*, &c.

Near, or close by. As, *He watches at the Door*, i. e. near *the Door*.

For. *He sold it at a great Rate*, i. e. for a great, &c. *What do you sell it at?* i. e. For *what do you sell it?*

With. As, *He plays at Bowls*, i. e. with *Bowls*.

According to. As, *at his Pleasure*, i. e. according to *his Pleasure*.

On, or Upon. As, *Shore is excellent at the Trumpet*, and *at the Lute*, i. e. on, &c. *Lully is skillful at the Harpsichord*, i. e. on, &c.

It is used also to denote all Sorts of *Business* or *Action*: As, *To be at Study*. *To be at Dinner*. *To be at Writing*, i. e. *He studies*. *He dines*. *He writes*, &c.

BEFORE. Sax. BEFORAN.] * *Before* is used to denote *Priority of Time*, *Order*, *Rank*, *Situation*, &c.

1. It denotes *Priority of Time*: As, *Before the Creation of the World*. *Before the Birth of Christ*.

2. It denotes *Priority of Order*: As, *the Captain marches before the Soldiers*. *The Horse goes before the Cart*.

3. It is used to mark the *Setting* or *Placing* of a Person or Thing; and when thus used, it does likewise denote *Nearness*: as, *Put it before the Fire*, i. e. over against,

or near, *He layed down the Child before St. Paul's Church* i. e. over against, or near,

It is used by Way of *Comparison* and denotes *Preference* of any Kind: as, *He values Gold before Learning*, i. e. more than, &c. And in this Sense it signifies, as much as

Beyond. As, *In many Arts before all, and in Rhetorick behind none; before all*, i. e. beyond all. It signifies also sometimes

Rather or Sooner. As, *I will do any Thing before I will comply*, i. e. rather or sooner. *I shall want Voice before I shall want Words*, i. e. sooner, &c.

BEHIND. *Sax. HINDAN, BEHINDAN. Heb. BEHAND.*] * *Behind* is a *Preposition* relating to *Place*, and is used to mark the Situation that is directly opposite to that which is expressed by *Before*. As, *Behind the Door, behind your House*.

It is used likewise when we discourse of Things that have not, strictly speaking, any *Face* or *Forepart*: as, *He hides himself behind the Tree. He lies behind the Bush*.

It is used also in a figurative Manner, when we speak of a Person that excells others in any Thing: as, *In that Part of Learning he leaves all others far behind him*, i. e. he excells all others.

BENEATH. or BELOW. *Sax. BE-NEOTH.*] * *Beneath* or *Below* is generally used in respect to *Place* or *Situation*, and answers to *Above*: As, *Beneath the Firmament*.

It is used also to denote the being *Inferiour*, or less than another in any Kind. As, *He is beneath him in Honour*, i. e. not so honourable. *He is beneath, or below him in Birth*, i. e. not so well born or descended.

This

This is a particular Phrase. It is beneath, or below him to do so and so. i. e. He would scorn, &c.

BETWEEN. Sax. BETWYNAN, BETWEONAN, or BETWIXT. Sax. BETWYX, BETWUX, BETWEOX.] * *Between* or *betwixt*, relates to *Time* and *Place*, and is spoken of two Terms or Words, in which the *Space* of *Time* or *Place*, of which we speak, is included: As, *Between the Promise made to Abraham, and the Coming of the Messias*; i. e. the *Space* of *Time* which was from the *Time* when the *Promise* was made to *Abraham*, and to the *Time* of the *Coming* of our *Saviour*. *Between Heaven and Earth*, i. e. *The Space that is between the Places Heaven and Earth*.

1. And in these Phrases, *Between* or *Betwixt Hope and Fear*: *Between the Father and Son*: *Between you and me*: There are always two Terms considered, as being equally distant from the Subject of which we speak. As for Instance, in the first Sentence, *The Man* is between *Hope* and *Fear*, i. e. *The Man* is as distant, or far from *Hope*, as he is from *Fear*; or, he has as much *Hope* as he has *Fear*.

2. It signifies as much as *in the Middle*, or *thereabouts*: as, *The River ran between the two Fields*, i. e. *in the Middle*, &c. *He sat at Dinner, between or betwixt them*, i. e. *In the Middle of them*, &c.

3. It serves to denote *Society* or *Union*: As, *There was a Conference between them*. *There is a great Friendship between him and me*.

4. It denotes *Participation*, or *Sharing*: as, *The Grey* is between *the White* and *the Black*, i. e. *The grey Colour* partakes of Part of the *white*, and Part of the *black Colour*.

5. It denotes *Privacy*: as, *That was done between them both*, i. e. *privately*, or *that no Person joined with them, in doing a Thing*.

BEYOND.

BEYOND. Sax. BEGEOND, BEGEONDAN] * *Beyond* relates chiefly to Place, or to the farther Side of which any thing is or goes. As, *Beyond the Mountain, Beyond Cheapside.*

It is used also to denote any Sort of Excess, either good or bad, and is applied to any Moral Things; or Things relating to the Manners of Men: as, *He goes beyond all in Justice, i. e. He excells all, &c. It pleases him beyond Imagination, i. e. It exceeds your Imagination to think how it pleases him. He rewarded him beyond his Meritt, i. e. The Reward was greater than he deserved.*

It signifies Superiority in any Thing: As, *He went beyond all in Valour, in Strength, i. e. he excelled them, &c.*

Beyond signifies also as much as, Over; as, *He is gone beyond Sea, or over Sea.*

It signifies also on the other Side, and answers to

Behither, or, on this Side.] * *Behither* is used to denote a Place that is near, as *Beyond* denotes that which is more distant or farther off: As, *The Parlour lies behither or on this Side the Kitchen. The Army lies behither, or on this Side the River.*

BY. Sax. BE, BI, BIG.] * *By* denotes the Efficient Cause of a Thing or Action; (or the Cause by which a Thing is performed or done) the Motive which makes one do a Thing, and the Means which contribute to that End: As, *He was slain by his Enemy, but was wounded first by his own Fear, then by his Enemy's Sword.*

1. It denotes the Efficient Cause of a Thing or Action: As, *All Things were created by the Word of God.*

2. It denotes the Motive which makes one do a Thing: as, *She is hurried on by her Passion.*

3. It

3. It is used to denote the *Means* by which one uses to do a Thing, or which contributes any Way to the Doing of it: As, *He satisfies all the World by his Conduct: he received the Letters by the Post: he persuades by his Reason.* It signifies also as much as

In. As, *By Day, by Night, i. e. In the Day-Time, &c. Through. As, By Cheapside, i. e. through Cheapside. Besides. As, By the Mark, Besides, &c.*

At. As, *To come by, i. e. To obtain, or come at.* There are Abundance of other Acceptions, but we must not enlarge.

Beside.] * Beside (*s. e. by the Side*) denotes Nearness, and signifies as much as,

By, or nigh to. As, *He sat beside the River, i. e. by or nigh to the River. Lay my Bones beside his Bones, i. e. nigh to, &c.*

It denotes Erring or Wandring. As, *He shoots beside the Mark, i. e. from, &c. He is beside himself, i. e. mad.*

Except, save, or but. As, *No body thinks so beside myself, i. e. except, but, &c.*

But its chief Use is to denote *Augmentation or Addition*; As,

More, more than, over and above: as, There were many Things besides these, i. e. more than, &c.

FOR. Sax. FOR.] * The Preposition *For* has a great many Significations: and denotes chiefly for what *Purpose, End, or Use*, or for whose *Benefit or Damage* any Thing is done; as, *Christ died for us. He got a Dinner for Peter.*

1. *For*, Serves to denote the *End or Object* which one proposes in any Action; as, *To fight for the Publick Good.*

2. It serves to mark the *Motive, the Cause, the Subject* of any Action, and may be rendered by, *in Consideration of*: As, *God hath done all Things for his own Glory. He does all Things for the Love of Virtue. I will write the Book for your sake.*

3. It

3. It is used to mark the *Use* for which a Thing is done; as, *Chelsey Hospital was built for disabled Soldiers.* *He has the Beef for his Dinner.*

4. It is used likewise to denote *Profit, Advantage, Interest*, and may be rendered by, *in favour of*: as, *The Lawyer pleads for his Client, I do it for your Interest. I wrote for your Satisfaction.*

5. It is used to denote for what a Thing is proper or not: As, *A good Horse for the Chariot. It is fit for a Cabinet.* *It is a good Remedy for the Fever.* In which last Example, *to cure* is to be understood; and so likewise in all such Sort of Phrases; for *For* is never used to signify *against*, wherefore some Verb is always to be understood. *For*,

6. This Preposition is used to denote *Agreement*, or *Help*, in Opposition to *Against*: as, *Peter is for me, John is against me. The Soldier fights for the King.*

7. It is used to denote the *Convenience* or *Inconvenience* of a Thing: As, *The Coat is too big for him. The House is too little for him. He is big enough for his Age.* Under this Head we may reduce the Phrase, *It is well Sir for you.*

8. It is used to denote, *Exchange*, or *Trucking*, *Recompence*, *Retribution*, or *Requit*, and *Payment*: As, *He changed Silk for Lace, He gave a Diamond for the Chrysal.* *He rewarded him for his good Services. To render Evil for Evil. He gave him Money for the Book.* Hither we may likewise refer these Phrases, *Eye for Eye. Fault for Fault.*

9. It is used to denote, *instead of*, *in the Place of*: As, *I will grind for him, i. e. in his Stead. I will watch for you, i. e. in your Place.* Sometimes it serves to denote a *Mistake*: As, *He speaks one Word for another: To take one Person for another:* And in this Sense we are to take this Phrase, *Whom do you take me for?* When a Man supposes all that Respect is not paid him which he counts his due.

10. It is used to denote the *Distribution* of Things by Proportion to several Persons: As, *He sets down twelve Acres for every Man.*

11. It denotes the *Condition* of Persons, Things, and Times: *He was taxed enough for his Estate, i. e. considering his Estate. He was a learned Man for those Times, i. e. considering those Times.*

12. It likewise is used to denote in the *Quality of*: As, *He had him for a Tutor: He hired him for a Coachman: He suborned him for a Witness.*

It signifies likewise as much as *Because of*, or, *By Reason of*. As, *To punish a Man for his Crimes*, i. e. *Because of*, &c. *To imprison him for Debt*, i. e. *Because of*, &c. *He could not walk faster for Age*, i. e. *By Reason*, or, *because of*, &c.

It signifies *As*, or *to be*. As, *He was sent for a Pledge*, i. e. *as*, or, *to be a Pledge*.

During. As, *He was chosen for Life*, i. e. *During Life*.

This Preposition is often used to denote the *Future Time*, or *Time to come*, as in the foregoing Example.

Concerning, *About*, *As to*; *As for me*, i. e. *concerning me*.

Notwithstanding. As, *After having spoke of the Faults of a Man*, we add, *For all that, he is an honest Man*, i. e. *Notwithstanding all that*, &c.

FROM. Sax. FRAM, FROM.] * *From* signifies *Motion from a Place*, and then it is put in Opposition to *To*; as, *He goes from London to York*, *He goes from School*.

1. It is used to denote the *Beginning of Time*: As, *From the Creation of the World*. *From his Birth*.

2. It denotes the *Original of Things*: As, *It grew so big from a small Seed*. *He is descended from the Family of the Stuarts*.

3. It denotes the *Order of a Thing*: As, *From Head to Foot*. *From first to last*.

And in these three last Senses it is put before *Adverbs*: As, *From thence*, i. e. *from that Place*. *From hence*, i. e. *from this Place*. *From henceforth*, i. e. *from this Time*, or, *at all Times after this*.

3. It signifies *Off*: As, *He took me from the Ground*, i. e. *off the Ground*.

IN or INTO. Sax. IN, INTO.] * *In* serves chiefly to denote, or mark, *Time*, *Place*, the *Manner of Being*, of *Thinking*, and of *Acting*, or *Doing*,

Doing, the Motive which causes one to act, and the Means we use to act by.

In relates to *Rest* ; *Into* to *Motion* : As, *Peter lives in the House* ; not *into*, &c. But, *Peter goes into the Cellar*.

1. It relates to *Time* ; as, *In the Summer*, in *the Winter* :

2. It relates to *Place* : As, *In the City*, in *the Country*.

3. It is used to denote or mark the different *Postures* and *Dispositions* of the Body, and the diverse Manners of Existence or Being, either of *Persons* or *Things*, with Relation either to *Art* or *Nature* : As, *To be in a suppliant Posture*. *To be in good Health*. *An Army in Battle Array*, *He is in his Shirt*. *He is in a Robe of State*.

4. It serves likewise to denote the different Circumstances of a Person's Fortune and Affairs : As, *To be in Favour*. *To be rich in Land*, in *ready Money*. *To be in War*, *To have his Affairs in a good Condition*.

5. It serves also to express the different Manners of Being, with Relation to the Passions and Affections of the Soul, to the Thoughts and Operations of the Mind : As, *To be in Fear*. *To be in Doubt*. *To put him into good Humour*. *To take it in good Part*. *His Memory is in Esteem*.

6. It denotes also the Motive and Object : As, *He did it in Revenge* ; *he works in Hope*.

7. It signifies as much as *Among* : As, *The wicked has not God in all his Thoughts*, i. e. among all his Thoughts.

8. It denotes the Change of a Person or Thing, whether it be into better or worse : As, *They turn Brass into Gold*. *Narcissus was changed into a Flower*, &c.

9. *In*, signifies sometimes *against* or *into* : As, *He ran the Poker in my Face*. *He put in his Mouth*.

OF. Sax. OF.] * *Of* answers to the *Genitive Case* of the *Latins*, and admits of the same Variety of Signification with it ; whether it be put after Substantives, Adjectives, or Verbs.

1. It signifies the *Author* of a Thing ; as, *The Works of Cicero*, i. e. the Works which Cicero wrote.

K

2. It

2. It signifies the *Possessor*, or *Owner* of a *Thing* ; as, *The Palace of the King*.

3. As it signifies all Sort of *Relation* or *Respect* that the latter *Substantive* has to the former, so it signifies natural *Relation* ; as, *The Son of the Earl*, or, *the Earl's Son*.

4. It signifies the *Subject* : As, *A Cup of Water*, a *Piece of Bread*.

5. It signifies the *Object* : As, *A Treatise of Physick*, i. e. concerning *Physick*. He writes of *the Mathematicks*.

6. It signifies the *Matter* of which a *Thing* is made ; as, *A Cup of Gold*, a *Building of Marble*, i. e. *A Cup made of Gold*, a *Building made of Marble* ; which Phrases may be turned into an *Adjective* ; as, *A Golden Cup*, a *Marble Building*.

7. It is used to signify the *Means* or *Cause* ; as, *To die of Hunger*, *to die of a Consumption*.

8. It is used to mark or denote the *Quality* of a *Person* or *Thing* ; as, *A Man of Honour*, an *Affair of Importance*.

9. It sometimes denotes an *Active Sense* ; as, *The Providence of God*, i. e. *the Providence by which God takes care of all Things*. Sometimes it denotes a *Passive Sense* ; as, *The fear of God*, i. e. *by which he is feared*. Sometimes it serves to denote both these Senses ; as, *The Love of God*, i. e. *the Love with which God loves his own People* ; or, *the Love with which good Men love God*.

10. It is sometimes only a *Note of Explication*, or *Specification* ; as, *The City of London*, *the City of Rome*.

Lastly, It signifies as much as, *Among* ; as, *Of four Daughters three were blind*, i. e. *Among four Daughters*.

From. As, *South of London*, i. e. *South from*, &c.

But sometimes we express *of*, especially when it signifies *Possession*, by the *Genitive Case* ; as, *The King's Palace*, i. e. *the Palace of the King* ; *Peters Horse*, i. e. *the Horse of Peter*.

OFF. Sax. OF.] * *Off* signifies *Separation* or *Distance* : As, *To put off his Cloaths*. He stood off from the *Fire*.

1. It denotes *Delay* : As, *He puts me off* ; i. e. *delays*.

2. *Off*

2. *Off* and *On* being joined together denote Inconstancy or Unsettledness : As, *He is off and on with me*, i. e. *He sometimes agrees and sometimes will not.*

ON. *Sax.* **ON**, or **UPON**; *Sax.* **UP**, **UPPAN**, **UPPE.**] * *On* or *Upon* relates both to *Time* and *Place* : As, *On or upon that Day.* *On or upon the Table.*

1. When *On* or *Upon* relates to *Place* it has diverse *Uses*, where it is employed in a *Sense* more or less proper, but it every where denotes the *Superiority* of the *Situation* [that is, being uppermost or over] of *Persons* or *Things* in *Respect* to one another : As, *To put the Dish on or upon the Table.* *To lie on or upon the Bed.* *To put his Hat on or upon his Head.* *A Bridge on or upon the Thames.*

2. And in *Allusion* to this *Acceptation* it is used in speaking of the *Imposition* or raising of *Taxes*, *Contributions*, &c. And then it serves to denote either the *Persons* of whom the *Taxes* are demanded, or the *Funds* from whence the *Taxes* are raised : As, *He layed Contributions on or upon all the Enemies Countrey.* *It is paid out of the Tax upon Malt, and upon Coals, Candles, &c.*

3. In speaking of *Business* it is used to denote what we are doing, and the *Matter* or *Subject* of our *Conversation*, *Deliberation*, or *Application* : As, *To dispute on or upon the Subject of, &c.* *To deliberate on or upon such a Proposition.* *To make Notes on or upon such an Author.*

4. It serves also to denote the *Cause* or *Occasion* of doing any *Thing* : As, *Upon the News of her Arrival he presently departed.* *On or upon the Advice of the Approach of the Enemy they fled.*

5. It serves to denote by the *Virtue* or *Consideration* of what a *Person* says, does, or designs any *Thing* : As, *On or Upon those Hopes we married,* *He ventured, relying upon the publick Faith,* i. e. *By Vertue of, In Consideration of, &c.*

6. It serves also to denote the *Terms* which one makes use of to affirm any *Thing* : As, *I protest on or upon my Honour.*

Honour. On or upon my Conscience. To swear on or upon the Gospels.

On or Upon does also signify

Concerning : As, He has agreed on that Matter, i. e. concerning, &c.

Also, *After* : And denotes the Reiteration, or Repeating, of something already done, or spoken : As, He thanks me with Letter upon Letter. He repeats Line upon Line, and Precept upon Precept.

When it is added to Verbs, it signifies as much as forward, or Continuation : As, To go on, i. e. to go forward, &c. And answers to Off : As, To put on. To put off.

OUT, or OUT OF. *Sax. UT.*] * Out or out of refers to the Matter, Place, Time, Number or Multitude from whence any Person or Thing comes, goes, is sought, fetcht, taken, &c. as, He took it out of the Fire. He came out of the Church.

It denotes the Reason or Cause of a Thing : As, She did it out of Spite, i. e. by Reason of Spite.

It signifies Distance : As, Go out of my Sight, i. e. from my Sight.

It signifies not within the Reach of : As, Out of Gun-Shot, i. e. not within the Reach of, &c.

It signifies Not in. As, Out of Date. Out of Place. Out of Fashion, Out of Heart, i. e. Not in Date, &c.

OVER. *Sax. OFER.*] * Over refers to the Height of Place, above which any Thing is said to be, or to be done ; as, A black Shower hangs over his Head. He holds the Sword over her Head.

It refers to the Distance of Place, beyond or cross, or overthwart which any Thing moveth or is made to move ; as, He goes over Sea, i. e. beyond or cross, &c.

Over

Over denotes *Excess*; as, *It comes by over much Ease*, i. e. too much, &c. *No Body is over happy*, i. e. too, &c.

It signifies *Above*: As, *It is not two Fingers over*, i. e. above, &c.

It signifies *through*; as, *He is known all over the World*, i. e. *through* the whole, &c.

It signifies *Power* or *Authority*. As, *The Captain is over the Souldiers*, i. e. *Above* in Command or Dignity.

Besides: As, *He gave me four over*, i. e. *besides*, &c.

Being put after Verbs it signifies to *desist* or *leave off*; as, *He gives over*, i. e. he *desists*, &c.

THOROUGH or THROUGH. Sax. THURH, THRUTH.] * *Thorough* or *Through*, serves to mark the Efficient Cause (or the Cause that brings a Thing to pass) of a Thing or Action, the Motive of doing a Thing, and the Means that conduce thereto.

1. *The Efficient Cause*: As, *Nothing is done but through the Permission of God. The World was created through the Power of God*, i. e. by.

2. *The Motive*: As, *She does it through Envy*.

3. *Thorough* or *Through* relates likewise to *Place*, and is used to denote *Presence* and *Movement into Place*; as also the *Medium* or *Middle of Place*: As, *The Power of God is seen throughout the World: He ran Him through the Body. The Beams of the Sun pass from Heaven through the Air to the Earth*.

Quite through, i. e. *through both Sides*.

'TILL or UNTIL. Sax. TIL.] * *'Till* or *Until* relates only to *Time*: As, *He staid till four a Clock*.

'Till signifies *Before*; as, *They did not dare to begin the War, till the Ambassadors were come back from Rome*, i. e. *before*.

It denotes *Delay*: As, *He hath born gently with me till or until now.*

T O. Sax. T O.] * To (or *unto*, which is not so much used as formerly) signifies,

1. Motion to a Place: As, *I go to Rome, to France, &c.*

2. Relation: As, *Good to his Friends. Favourable to the Church. I give Money to Peter. Like to me.*

3. It likewise denotes the *Use* for which a Thing is designed: As, *A Mill to grind Coffee. A Bason to wash hands.*

4. It denotes the *Capacity, Aptitude* and present Disposition: As, *A Man qualified to undertake any Thing. It is easy to do. Wine fit to drink.*

It denotes also *Design, or Intent*: As, *To invite to Dinner. To have somewhat to do.* It likewise signifies as much as,

In. As, *To Day, i. e. In this Day, To Morrow, i. e. In the next Day.*

For. *He did it to the End, i. e. for the End. He gave her 500 Pound to her Portion, i. e. for, or to be her Portion.*

Before. As, *He made an Oration to the Queen, i. e. before the Queen. He commends him to his Face, i. e. before his, &c.*

About, Of, Concerning. As, *It follows that I speak to that one Part of Honesty, i. e. about, of, &c.*

Towards. As, *Your Kindness to me is great, i. e. towards me, &c.*

Until. As, *The Parliament is prorogued to November, i. e. Until November, &c.* And here it denotes, *Delay.*

In Comparison of. As, *He is nothing to me, i. e. In Comparison of me. He thinks them Clowns to him, i. e. In Comparison of him, And sometimes it signifies*

May or Can. As, *I have none to comfort me, i. e. who may, can, or will comfort me.*

Lastly, This Preposition being put before our Verbs, answers to the Infinitive Mood of the Latins; as, *to fight, pugnare; to teach, docere*: Where we may farther observe, that *to fight*, is as much as *fighting*; so, *to teach, teaching*: As, *I love to fight, to teach, i. e. I love fighting, teaching.*

This Preposition is frequently left out both in Speaking and Writing : As when we say, *like me, give me, tell me, near me, &c.* In all which Places, *me* is put for *to me*.

To is ordinarily left out after *Verbs of one Syllable* that imply a Relation whether of Acquisition or Motion, especially before the *personal Pronouns*, when the *Nouns* or *Pronouns* immediately follow the *Verbs* ; as, *Give me the Cup. Send me my Book. Bring me your Sword.* And also after the *helping Verbs, Can, Let, &c.* And likewise before the *Infinitive Mood*.

TOWARD. Sax. TOWEARD.] * *To-ward* or *Towards* has much the same Signification as *Ward*, and is used to denote both *Time* and *Place*, though it does more naturally refer to *Place* than to *Time*.

1. It is used to denote *Time*, but without any precise fixing of it ; as, *Towards the Spring, towards Noon, towards the End of Winter.*

2. But it gives you a more precise and exact Distinction, when it is applied to *Place* ; as, *The Troops march towards the Rhine: To have his Eyes turned towards Heaven.*

From *Ward* (see *Ward*,) comes, *hither-ward, up-ward, down-ward, fore-ward, back-ward.*

As to the Words, *touching, concerning, according to, belonging to, during, &c.* these are rather *Participles* than *Prepositions*.

It is generally said, that *Prepositions* when they do not govern a Word or come before it, do become *Adverbs* : But I believe, that in almost every Example that is produced, some Word is understood ; and if so, there is no need that the *Preposition* should part with its own Nature or Property ; for we are to consider them according to their Sense or Use, and not according to the accidental placing of some of them.

UNDER. Sax. UNDER.] * *Under* is a Preposition that refers both to *Place* and *Time*.

But

But as it relates to Time, it is ordinarily restrained to the marking the Time of a *Reign* or *Government*. As, *Under the Reign of Queen Anne*, *Under the Government of Augustus Christ was born*; and by Abbreviation, or for Shortness Sake, we say, *Under Queen Anne*, *Under Augustus*. And we use it in the same Acceptation or Sense in speaking of the Time of the Birth of any fortunate Person, as, *He was born under a happy Planet*, *under a favourable Constellation*, i. e. *a happy Planet*, *a favourable Constellation ruled at his Birth*.

Under, as it relates to *Place*, denotes being lower in *Situation* or *Place*; as, *Every Thing that is under Heaven*, or *under the Earth*.

And it is in Allusion to this Acceptation, when we say, *He retired under the Cannon of such a Place*: *To put a Thing under Lock and Key*.

It signifies *privately* or *secretly*; as, *to do a Thing under Hand*, i. e. *privately*.

Lower, as, *under Lip*, *under Side*, i. e. *lower*.

WARD.] * *Ward* is a *Preposition* that is always set behind another Word, and denotes the *Tendency* of *Persons* or *Things* to one another; as, *Heaven ward*, i. e. *to Heaven*, or *toward Heaven*.

Ward comes from the *Saxon Weard*. The Saxons say *Eastward*, *Westward*, as we do *Eastward*, *Westward*, i. e. *towards the East*, &c.

Of this Word and the *Preposition To* is compounded the *Preposition*, *Toward*.

WITH. Sax. WITH.] * *With* is used to denote *Conjunction*, *Union*, *Mixture*, *Society*, *Accompanying*, *Means*, *Instrument*, *Manner*, &c.

1. It serves to denote *Conjunction*, *Union*: *He is Friends with all the World*.

2. It

2. It denotes Mixture : To put a little Vinegar with a great Deal of Oil.
3. It denotes Society, or Accompanying : As, to eat with his Friends. To go with him.
4. It is used to mark the Means : As, With the Grace of God. With the Help of his Friend. He purges himself with Buckthorn.
5. It marks the Manner of Being or Doing : As, To speak with Eloquence. To answer with Sweetness, with Haughtiness, &c.
6. The Instrument : As, He killed him with the Sword.
7. Opposition or Against : As, the Duke of Marlborough fights with the French, i. e. Against, &c.

WITHIN. Sax. BINNAN, BINNON, WIWINNAN, In old English, WITIN WITYN.] * *Within* is a Preposition referring both to *Time* and *Place*.

1. When *within* refers to *Place*, it serves to denote, that the *Person* or *Thing* of which we speak is contained or comprehended in that *Place*. As, *Peter is within the House. He walks within the Garden.*

2. When it refers to *Time*, it serves to fix and determine the *Space of Time*, with Respect to the *Thing* that is doing : As, *He will go within three Days. It will be finished within two Hours.*

WITHOUT. Sax. WITHUTAN, BUTAN.] * *Without* is put in Opposition to *Within* : As, *He is not within the House, for he is without Doors.*

It denotes what they call *Privation* or *Exclusion*.

It is used to denote *Privation*, that is, in speaking of a Good or Advantage we have not. As, *Nothing can be without the Grace of God. He passes the Night without Sleep, i. e. not having any, &c.*

Exclusion,

Exclusion, or being exempt or free from ; as, *He spoke without Passion*, i. e. free from, &c.

Without signifies *not with* ; as, *He did it without the Authority of Parliament*, i. e. *not with*, &c. *without Festing* ; i. e. *not with*, &c.

It signifies *void of* ; as, *He is without Wisdom*, i. e. *void of*, &c. *He is without Riches*, i. e. *void of*, &c.

It signifies *unless* or *except* ; as, *He will not come without being sent for*, i. e. *unless* or *except*, &c. *for, without he be sent for*, is not good *English*.

It signifies *besides* ; as, *There were two Hundred without the Boys*, i. e. *besides* or not counting the Boys.

Questions relating to the Eighth Chapter.

Q. What is a Preposition ?

A. A *Preposition* is a Part of Speech, which being added to any other Part of Speech, serves to mark or signify their State or Reference to each other.

Q. Whence comes the Word Preposition ?

A. From *Præponere* to set or put before. Because it is for the most Part set before Words, though it sometimes is set after them.

C H A P. IX.

Of the Adjective.

AS the *Noun Substantive* is used to denote the Substance of any Thing, or the Thing it self ; so the *Adjective* is used only to denote its *Manner* or *Quality*, according to the different Notions we conceive or form of it : For Example, The Word *Plant* denotes the Thing it self ; but if I would express some *Quality* belonging to it ; I add the Word *Fine* to *Plant*, and this Word *Fine* is called an *Adjective*.

* The *Adjective* is a Word that expresses the Qualities or Properties of a Thing : As, *good, bad, wise, foolish, great, small, &c.*

* The *Adjective* is joined to its *Substantive*, without any Difference of *Case, Gender, or Number.*

Except in the Words *this*, which makes *these* ; and *that*, which makes *those* in the *Plural*. Also in *whose* and *whom*, from *who*, *his* from *he*, *hers* from *her*, *its* from *it*.

When *this* and *that* relate to two foregoing *Substantives*, *this* refers to the *last* and *nearest*, *that* to the *first* and *furthest* : As, Peter the Farmer and John the Shepherd have both Expectations : *This* (i. e. John) expects Advantage from Cattle, *that* (i. e. Peter) from the Earth.

* The *Adjective* is immediately placed before its *Substantive* : As, *a good Boy, a good Girl, a good Thing ; good Boys, good Girls, good Things.*

Unless a *Verb* comes between the *Adjective* and its *Substantive* ; as, *Happy is the Man, the Man is Happy* : Or when some other Word dependeth on the *Adjective* ; as, *A Subject loyal to his Prince* ; also frequently in *Poetry* for the more harmonious Sounding of the *Verse* ; as,

Humane Face Divine.

Milton.

* But when there are more *Adjectives* than one joined together, or one *Adjective* with other Words depending on it, the *Adjective* is generally set after the *Substantive* ; as, *A General both wise and valiant ; a General very wise ; a General skillful in political and military Matters.*

Though

Though we likewise say, *A wise and valiant, a very wise General; a skillful General in political and military Matters.* So likewise when the Article *the* comes between them: As, *Charles the First, William the Third.* Also in these Examples, *Noun Substantive, Verb Passive, &c.*

A *Noun Substantive* with its *Adjective*, is reckoned as one compounded Word (and so is any governing Word with the Words that depend on it): Whence the Substantive and Adjective so joined, do often take another Adjective, and sometimes a Third, and so on: As, *A Man, an old Man, a good old Man, a very good old Man, a very learned, judicious, sober Man.*

Dr. Wallis takes Notice of two Sorts of Adjectives which are always set before their Substantives; the first he calls an *Adjective possessive*, the other an *Adjective respective*. But we have endeavoured to prove that what the Doctor calls an *Adjective possessive*, is really a *Genitive Case*. See Chap. V.

* When two Substantives are put together in Composition, the first takes to it self the Nature of an *Adjective*, and is commonly joined to the following Substantive, by a (-) Hyphen; as a *Sea-Fish*, i. e. *a Fish of the Sea.*

Note, If we reckon this first Substantive as an *Adjective*, we may properly enough call it, with Dr. Wallis, an *Adjective respective*; because all Manner of Respect or Relation is denoted by it, except Possession; as, *A Sea Fish*, i. e. *A Fish of the Sea*, or a Fish belonging to the Sea; *a Wine Vessel*, i. e. for Wine, or a Vessel designed to put Wine in: *a Turkey Voyage*, i. e. a Voyage to Turkey. *Home-made*, i. e. made at Home; *Self-love*, or the Love of one's self; *Man-Slaughter*, or the Slaughter of a Man; *a Gold-Ring*, or a Ring made of Gold.

But we may reckon these Words only compounded Substantives; since it is usual only for Adjectives to be joined to Substantives; and indeed in most of them some other Word may be fairly understood; as, in *Sun-shine*, i. e. the

the Shine of the Sun ; where of may be understood : So in *Self-Torment*, i. e. the Torment of one's self : So a *Gold-Ring*, i. e. a Ring of Gold. Here we may observe that in Substantives thus compounded, the Substantive that should be first is, * for better Sound Sake, placed last : As, the *Head-ach*, the Ach of the Head.

Adjectives are often used as *Substantives* ; as, *others*, for *other Men*, or *other Things* : So *One* has in the Plural *Ones*, as *little Ones*. But we shall have Occasion to speak of this afterward.

Adjectives do also often take the Nature of *Adverbs*, and then are reckoned as such ; as, *ill done*, &c.

There are other Things observable, relating to the *Adjectives*, for which see *Chap. III.* and *V.* as likewise the Etymology.

It has been observed, that generally the Article *The* is added to *Adjectives* when used as *Substantives* ; or when the *Substantive* is left out ; as,

*The Long are lazy, the Little are loud,
The Fair are snuttish, the Foul are proud.
See Chap. VIII.*

So all the Ordinal Numbers, as first, second, &c. are never added to a *Substantive Plural*.

It may not be amiss to take Notice of the Use of some *Adjectives*. *Sundry* and *Both* are added only to *Substantives Plural* : As, *sundry Times* ; *both the Men*. For, *Both the Man and the Woman* †, is a particular Way of speaking. *All*, being

* Or perhaps it may be not so much for better Sound Sake, as for the Weight and *Emphasis* of the Expression ; where the preceeding Part is that which is most to be taken Notice of, as specifying and particularizing the otherwise general Idea : Not *Fish* in general, but *Sea-Fish* ; not any *Vessel* but a *Wine-Vessel*. The like may be observed in all Words of this Kind.

† That is accidental. *Both* is in Saxon *Butu*, or *Butwu*, or *Ba*, or *Batwa*, as much as by *two*. If the *two* are of

being put to a *Substantive* of the Singular Number, signifies the whole Quantity ; as, *All the Wine*, i. e. the whole Quantity of the *Wine* : But being put to a *Substantive* Plural, it signifies the whole Number, as, *All the Boys*, i. e. all the Number of the *Boys*. *Every*, is joined only to a *Substantive* Singular, as, *Every Man*, *every Boy*, not *Every Men*, *every Boys*. *Much*, is added to a *Substantive* Singular, and denotes a great Quantity ; as, *Much Wine*, i. e. a great Deal of *Wine*. *Many*, is joined with a *Substantive* Plural, and signifies a great Number ; as, *Many Men*, for a great Number of *Men*. For *Many a Man* is a particular Phrase. *More* with a *Substantive* Singular, signifies a greater Quantity ; as, *More Wine*, i. e. a greater Quantity of *Wine*. But when added to a *Substantive* Plural, it denotes a greater Number ; as, *More Men*, i. e. a greater Number. So *Most*, with a *Substantive* Singular, denotes the greatest Quantity ; with a *Substantive* Plural, the greatest Number. *Each*, is joined only to a *Substantive* Singular, as, *Each Man*, not *each Men*. As to the Word *Enough*, whether it be joined to a *Substantive* Singular or Plural, as, *Wine enough*, *Books enough*, I see no Reason for a different Spelling ; though I grant it is usual to pronounce it when joined to a Noun Plural more softly * ; as, *enow*.

For *No*, when the *Substantive* does not follow, we use *None*, as, *Is there any Beer ? There is none*. We likewise use *None* with the Addition of these Words, *of it*, in the Beginning, Middle, or End of a Sentence.

the same Kind ; as, *Two Men*, they may be put Plurally ; but if the *two* are of different Kinds, they must be mentioned Singularly, and severally ; as, *Both the Man and Woman*, *Both the Horse and his Rider*, &c.

* This Difference of Pronunciation may possibly be the remains of the antient Declensions. In *Saxon* the *Nominative* Singular Masculine is *Genoh*, the Plural *Genohs*. In *Gothick*, the Singular is *Ganah*, the Plural *Ganoha*. I find no Difference in our old *English*, of *Robert of Gloucester*, between Singular and Plural, both are expressed by the same Word *Thou* or *Thowe*.

Questions

Questions relating to the Ninth Chapter.

Q. What is an Adjective ?

A. The *Adjective* is a Word that expresses the Qualities or Properties of a Thing : As, *good, bad, wise, foolish, great, small, &c.*

Q. Where is the Adjective to be placed ?

A. Before its *Substantive*.

Q. Is it always to be set before the Substantive ?

A. Not always. [See the Exceptions.]

C H A P. X.

Of the Comparison of Adjectives.

Comparison is, strictly Speaking, the setting of two or more Things together in the Mind, in order to consider their *Likeness* or *Unlikeness*, their *Agreement* or *Disagreement*, their *Extent*, *Time*, and other Circumstances ; but this is not what we are to treat of here : For the Sense in which we are to treat of *Comparison* is, as it relates to *Adjectives* which do make a *Comparison* between Things, as that one is *such*, another is *more such*, another is *most such* : So of three soft Things, one is *soft*, another is *more soft*, and the third is *softest* of all. Now to express this Comparison between Things, *Adjectives* are turned into other Endings.

There are three Degrees of *Comparison*, the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative* ; as *soft, softer, softest*.

1. The *Positive Degree* is used to denote or signify a Thing to be simply *such* ; as, *soft Wooll, a fair Woman* ; wherefore this is properly speaking no *Degree*, it denoting the

the Thing to be *such* without having any Relation or Respect to any other Thing.

2. The *Comparative Degree*, is used to denote a Thing to be *more such* than another Thing; as, *softer* or *more soft* Wooll, a *fairer*, or *more fair* Woman. And in this Degree the Comparison begins to be made, it having Relation to some other Wooll that is not *so soft*, or to some other Woman that is not *so fair*.

3. The *Superlative Degree* is used to denote the Thing to be *most such*; as, the *softest*, or *most soft* Wooll, the *fairest*, or *most fair* Woman.

* The *Comparative Degree* is formed or made by putting *er* to the *Positive*: As, *Softer*, *Fairer*;

Which Words are made by putting *er* to the *Positives* *soft* and *fair*.

But if the *Positive Degree* ends in *e*, then you cut off the first *e*, or, which is all one, only add *r*, to make the *Comparative*: As, *wise*, *wiser*; for if you were to add *er* * to *wise*, and not cut off the first *e*, it would be *wiser*.

* The *Superlative Degree* is formed or made by putting *est* to the *Positive*; as, *Softest*, *Fairest*;

Which are made by putting *est* to the *Positives* *soft* and *fair*.

But if the *Positive* ends in *e*, then the first *e* is cut off, or, which is all one, † *st* is only added to make the *Superlative*; as, *Wisest*, &c.

The *Comparative Degree* is likewise expressed by adding the Adverb *more* to the *Positive*; as, *soft*, *more soft*, or *softer*: So likewise the *Superlative Degree* is expressed by

* The *Comparative* in Saxon has *er*, *ere*, *ar*, *are*, *ir*, *or*, *yr*. The *Latins* in *ior*, *longior*; *tior*, *Sapientior*. The *Greeks* in *τέρος*, *αίτερος*, *έτερος*.

† The *Superlative* in Saxon has *ast*, *aest*, *est*, *ost*, *ust*, *yst*. The *Gothick* has *ista*, as the *Greeks* *ισος* in *Καλλιστος*, &c.
putting

putting the Adverb *most* to the Positive ; as, *soft*, *most soft*, or *softest* ; so that *soft* denotes the Positive Degree ; *softer*, or *more soft*, the Comparative ; *softest*, or *most soft*, the Superlative.

But *Adjectives*, such chiefly as come from the *Latin*, and that end in *ain*, as *certain* ; in *ive*, as *fugitive* in *cal*, as *Angelical* ; in *en*, as *Golden* ; in *ly*, as *Fatherly* ; in *less*, as *Friendless* ; in *ry*, as *Necessary*, in

Al as *General*

Able as *Commendable*

Ing as *Loving*

Ish as *Peevish*

Est as *Honest* *

Ous as *Vertuous*

Ant as *Constant*

Ent as *Excellent*

Ible as *Visible*

Ed as *Wicked*

Id as *Rigid*

Some as *Troublesome*.

Form or make the *Comparative Degree* by putting the Word *More* before them, and the *Superlative* by putting the Word *Most* before them.

Except *Able* and *Handsome*, which are compared according to the Rule.

Some *Adjectives* are compared by putting the Words *better* to make the *Comparative*, and *best* to make the *Superlative* ; as, *Learned*, *better Learned*, *best Learned* ; *Natured*, *better Natured*, *best Natured*.

These following Words, *big*, *hot*, and *fit*, were written formerly thus, † *bigg*, *hott*, and *Fitt* ; whence they do yet

* Of like Kind is *Earnest*, though it comes not from the *Latin*, but from the *Saxon* *eorneſt*, *georneſt*. But then it is observable that *georneſt* was originally a *Superlative*, the *Positive* being *georn* or *georne*, *ſtudioſus*, *deſirous*, and the *Comparative*, *geornor* or *geornere*, and afterwards *gernere* in later *half Saxon*. All come from the *Gothick* *Gairnan*, *deſiderare*, *Greek* *ἀγνυμαι*.

† This does not appear certainly. *Hot* in the *Saxon* is with a ſingle *t*. But the Reason of doubling the Letter ſeems to be to ſecure the ſame quick Sound to *hot*, *fit*, *big*, in the *Comparative*, &c. that is in the *Positive* : That they may not ſound *ho-ter*, *fi-ter*, *bi-ger*, and ſo loſe their Force.

retain the double *Consonant* in the Comparative and Superlative Degree ; as, *big, bigger, biggest* ; *hot, hotter, hottest* ; *fit, fitter, fittest*.

There are some *Adjectives*, which are Irregular, * that is, are not compared according to the foregoing Rules ; such are the

<i>Positive,</i>	<i>Comparative,</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Good,	Better,	Best (<i>bestest</i>).
Bad, <i>Evil</i> , or <i>Ill</i> ,	Worse,	Worst from (<i>worself</i>).
Little,	Less,	Least (<i>leassest</i>).

Note, Dr. Wallis, is for having the Adjective written *Least*, and the Conjunction *Leaft*. †

There are some Adjectives that cannot be compared, or take the Words *more, very, or most* before them ; because they do not admit of any Increase in their Signification : That is, in those Adjectives, we cannot say, one is *such*, another *more such*, and a third *most such* ; as, *all, one*, for of *three ones*, we cannot say, one is *one*, and another is *more one*, and the other is *most one*, &c.

These want the Comparative Degree ; *Middle, middlemost, very, veryest*.

Some Adjectives of the Comparative and Superlative Degree are formed from *Prepositions* ; as from

* This Irregularity comes from the accidental borrowing of Words of other Languages.

† *Leaft* is in *Saxon Laest*, in old *English Leest*. The Conjunction *Least* is a Contraction of *the-laes-the*, and in old *English* is *the leste*. There is certainly no more Reason for writing the Conjunction *Leaft* then for the other : But Dr. Wallis is offended that an *a* should be inserted in *Leaft* the Superlative, when there is none in *Less* the Comparative ; and he thinks it contrary to *Analogy*. But taking the *a* out would bear as hard upon the Quantity ; besides that *Less* has been formerly written *Leasse*. In short, if there were a Necessity of changing, it might be best to return to our old Spelling as it was three hundred Years ago. *Leest* for the *Adjective*, *Least* or *Leste* for the other.

* *Fore* comes *former*, *foremost*, [and *first*, as it were, *for'st*.] From *Up*, *upper*, *upmost* and *uppermost*. From *Neath* (obsolete) *neather*, *neathermost*. From *hind*, *hinder*, *hindermost*. From *Late*, *later*, and *latter*, *latest*, or *la'st*. *Moe* (formerly used) makes *more*, *most*, as it were *mo'r*, *mo'st*.

When *the* comes before an Adjective of the Comparative or Superlative Degree, we commonly put *of* after it; as, *the richer of the two*; *the wisest of all*.

The Words, between which the Comparison is made, are generally joined by the Conjunction *than*; as, *Wisdom is better than Gold*.

But in Words that have a Comparative Sense, and are purely *Latin*, *to* is added instead of *than*, as, *Superiour to all*; *Inferiour to none*.

Adjectives of the Comparative and Superlative Degree, do like other Adjectives often take the Nature of Adverbs; as, *ill done*, *much less*, *less pleasant*, *most learned*.

Questions relating to the Tenth Chapter.

Q *What do you mean by Comparison?*

A. The comparing Things between one another; whereby we see that one Thing is *such*, another is *more such*, and another is *most such*; where you see that in Order to make this Comparison between Things, we make three Steps, which are called three Degrees.

Q. *How many Degrees of Comparison are there?*

A. Three: The *Positive* Degree, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

Q. *How is the Comparative Degree formed or made?*

A. By putting *er* to the *Positive*; as, *Hard*, *harder*, *Fair*, *fairer*. But if the *Positive* ends in *e*, then you need add only *r* to make the *Comparative*.

The *Comparative* Degree is also formed by adding *more* to the *Positive*; as, *Hard*, *more hard*, or *harder*; *Fair*, *more fair*, or *fairer*.

* There are *forma*, *formie*, *formest*, *Adjectives* all. And from thence is *former*, *foremost*. We have dropped *forma*, and have not now a Word to answer it, except it be *First*. So *Late*, *Laete*, *serus*, *tardus*, is an *Adjective*.

Q *How*

Q. How is the Superlative Degree formed or made ?

A. By adding *est* to the Positive : As, *Hard, hardest; Fair, fairest*. But if the Positive ends in *e*, then you need add only *st* to make the Superlative ; as, *Wise, wisest* : The Superlative is also made by adding *most* to the Positive ; as, *Hard, most Hard*.

Q. Tell me what Degrees of Comparison the following Words are of ; *Hard, harder, hardest, more hard, most hard; Fair, fairer, fairest, more fair, most fair, &c.*

A. *Hard and Fair*, are of the Positive Degree.

Q. How do you know that ?

A. Because they denote or signify the Thing or Person to be simply so and so, without comparing them with any other Person or Thing : For if I say, *Mary is Fair*, that does not gainsay, but that *Sarah may be as Fair* : So if I say that *Iron is hard*, I may also say, *Steel is as hard*.

Q. But of what Degree of Comparison are the Words, *Fairer, more fair, Harder, more hard* ?

A. They are of the Comparative Degree.

Q. How do you know that ?

A. Because when I make a Comparison between *Mary and Anne*, I find that *Mary is Fair*, but *Anne is fairer*, or more *Fair*, that is, exceeds *Mary* in Beauty.

Q. Of what Degree of Comparison are the Words, *Fairest, most Fair, Hardest, most Hard* ?

A. Of the Superlative.

Q. How do you know that ?

A. Because when I make a Comparison between *Susanna, Elizabeth, and Lucy*, I perceive that *Susanna is Fair*, but that *Elizabeth is fairer*, or more *Fair* than *Susanna*, and that *Lucy is the fairest*, or most *Fair*, of either *Susanna* or *Elizabeth* : That is, *Lucy* exceeds them both in the highest Degree of Beauty.

Q. Is it good English to say, *More stronger, most strongest* ?

A. No : You ought to say, *Stronger*, or else *more strong; strongest*, or else, *most strong* ; for *more stronger* would signify as much as, *more more strong*, and *most strongest*, as much as *most most strong*.

Q. Are all Adjectives compared by adding *er* or *more* to make the Comparative, and *est* or *most* to make the Superlative ?

A. No :

A. No: For the Comparison of some *Adjectives* is irregular; that is, they are not compared according to these Rules: As, *Good, better, best, &c.* And some *Adjectives* do not form any Comparison at all: As, *One, every, each, all, &c.*

Q. How shall I know what *Adjectives* may be compared and what not?

A. Only those *Adjectives* may be compared by which we may say, one Thing is *such*, another Thing is *more such*, and another Thing is *most such*. But those *Adjectives* by which we cannot say one is *such*, another *more such*, and another *most such*, cannot form Comparison; as, *all*, for we cannot say, a Thing, is *more all*, *most all*.

Q. Do not Substantives form Comparison?

A. No: For though a Thing may have the Word *more* or *less* applied to it, as it is of a larger or less Extent than another Thing; yet it cannot be said to be *less* a Substance than another Thing. For Example, a *Plant*, cannot be *more* or *less* a *Plant*, than another *Plant*.

Q. Give me the Comparative and Superlative Degree of these *Adjectives* following; Sweet, Ripe, High, Good, All, Big, Loud, Broad.

A. Sweet, *sweeter, sweetest*. Ripe, *riper, ripest*. High, *higher, highest*. Good, *better, best*. All is not compared. Big, *bigger, biggest*. Loud, *louder, loudest*. Broad, *broad, broader, broadest*.

Q. Whence comes the Word Positive?

A. From *Positus*, and that from *Ponere*, to put or place: The Positive Degree being the first Step that is made, or the first Placing of the Thing, in Order to the comparing of one Thing with another.

Q. Whence comes the Word Comparative?

A. From *Comparare*, to compare, or to match one Thing with another.

Q. Whence comes the Word Superlative?

A. From *Superlatus*, lifted above the Rest, or exceeding the Rest in Degree. For Things are compared in Three several Degrees; either as equal, or more exceeding some one or others, or exceeding all, or at least very much exceeding in the Kind.

C H A P. XI.

Of the PRONOUN.

AS the too frequent Repetition of the same Words is disagreeable and unpleasant, so this Inconvenience could hardly have been avoided; since Men have Occasion to make frequent Mention of the same Things; if certain Words had not been made Use of, to supply the Place of *Nouns*, and prevent their being too often repeated; which Words are called *Pronouns*, that is, Words put for *Nouns*. For as *Nouns* are the Marks or Signs of Things, so *Pronouns* are of *Nouns*.

* A *Pronoun* is a Word that may be used instead of any *Noun Substantive*. As,

Instead of my Name, I say, *I*.

Instead of thy Name, I say, *Thou*.

Instead of his Name, I say, *He*.

Instead of her Name, I say, *She*.

So instead of saying *the Book of Peter*, we say, *his Book*; in speaking to *Peter*, we say, *it is your Book*, &c. So likewise when it is said, *I teach Thee or Him*; the *Pronoun I* represents to our Thoughts the Person teaching, suppose *John*, and the Words *Thee, Him*, the Person spoken to, or of, suppose *William or Thomas*.

Now we are to consider, that all *Discourse* may be brought under, or confined to these three Heads: That is, We either speak of our selves; to another; or of another. And these three Heads are called by the Name of *Persons*.

* There are in Discourse Three Persons.

1. For in speaking of my self, I use the Word *I*; and if more than one speak of themselves, they use the Word *We*:

We: Which Words *I* and *We*, are said to be of the *First Person*.

2. When we speak to another, we use the Word *Thou* or *You*; but when we speak to more than one, we use the Word *Ye* or *You*; which Words *Thou* or *You*, and *Ye*, are said to be of the *Second Person*.

3. In speaking of another, if of the *Male-Sex*, we say *He*; if of the *Female Sex*, we say *She*: But if we speak of a Thing that is neither of the *Male* nor *Female-Sex*, we use the Word *It*; and if we speak of more Things than one, let them be of the *Male* or *Female Sex*, or otherwise, we use the Word *They*: And these Words *He*, *She*, *It*, and *They*, are said to be of the *Third Person*.

Hence we may observe.

1. { *I* is of the first *Person Singular*.
1. { *We* is of the first *Person Plural*.
2. { *Thou* or *You* is of the second *Person Singular*.
2. { *You* and *Ye* are of the second *Person Plural*.
3. { *He*, *She*, *It*, are of the third *Person Singular*.
3. { *They* is of the third *Person Plural*.

And so likewise, all other *Nouns*, when spoken of, are of the third *Person*: Of the third *Person Singular* if only one be meant; of the third *Person Plural* if more than one be meant.

It is customary among us, (as likewise among the *French* and others) though we speak but to one particular *Person*, to use the *Plural Number*: But then we say *You*, and not *Ye*: So likewise out of *Complaisance*, as we use *You* for *Thou* and *Thee*, so we frequently say *Your* for *Thy*, and *Yours* for *Thine*. When we speak in an *Emphatical Manner*, or make a distinct and particular *Application* to a *Person*, we often use *Thou*; as, *Remember O King, thou art a Man*. Otherwise if any one speaks to another, in the *Singular Number*, as, *Thou Thomas*, it is reckoned a *Sign of Contempt* or *Familiarity*.

We likewise generally use *You* for *Ye*. We seldom use *Ye* before the *Verb*, unless by *Way of Distinction*, *Familiarity*, or *Contempt*: As, *Ye are the Men*: But it is oftener used after the *Verb* or *Preposition*: As, *I will give Ye a Taste of it*: *And I will go away from Ye*.

* The *Pronouns* have a twofold *State*, both in the Singular and Plural Number. The first *State* we shall call the *Foregoing State*, as, *I, We*; the second *State* we shall call the *Following State*, as, *Me, Us*.

The *Pronoun* is used in the *Foregoing State*, when it is set alone; as, *Who did it? I*. Or, when it goes before the *Verb*; as, *I love*, not *Me love*; *We read*, not *Us read*. But it is used in the *Following State*, when it follows the *Verb* or *Preposition*, as, *The Man loves Me*, not *The Man loves I*; *God bleſs Us*, not *God bleſs We*. So, *Peter gave to Me*, not *to I*; *John wrote to Us*, not *to We*.

* *Who* is an *Interrogative Pronoun*, (or a *Pronoun* that we commonly use in asking a *Question*) and is the same in both Numbers: Its *Following State* is *Whom*, which is also the same in both Numbers.

Whom, though it be naturally the *Following State*, yet Use, in our Language as well as in most others, places it before the *Verb*; as, *He is the Man whom I saw*, that is, *He is the Man I saw whom*. But it does for the most Part follow the *Preposition*, as, *He was the Man to whom I gave it*: I say for the most Part; because when the *Preposition* is put out of its natural Place, *Whom* does then go before it; as, *Whom did you give that to?* for, *To Whom did you give that?* *Whom do you go with?* for, *With Whom do you go?* *Whom* is sometimes left out; as, *He is the Person I gave it to*; i. e. *to Whom I gave it*.

Who is used when we speak of *Persons*; as, *Who is that Man?* But we do not say, *Who is that Book?* For, when we speak of *Things*, we use *What*, as, *What Book is that?* And though *What* be used sometimes when we speak of *Persons*, yet then it seems to have another Sense, than what the *Pronoun* has, and is rather a *Noun Adjective*; as, *What Man is he?* that is, *what Sort of a Man?*

Who and *Whom* are also frequently used when no Question is asked, and signify Relation to some Person ; as, *Peter is the Man whom I saw. They are the Men who built the Church.*

* From these *Pronouns* above-mentioned come several others, called *Pronouns Possessive*, because they signify Possession : As, from *Me*, come *My* and *Mine* ; from *Thee*, come *Thy* and *Thine* ; from *Us*, *Our*, and *Ours* ; from * *You*, *Your* and *Yours*, &c. So *My Book*, is the Book belonging to me ; *Your Book*, is the Book belonging to you.

Yet these *Pronouns Possessive*, are not always used to denote Possession : For sometimes they are used to express the Cause or Author of a Thing ; as, *This is Your doing*, that is, *You are the Cause or Occasion of this* : *This is my Book*, for, *This is a Book of my Writing*, or, *I am the Author of this Book*.

The *Pronouns My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their*, are to be used when they are joined to *Substantives* ; as, *This is my House* ; *This is my Book*. But *Mine, Thine, Hers, Yours, Theirs*, are to be used when the *Substantive* is left out or understood, as, *This House is mine* ; *This Book is mine* ; that is, *This House is my House*, &c. Likewise, if *Own* does not follow ; as, *It is Your own*, not *Yours own* ; so, *Our own*, not *Ours own*. Yet *Mine* and *Thine* are sometimes used when the *Substantive* is expressed, if the *Substantive* begins with a Vowel, but not else ; as, *My Arm*, or *Mine Arm* ; *Thy Own*, or *Thine Own*.

† *Hern, Ourn, Yourn, Hise*, for *Hers, Ours, Yours, His*, is bad *English*.

A Table

* You Sax. *eow* Fran. *Theot. juh.* your Sax. *eower* Franc. *juer, juerre.*

† *Yourn* comes from *eowerne* Acc. Sing. of *eower your*. Or from the Franc. *juweren*, Acc. Case. *Ourn* comes from

A Table of all the Pronouns.

*Their Posses-
sives to be
used.*

		The forego- ing state	The follow- ing state	With a Sub- stantive.	Without a Substantive
I. Perf.	Sing.	I	Me	My	Mine
	Plur.	We	Us	Ours	Ours
II. Per.	Sing.	thou or you	Thee	Thy	Thine
	Plur.	Ye or You	You	Your	Yours
III. Per.	Sing.	Male	He	Him	His
		Female	She	Her	Hers
		Neuter	It	Its	Its
	Plur.		They	Their	Theirs
The Inter- rogative	of Persons	Who	Whom	Whose	Whose
	of Things	What		Whereof	

I have followed Doctor Wallis's Scheme ; but you may, if you will, call *His* and *Hers*, *Its*, *Whose*, Genitive Cases ; since we have already shown that *His* is put for *He's*, *Its* for *It's*, and *Whose* for *Who's* : And Doctor Hickeys says, that the Pronoun of the Third Person has no Adjective Possessive, but expresses the Possessive Sense by the Genitive Case of

from *urne* the Acc. Sing. of *ure* our. *His* and *Hers*, seem to have been made in Imitation of the other : Or perhaps all have been made in Imitation of *mine*, *thine*. Some say *theirn* for *theirs*, and *hern* also occurs in old English for *theirs* : Which in Saxon would be *heora* or *hyra* ; but in Fraco. Th. *hiran*, *heran*.

the Pronoun ; as by *His*, of *him* ; *Hire*, of *her*, &c. And it is probable, that *Ours* comes from the Saxon Genitive *Ures*, * and *Yours* from *Eoweres*, by Contraction and softening the Sound. *Whereof* is generally reckoned an *Adverb*. *Mine* and *Thine*, *Ours* and *Yours*, have the Preposition of sometimes before them ; as, none of *His* or of *Hers*, a Friend of *mine* or of *thine*, of *Ours*, or of *Yours*.

* The *Pronouns* are likewise divided into *Substantives* and *Adjectives* ; the *Pronouns Substantive* are, *I*, *Thou* or *You*, *We*, *Ye* or *You*, *Himself*, and *Themselves* : The *Adjectives* are, *He*, *She*, *They*, *It*, *My*, *Mine*, *Thy*, *Thine*, *Our*, *Ours*, *Your*, *Yours*, *Her*, *Their*, *Theirs*, *Who*, *What*.

* The following Words, *This*, *That*, *The same*, are not *Pronouns*, but *Adjectives*.

For they are not put to supply the Place of the *Noun Substantive* ; but are joined to *Substantives*, just as other *Adjectives* are ; as, *This Man*, *That Man*, *Which Man*, *The same Man*. And if at any Time we meet them without their *Substantives*, which is not often, yet the *Substantives* are understood. So we likewise say, *One*, *Many*, *All*, *the Learned*, *the Unlearned*, their *Substantives* being left out : Yet we do not therefore use to rank these *Adjectives* among the Number of *Pronouns*.

* A Learned Divine says he should have thought so too, if the *Saxons* had so expressed themselves, and if the same kind of Expressions had been uninterruptedly handed down to us : But the Fact is contrary. For Instance *Godes rice is eower not eoweres*, old *Engl. The Kingdom of God is zour not zours*. Wherefore the truer Account seems to be this : That we have made *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, and *theirs*, contrary to the old form out of *Her*, *our*, *your*, and *their*, in the same Way as we have made most of our *Genitives* : Which Way was indeed owing to the old *Saxon Genitive* in three Declensions.

* *This* makes in the Plural Number *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

1. *That* is often used instead of * *Who*, *Whom*, or *Which*; as, I saw a Man *that* [who] had been on the same Side *that* [which] I had been on. He is the Man *that* [whom] we saw.

2. *This* and *That* are called *Demonstratives*, because they show what particular Person or Thing you mean: And they frequently have *Very* put after them, for the fuller and more clear *Demonstration* of what you mean.

3. When *This* and *That* are used in Relation to two foregoing Words, *This* has Respect to the last and nearest Word of the two, *That* to the former and more distant; as, Peter and Charles are both brave Men, but *this* is most famous for his Conduct, *that* for his Valour. Here *This* relates to Charles, *That* to Peter.

This and *That* are said both of Persons and Things; as, *This* or *That* Man, *This* or *That* Book.

* *Which* is an *Adjective*, and is the same in both Numbers; it is used when we speak of Things, as *Who* and *Whom* are when we speak of Persons.

Which is called an *Interrogative* when it is used in asking a Question; as, *Which* is the Place? And it is also called a *Relative*, when it has Relation to some *Substantive* expressed or understood; as, *Which* Thing will never do. Here is the Ring *which* [Ring] you lost.

* *Own* which is used sometimes after the *Pronouns Possessive* in an *Emphatical* or expressive

* *That*, *ille*, is from the Saxon *thaet*, *that*. *That*, *qui*, *who*, seems to be made from *tha* the signifying the same. *Ealle tha the byt gehyrden* : *Omnes qui illud audierunt*. All who heard that.

Manner,

Manner, is also an *Adjective*; as, *My own House, Your own Lands, Alexander's own Sword.*

* The Word *Self* makes in the Plural *Selves*, and has always a *Pronoun Adjective* before it; as, *My Self, thy Self, Our Selves, your Selves.*

But we commonly say *Himself* for *His Self*, *It Self* for *Its Self*, and *Themselves* for *Their Selves*; except *Own* be added, for then we say, *His own self, Its own self, Their own selves.*

Sometimes for the more full and emphatical expressing of the Person, we double the *Pronoun*: As, for *My Self* we say, *I my Self*; for *thy Self*, *thou thy Self*, or rather *You your Self*; for *himself*, *he himself*; for *our selves*, *we our selves*; for *your selves*, *ye or you your selves*; for *themselves*, *they themselves*: Or else we put *own* between the *Pronoun* and *Self*; as, *my own self, thy own self, or your own self, His own self, our own selves, your own selves, their own selves.*

This Word *Self* is really a *Noun Substantive*, and is also often used in Composition with other *Substantives*, as *Self-Love*, that is, the Love of one's Self.

N. B. There is hardly any *Substantive* among the *Latins* that answers to this Word; that which comes nearest to it, is *Persona*, or *Propria Persona*; as the Queen's self, (or the Queens Majesty) loveth Righteousness, may be thus translated into *Latin*, *Regina ipsa, Regia Majestas, Regina persona propria amat Justitiam.* So likewise among the *Greek Poets* we meet with *is, βιν, κρατῶ*, as, *βιν, Ἡρακλῆϊν*, or, *Ἡρακλῆος βιν*, Hercules's Self, Hercules himself.

Self comes from the *Saxon Word Sylf*, and that from the *Gothick Word Silba*. The *Saxons* used thus to join it to the *Pronouns*, *Ic sylf, I my self, Wes sylf, our selves, His sylfes, of himself.* It was likewise compounded with *Nouns Substantive*, as *Petrus sylf, Peter's self.*

We often use,

Hereof	Of this	Hereabouts	About this Place
Thereof	Of that	Thereabouts	About that Place
Whereof	Of which	Whereabouts	About what Place
Hereby	By this	Herein	In this
Thereby for	By that	Therein for	In that
Whereby	By what	Wherein	In which; and in
Hereupon	Upon this	Herewith	With this (what?
Thereupon	Upon that	Therewith	With that
Whereupon	Upon what	Wherewith	With which, and (with what?

But these are by some called *Adverbs*, and therefore might have been placed among them.

In the Word *Whatsoever* the *Substantive* sometimes comes between *What* and *soever*; as, *What Place soever I be in*: But when the *Substantive* does not come between, it is better to use *Whatever*.

Questions relating to the Eleventh Chapter.

Q. What is a Pronoun?

A. A *Pronoun* is a Word that may be used instead of any *Noun Substantive*; as instead of my Name, I say, *I*; instead of thy Name, I say, *Thou*.

Q. What do you mean by Three Persons?

A. Three Heads which comprehend or contain all the Branches of Discourse or Speech. And though the Word *Person* does more strictly relate to *Rational Creatures*, yet it is in a Grammatical Sense applied to any Thing whatever that is the Subject of our Discourse or Conversation.

Q. What Pronouns are of the First Person?

A. *I*, is of the first Person Singular; *We*, of the first Person Plural.

Q. What Words are of the Second Person?

A. *Thou* or *You* is of the second Person Singular, and *Ye* or *You* of the second Person Plural.

Q. But we use You, when we speak only to one Person, how can that be then of the Plural Number?

A. Custom

A. Custom has made us to do so ; the *Verb* that is put to it is always of the Plural Number. For, we say, *You love*, which is the Plural, and not *You lovest* which is the Singular. And it is counted ungentile and rude to say, *Thou doest so and so*.

Q. What Pronouns are of the Third Person ?

A. *He, She, and It*, are of the third Person Singular, and *They*, is of the third Person Plural. As likewise all *Substantives* whatever, when they are spoken of, are of the third Person ; of the third Person Singular, if only one be meant, of the third Person Plural, if more than one be meant.

Q. What do you mean by the Foregoing and Following State of the Pronoun ?

A. The *Pronouns Substantive* have two different Endings, one Ending that is used when it comes before the *Verb* ; as, *I love*, or *We love*, and this is called the *Foregoing State*, because it goes before the *Verb* : The other Ending is used after the *Verb* or *Preposition*, and is therefore called the *Following State of the Pronoun*, because it follows the *Verb*, &c. As, *John loves Us*, not *We* ; *My Father loves Me*, not *I*.

Q. Tell me which Pronouns are Substantive and which are Adjective ?

A. The *Pronouns Substantive* are, *I, Thou or You, Who*, &c. the *Pronouns Adjective* are, *He, She, My or Mine, Thy or Thine, Your or Yours*, &c.

Though *He* and *She* are most frequently used as *Substantives*.

Q. What Difference is there in the Use of *Who* and *Which* ?

A. *Who* is used when we speak of *Persons*, *Which* when we speak of *Things* ; as, *The Book which I bought*, not *who* or *whom I bought*, &c.

Q. What do you mean by an Interrogative Pronoun ?

A. A *Pronoun* that is used in asking a Question.

Q. What is a Pronoun Possessive ?

A. A *Pronoun* that is used to denote or signify Possession ; as, *My Book*, that is, the Book that belongs to me.

Q. Tell me which are the Pronouns Possessive ?

A. The *Pronouns Possessive* are, *My or Mine, Thy or Thine, Her or Hers, Our or Ours, Your or Yours, Their or Theirs*.

Q. Is

Q. Is there any Difference between My and Mine, Thy and Thine ? &c.

A. Yes : My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their, are joined to Substantives ; but, Mine, Thine, Hers, Ours, Yours, Theirs, are used when the Substantive is left out ; as, Whose Book is this ? Mine. But these two Mine and Thine, are sometimes used when the Substantive is expressed, if the Substantive begins with a Vowel, and not else ; as, My Affair or Mine Affair, Thy Oath or Thine Oath.

Q. What do This and That make in the Plural ?

A. This makes These, That makes Those.

Q. What Parts of Speech are this, that, same, which ?

A. They are rather Adjectives than Pronouns.

Q. What do you mean by a Relative Word ?

A. A Word that has Relation or refers to some other ; as, That is the Book which [Book] I lent you ; ---where which relates to the Word Book understood.

Q. What is a Demonstrative Word ?

A. A Word that is used in Order to our more fully expressing or declaring what we mean : This and That are Demonstrative Words.

Q. Whence comes the Word Pronoun ?

A. From Pronomen, because it is put pro, for or instead of, Nomen a Noun.

Q. Whence comes the Word Interrogative ?

A. From Interrogare to ask a Question.

Q. Whence comes the Word Relative ?

A. From Relatus, that hath Relation, or is referred to some other Thing.

Q. Whence comes the Word Demonstrative ?

A. From Demonstrare to show or declare.

C H A P. XII.

Of the Verbs, with Notes concerning Tenses or Times, Persons, and Moods.

AS the *Verb* is the chief Word in a Sentence, so the *Grammarians* have taken no small Pains in giving us Definitions of it: But I shall content my self with the common Definition.

* A *Verb* is a Word that betokeneth *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering*.

1. *Being* is here to be taken not only in its common Sense of *Existence*, but also in its largest Sense, as it denotes the *Being* in some Posture or Situation, or Circumstance, or some Way or other affected; as, *to stand*, *to sit*, *to hang*, *to lie*, *to abide*, *to be cold*, *to be hot*, *to be wet*.

2. *Doing* denotes all Manner of Action; as, *to fight*, *to write*, *to play*, *to dance*, &c.

3. *Suffering* denotes the Impressions that *Persons* or *Things* receive: We are to consider, that as *Persons* or *Things* act or do, so they often are acted upon, or become the Subject of Action themselves; as, *Charles beats*, here *beats* denotes the Action of *Charles*; *Charles is beaten*, here *is beaten* denotes the Impression or Suffering that *Charles* receives; for *Charles* is the Subject on which the Action of *Beating* is exercised. So *Peter loves*, here *loves* denotes the Action of *Peter*; *Peter is loved*, here *is loved* denotes that Somebody loves *Peter*; or that he is the Object about which the Passion of Love is exercised. Therefore,

* All those Words that denote or signify, *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering*, are called *Verbs*.

Those

Those *Verbs* that signify merely *Being*, may be called *Essential Verbs*; those that signify *Doing*, are called *Verbs Active*; those that signify *Suffering*, are called *Verbs Passive*. But we have, strictly speaking, no *Verbs Passive*; how that Defect is supplied, we shall show afterwards.

NOTE I. Of Tense or Time.

* The *Tense* or *Time* of a *Verb* relates to a Thing a *doing*, *done*, or *not done*.

As for *Tenses* or *Times*, the natural and proper Number is three, because all *Time* is either *past*, *present*, or *to come*: That is,

- I. The *Present Time*, that *now is*.
- II. The *Preter Time*, that *is past*.
- III. The *Future Time*, that *is yet to come*.

In *Greek* the Number is increased to *Eight* or *Nine*, in *Italian* to *Seven*, in *French* and *Spanish* there are *Six*, in *English* (as in *Dutch*) we have properly but *Two*; but by the Help of *Auxiliary* or *Assistent Verbs*, we make up as many as there are in *Latin*, that is *Six*: For if we consider whether an *Action* be perfect, or imperfect; we may make *Six Tenses* or *Times*; that is, *Three Times* of the *Imperfect Action*, and *Three Times* of the *Perfect Action*. As,

- I. The *Present Time* of the *Imperfect Action*; as, *I sup, I do sup, or I am at Supper now*, but have not yet done.
- II. The *Preter Time* of the *Imperfect Action*; as, *I was at Supper then*, but had not yet done it.
- III. The *Future Time* of the *Imperfect Action*; as, *I shall sup, or shall be yet at Supper*, but not that I shall have then done it.
- IV. The *Present Time* of the *Perfect Action*; as, *I have supped*, and it is now done.
- V. The *Preter Time* of the *Perfect Action*; as, *I had then supped*, and it was then done.
- VI. The

VI. The *Future Time* of the Perfect Action ; as, *I shall have supped*, and shall have done it. *

N. B. 1. In *Latin* the *Present Time* of the Perfect Action, is commonly called the *Preterperfect Time*.

2. And the *Preter Time* of the Perfect Action, is commonly called the *Preter-pluperfect*, that is, the *Preter* more than *Perfect* : But how properly it is called by this Name, I shall not here determine. Hence we may reckon up *Six Tenses* or *Times*, two of the *Present Time*, two of the *Preter Time*, and two of the *Future Time*. These *Six Times* are in *Latin* expressed thus,---1. *Cæn-o*. 2. *Cæn-abam*. 3. *Cæn-abo*. 4. *Cæn-avi*, 5. *Cæn-averam*. 6. *Cæn-avero*. Here you see the *Latins* have different *Endings* to express these *Times*. But if we consider the *Times* according to their being expressed by the Changing the *Ending*, we have in *English* but two distinct *Tenses* or *Times*, we making use of certain Words called *Auxiliary*, or *Helping Verbs*, to express the Rest of the *Times*.

* There are in *English*, two *Tenses* or *Times*, the *Present Time*, and the *Preter Time*.

* The *Present Tense* or *Time* is the *Verb* it self, as *Burn*.

* The *Preter Tense* or *Time*, is commonly made by adding *ed* to the *Present Time*, as *Burn-ed*.

* The Learned Dr. *Clarke* has not thought this Division of the *Tenses* to be beneath his Notice : For in his judicious and accurate Edition of *Homer*, he has observed the Mistakes that even Learned Men have fallen into, both in the construing of Authors, as well as in writing of *Latin*, from want of their Knowledge of this Division of the *Tenses*. See p. 5, 6. &c.

But

But if the *Present Tense* ends in *E* as *Love*, then the *Preter Tense* is made by only adding *D* to the *Present*; as, *Loved*. The frequent Contraction of this *Tense* is very blameable: As, *Lov'd* for *loved*, *drown'd* for *drowned*; unless in *Poetry* when the *Verse* requires it. See *Note* to the 16th Chapter.

* In some Words whose *Present Tense* ends in *D* or *T*, the *Preter Tense* is the same with the *Present Tense*, as *read*, *read*, and then the Sense of the Place, and the *Helping Verbs*, must distinguish them. It is very probable they are Contractions of *ed*, and so should be writ with a double *dd* or *tt*; as, *I have readd*, *sheadd*, or *shedd*, *shreadd*, *spreadd*, *castt*, *hifft*, *knitt*, *hurtt*, *putt*, *shutt*, *settt*, *slitt*, *splitt*, *thrustt*, *wett*, *sweatt*.

There are a great many Irregularities in the *Preter Tense*, that is, there are a great many Words of this *Tense*, which do not end in *ed*. But of them we shall speak afterwards.

There is an Observation yet remains to be spoke to concerning the expressing the *Time past* in *English*, but we shall speak of that, when we come to give you a Scheme of the *Verbs*.

NOTE II. Of the Persons of the Verb.

When we spoke of the *Pronouns*, there was Mention made of the *Persons*, which are three in both *Numbers*; *I*, *Thou* or *You*, *He* or *She*, for the *Singular*; *We*, *Ye* or *You*, and *They*, for the *Plural*.

* The Distinction of *Persons* and *Numbers* in the *English Verbs*, is chiefly signified by these *Pronouns* being put before them; as, *I burn*, *They burn*; or in the third *Person* by any other *Substantive*; as, *The Fire burns*, *The Boys play*.

Every

Every one of these *Pronouns* causes an Alteration in the Terminations of the *Latin Verbs* : But in *English* there is no Change at all made by any, except in

* The *Second Person Singular* of the *Present Tense*, and in the *Second Person Singular* of the *Preter Tense*, which Persons are distinguished by the Addition of *Est* ; as, *Thou burnest, Thou readest, Thou burned'st, Thou loved'st*. So likewise

* In the *third Person* of the *Present Tense*, an Alteration is made by adding the Ending *Eth*, or *S*, (or *Es* if the Pronunciation requires it;) as, *He burneth or burns, He readeth or reads*. In all the other Persons the Word is the same ; as, *I burn, We burn, Ye burn, They burn*. So, *I burned, He burned, We burned, Ye burned, They burned, &c.*

If the *Present Tense* ends in *E*, then *st* is added instead of *Est*, in the *Second Person*, and *th* instead of *Eth*, in the *Third Person* ; as, *I love, Thou lovest, He loveth*.

Instead of the ending *Eth* the *S* is now most commonly used ; * but this Change is very blameable, unless it may be allowable in *Poetry*, since it has wonderfully multiplied a Letter which was before too frequent in the *English* Tongue, and added to that *Hissing* in our Language, which is taken so much Notice of by Foreigners.

Some Observations relating to the Second and Third Persons of Verbs.

In the *Second Person* of the *Helping Verbs*, *Will* and *Shall*, we say *wil't, shal't*, by a Figure called a *Syncope*, for

* The Changing of *eth*, or *ath*, into *as*, *es*, *is*, is of pretty long standing, introduced by the *Danes*, and reckoned as Part of the *Dano Saxon* Dialect by Dr. *Hickes*, who gives several Instances of it. Gr. Angl. Sax. p. 96.

N

wil't,

will'st, shall'st : Likewise *hast* in the Second Person for *ha'st*, that is *hav'st* or *have'st* ; so in the Third Person, *hath* that is, *ha'th* for *hav'th* or *haveth* ; also *had* for *hav'd*. The Helping Verbs, *Will, Shall, May, Can*, never take the Ending *Eth* in the Third Person ; for we do not say, *He willeth fight, He canneth fight, &c.* but *He will fight, He can fight, &c.*

* The Persons Plural keep the Termination of the first Person Singular.

* These Personal Terminations or Endings, *est*, and *eth*, are omitted, when the *Verb* is used in an *Imperative* or commanding Sense ; as, *Fight thou*, not *Fightest thou* ; *Let the Soldier fight*, not *Let the Soldier fighteth*, or *fights*. Sometimes also they are left out after the *Conjunctions*, *If, That, Though, Although, Whether* ; as, *If the Sense require it*, for *If the Sense requireth* or *requires it* : *He will dare, though he die for it*, that is, *though he dies for it*. So ; *If I were*, for *was* : These Endings of the Person of the *Verb* are also sometimes left out after some other *Conjunctions* and *Adverbs*, especially when the *Verb* is used in a *Commanding* or *Depending* Sentence.

In the Endings *Est, Eth, Ed*, and *En*, (of which we shall speak afterwards) the Vowel *E* is oftentimes left out, unless the Pronunciation forbids it ; and its Absence is, when it's necessary, denoted by an ['] *Apostrophe* ; as, *do'st* for *doest*, *do'th* *dosh* for *doeth*, *did'st* *didst* for *dide'st*, *plac'd* for *placed*, *burn'd* *burnt* for *burned*, *know'n* *known* for *knownen*.

* The *Verb* is also often used without expressing either the *Person* or *Thing* that is, *does*, or *suffers*,

suffers, or the *Number* ; and then the *Preposition*, *To*, is set before it ; as, *to burn*, *to love*.

When the *Verb* is thus used, it is called a *Verb Infinitive* or *Infinitive*, that is, *not bounded* ; because its Signification is not determined to any *Person*, or *Number*. 'This is used like the *Infinitive Mood* in *Latin*, and is placed after *Verbs* and *Adjectives* ; as, *I love to fight*, *It is good to labour* : It is also used as a *Substantive* ; as, *To pray is a good Action*, that is, *to pray* or *Prayer is a good Action*. But the *Preposition*, *To*, is sometimes omitted or left out, especially after the *Helping Verbs*, *Do*, *Will*, *Shall*, *May*, *Can*, and their *Preter Tenses*, *did*, *would*, *should*, *might*, *could* ; also after *must*, *let*, *bid*, *dare*, *help*, and *make* ; as, *I do read*, *I will teach*.

Monfieur Lamy has observed, that the principal or chief Use of the *Infinitive Verb*, is to join two *Propositions* together : As, *I know God to be just* ; but this Use of it is more frequent in *Latin* than in our Language.

N. B. The Second and Third Persons Singular of the *Present Tense* in the *Saxon Language* end, the Second in, *ast*, *est*, or *st* ; as, *thou lufast*, or *lufest*, or *luffst*, that is, *thou lovest* : The Third in *ath*, or *eth*, or *th* ; as, *he lufath*, or *lufeth*, or *lufth*, that is, *he loveth*. The Second of the *Preter Tense* in, *est* ; as, *thou lufodest*, that is, *thou lovedst*. The other *Times* are expressed by *Helping Verbs* as in *English*.

NOTE III. Of the Moods.

As *Cases* are the different Endings of the *Noun*, which are used to denote the *Respect* or *Reference* that Things have to one another ; so *Moods* are the different Endings of the *Verb*, that are made use of to express the *Manners* or *Forms* of its signifying the *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering* of a Thing. *Grammarians* do not agree about the *Number* of these *Moods*, not only by Reason of the Difference there is in *Languages*, some being capable of receiving more or fewer *Inflexions* or *Endings* than others ; but also because of the different *Manners* of signifying, which may be very much multiplied : For the *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering* of a

Thing, may be considered not only simply by it self, but also as to the *Possibility* of a Thing, that is, whether it can be done or not ; as to the *Liberty* of the *Speaker*, that is, whether there be no Hindrance to prevent his doing of a Thing ; as to the *Inclination of the Will*, that is, whether the *Speaker* has any Mind or Intention to the Doing of it ; or to the *Necessity* of the Action to be done, that is, whether there be any Obligation of any Kind upon a Person to do a Thing.

They commonly reckon in *Latin*, Four Moods, the *Indicative*, the *Imperative*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Infinitive*.

1. The *Indicative* declares, demands, or doubts ; as, I love, do I love ?

2. The *Imperative* commands, entreats, exhorts, or permits ; as, let me love.

3. The *Subjunctive* depends upon some other *Verb* in the same Sentence, with some *Conjunction* between ; as, he is mad, if he were there.

4. The *Infinitive* is used in a large undetermined Sense ; as, to love.

* Now in *English*, there are no *Moods*, because the *Verb* has no Diversity of *Endings*, to express its Manners of signifying ; but does all that by the Aid of *Auxiliary* or *Helping Verbs*, which in the *Latin*, and some other Languages, is done by the Diversity of *Terminations* or *Endings*.

For the *Possibility* of the Thing is expressed by, *can* or *could* ; the *Liberty* of the *Speaker* to do a Thing by, *may* or *might* ; the *Inclination of the Will* is expressed by, *will* or *would* ; and the *Necessity* of a Thing to be done by, *must* or *ought*, *shall* or *should*. And herein we also imitate our Ancestors the *Saxons*.

Questions relating to the Twelfth Chapter.

Q. What is a Verb ?

A. A Verb is a Part of Speech that betokeneth Being, Doing, or Suffering.

Q. What Words are Verbs ?

A. All those Words are called Verbs, that signify Being, Doing, or Suffering ; as, *to be hot, to be cold, to fight, to write, to dance, to be burned, to be banished.*

Q. What do you mean by an Essential Verb ?

A. A Verb that signifies Being.

Q. What do you mean by a Verb Active ?

A. A Verb that signifies Doing ; as, *to love, to eat, to read, to make.*

Q. What do you mean by a Verb Passive ?

A. A Verb that signifies Suffering.

Q. Have we any Passive Verbs ?

A. No. For we have no one Word that denotes Suffering, but are obliged to make Use of two or three Words to supply that Want ; as we shall shew afterwards.

Q. What is Tense ?

A. Tense is the Time of the Verb.

Q. What is the Time of the Verb ?

A. The Tense or Time of a Verb relates to a Thing as doing, done, or not done.

Q. How many Tenses or Times are there ?

A. Three :

1. The Present Time, that now is.
2. The Preter Time, that is past.
3. The Future Time, that is yet to come.

Q. Are there then no more than Three Tenses ?

A. If we consider an Action as to its being finished, or not finished, we may reckon Six Tenses or Times.

There are then

- Two Present Tenses or Times,
- Two Preter Tenses or Times, and
- Two Future Tenses or Times.

Q. How do you make that appear ?

A. There is,

1. The *Present Time* of the Action not finished ; as, *I do sup*, but have not yet done.

2. The *Present Time* of the Action finished ; as, *I have supped*, and it is now done.

3. The *Preter Time* of the Action not finished ; as, *I was at Supper then*, but had not yet done it.

4. The *Preter Time* of the Action finished ; as, *I had supped*, and it is now done.

5. The *Future Time* of the Action not finished ; as, *I shall sup*, or *shall be yet at Supper*, but not that I shall have then done it.

6. The *Future Time* of the Action finished ; as, *I shall have supped*, and shall have done it.

Q. *How many Tenses are there in English ?*

A. Two. The *Present Tense*, and the *Preter Tense*.

Q. *How do you know them ?*

A. The *Present Tense* is the *Verb* it self ; as, *burn*, *love*, &c. The *Preter Tense* ends in *ed* ; as, *loved*, *burned*.

Q. *Does the Preter Tense always end in ed ?*

A. Not always ; for sometimes it ends in *T* or *En*, but these are called *irregular ones*, of which we shall speak afterwards.

Q. *But if we have but two Tenses, how do we express all the other Times of the Verb ?*

A. We do it by the Help of certain other Words called *Helping Verbs* : As we shall shew you afterwards.

Q. *How do we distinguish the Persons of the Verbs ?*

A. We distinguish the *Second Person Singular* of the *Present* and *Preter Tense* by the ending *est* ; as, *thou lovest*, *thou burnest* : And the *Third Person Singular* of the *Present Tense* by the Ending *eth* or *s* ; as, *He loveth* or *loves*. But the Distinction of the *Persons* and *Numbers* of *Verbs*, is chiefly performed by the *Pronouns*, *I*, *We*, &c. being put before them, or in the *Third Person* by any *Substantive* ; as, *the Fire burns*, *Boys play*.

Q. *Do all Verbs take eth in the third Person ?*

A. No. For these *Helping Verbs*, *Will*, *Shall*, *May*, *Can*, never take *eth* in the *Third Person* ; for, we do not say, *he mayeth*, *he shalleth*, &c.

Q. *What is Mood ?*

A. *Mood*

A. Mood is the particular Ending of a Verb, to express its different Manner of signifying whether a Thing is, or is not done, whether it can, or may be done, whether the Person will or shall do the Thing, or whether he ought or must do it.

Q. Has the English Tongue any Moods ?

A. No ; Unless you reckon One, that is the Indicative Mood : For, as our English Verb has no Alteration of its Ending, to express its Manner of signifying, our Language cannot properly be said to have any Moods.

Q. How do you then express the different Manners of Verbs, whether a Thing may, or can be done, &c ?

A. We do it by the Assistance of certain Words called Helping Verbs, such as, may or can, shall or will, must or ought, &c.

Q. How many Moods are there in the Latin Tongue ?

A. They generally reckon Four ; the Indicative Mood ; as, Ego Amo, I do love : The Imperative Mood ; as, Tu ama, love thou : The Subjunctive Mood ; as, Ego amem, I may love : The Infinitive Mood ; as, amare, to love : Where you may observe the different Endings o, a, em, are, which distinguish one Mood from another.

Q. What do you mean by an Essential Verb ?

A. A Verb that signifies Being.

Q. What is a Verb Active ?

A. A Verb that signifies Doing.

Q. What is a Verb Passive ?

A. A Verb that signifies Suffering.

Q. What do you mean by the Present Tense ?

A. The Time that now is.

Q. What do you mean by the Preter Tense ?

A. The Time that is past.

Q. What do you mean by the Future Tense ?

A. The Time that is yet to come.

Q. Whence comes the Word Verb ?

A. From Verbum a Word, it being so called by Way of Eminence ; for it is the chief Word in a Sentence ; and there is no Sentence, wherein it is not either expressed or understood.

Q. Whence comes Essential ?

A. From Essentialis, or esse, to be.

Q. Whence

Q. *Whence comes Active ?*

A. From *Activus*, or *agere*, to do.

Q. *Whence comes Passive ?*

A. From *Passivus*, or *Pati*, to suffer.

Q. *Whence comes Tense ?*

A. From the French Word *Temps*, and that from the Latin, *Tempus*, Time.

Q. *Whence comes Present ?*

A. From *Præsens*, being before, or at Hand.

Q. *Whence comes Preter ?*

A. From *Præteritus*, past.

Q. *Whence comes Future ?*

A. From *Futurus*, about to be, or that will be.

Q. *Whence comes Person ?*

A. From *Persona*, which in its first Sense signifies a Mask, such as Players use : It is here to be understood as the Face or Ending of the Verb, which it takes to denote such or such a Person of the Pronoun ; but there, *Persona* signifies what we mean by the Word *Person*, that is, a Man or Woman.

Q. *Whence comes Mood ?*

A. From *Modus*, Manner, it being the Manner of the Verb's signifying so and so.

Q. *Whence comes Indicative ?*

A. From *Indicare*, to declare.

Q. *Whence comes Imperative ?*

A. From *Imperare*, to command.

Q. *Whence comes Subjunctive ?*

A. From *Subjungere*, to join so, it being generally put after another Sentence.

Q. *Whence comes Infinitive ?*

A. From *Infinitus*, undetermined, because it is not determined to any Person or Number.

C H A P. XIII.

Of the PARTICIPLE.

BEfore we come to give you an Account of the *Helping Verbs*, it is necessary that we say something of that *Part of Speech* which is-called a *Participle*, because it is frequently joined to those *Verbs*.

* A *Participle* is a *Part of Speech*, derived of a *Verb*, and betokens *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering*, as a *Verb* does, but is otherwise like a *Noun Adjective*.

I. *Derived of a Verb*] It always comes from some *Verb*; as from, *to love*, come the *Participles*, *Loving* and *Loved*, from *to burn* come *burning*, and *burned*.

II. *Signifies being, doing, or suffering*] 1. It signifies *Being*, *I have been a Child*, *I was sitting*.

2. It signifies *Doing*; as, *I am reading the Book*, *I was sweeping the House*, *I have burned the Wood*.

3. It signifies *Suffering*; as, *I was burned*, *I was whipped*, *I was abused*, &c.

III. *But is otherwise like a Noun Adjective*] that is, it is often joined to a *Substantive* just like an *Adjective*; as, *a loving Child*, *a dancing Dog*, *a shaved Head*, *a ruined Man*; yet in these Examples, you see how they signify *doing* or *suffering* as the *Verb* does: They signify *Doing*; as, *a loving Child*, i. e. *a Child that loves*, *a dancing Dog*, i. e. *a Dog that dances*: They signify *suffering*; as, *a shaved Head*, i. e. *a Head that is shaved*, *a ruined Man*, i. e. *a Man that is ruined*.

* There are two *Participles*, the *Active Participle*, which ends in *ing* as *loving*, and the *Passive Participle*, which ends in *ed* as *loved*.

The

The *Participle* which ends in, *ing*, is called the *Active Participle*, because it has an *Active Sense*, or signifies *Doing*; as, *I am cutting a Stick*. The *Participle* which ends in, *ed*, is called the *Passive Participle*, because we, having in *English* no *Passive Voice*, that is, no distinct *Ending* to distinguish a *Verb* that signifies *Doing*, from a *Verb* that signifies *Suffering*, make up this Want by the Help of the *Verb Am*, and this *Participle*; as, *I am loved, I am burned*.

N. B. For this *Participle* cannot be properly called a *Passive Participle* from its Signification alone, it being also often used in an *Active Sense*; as, *I have loved the Man, I had burned the Papers*.

* The *Active Participle* is made by adding *ing* to the *Verb*; as, *burn, burning, fight, fighting*; but if the *Verb* ends in *e*, as *Love*, then the *e* is left out in the *Participle*, as, *loving*.

This *Participle* is often used as a *Substantive*; as, *In the Beginning, a good Understanding, an excellent Writing*. It answers also to the Words which the *Latins* call *Gerunds*; as, *Of writing, in writing; in burning this, in burning of this*.

* This *Participle* is used in a peculiar Manner with the *Verb to be*, especially in answer to a Question; as, Q. *What was you doing?* A. *I was writing*. Q. *Have you been writing?* A. *I have been writing, &c.* And in this Case *a* is often set before the *Participle*; as, *he is a going, it is a-doing, he was a-dying, &c.* And particularly after the *Verbs* of Motion, *to go, to come*; as, *he goes a-hunting: She came here a-crying: Why come you hither a-Scolding?*

† Doctor Wallis makes this *a* to be put for *at*, denoting as much as *while*; for Example, *a-dying, a-going, a-burn-*
ing,

* *Ure fo fareth on hunteth, Our Enemy goes on hunting.* See Wanley's Catal. 172.

† The *a* is undoubtedly the Remains of the Preposition *on* rapidly pronounced. *John 21. 3. in Saxon* the Words of Peter are: *Ic willa gan on fixoth. I will go a Fishing.*
In

ing, a-making, that is, while any one is dying, &c. perhaps a here is redundant, as it frequently is at the Beginning of a great many Saxon and English Words; as in arise, abide.

* The *Passive Participle* is made by adding *ed* to the *Verb*; as, burn, burned, kill, killed: But if the *Verb* ends in *e*, as love, then it is made by adding *d*; as, love, loved.

The *Præter Tense* and the *Passive Participle* are regularly the same, both ending in *ed*, as burned. But are often subject to *Contractions* and other Irregularities, which are sometimes the same in both; as, teach, taught, taught, bring, brought, brought: And sometimes different; as, see, saw, seen; give, gave, given; but of these we shall give you a List.

This *Participle* being used with the *Verb*, to be, has the same Sense with Words which end in *able* or *ible*; such are admirable, visible, and it relates to the *Future Time*; as, it is to be admired, that is, it is admirable, it is to be seen, that is, it is visible, &c.

We have already observed that the *Participles* often become *Adjectives*; but we cannot therefore by any Means grant, that they are therefore always meer *Adjectives*, as some do affirm, they being often used in such a Sense

In like Manner, onweg, away; onbidan, abide; on-gean, against; on-twa, at two; on-fote, afoot; on-bedde, abed; on-slep, asleep; on-mang, among. The *on* in such Instances first degenerated into *an*, and then *n* came to be left out for the softer Sound Sake: Both Ways of Expression are to be found in Robert of Gloucester. His Men a fiffchesh were p. 155. Buth ago a fiffching, p. 186. King Edgar an huntung ywende was, p. 199. An hunteth wende, p. 203. Trin. Coll. M. S. The Saxon Chronicle towards the latter End has an-slep, for what in ancient Saxon, is on-slep, a-sleep. And going on huntung. Stow's Summary, p. 10. where

where no *Adjective* can have Place: For in these Examples, *I am writing a Book, he is mending a Pen, we have burned the Coals, ye have praised the Horse, I cannot see how any* of these *Participles* are used as *Adjectives*.

Questions relating to the Thirteenth Chapter.

Q. What is a Participle ?

A. A Participle is a Part of Speech, derived of a Verb, and betokens Being, Doing, or Suffering, as a Verb does ; but is otherwise like an Adjective.

Q. Is the Participle always derived from a Verb ?

A. Yes ; for from the Verb, to love, come the Participles *loving* and *loved*, from, *burn*, come *burning* and *burned*.

Q. How does it signify as a Verb ?

A. It signifies *being, doing, and suffering* as a Verb does, and also implies Time like a Verb.

Q. How is it like an Adjective ?

A. Because it is often joined to a Substantive in the same Manner as the Adjective is ; as, a *loving Child, a learned Man*.

Q. How many Participles are there ?

A. Two ; The Active Participle that ends in *ing* ; as, *loving* ; and the Passive Participle that ends commonly in *ed* ; as, *burned, loved, &c.*

Q. Doth the Active Participle always end in, *ing* ?

A. Yes.

Q. Doth the Passive Participle always end in, *ed* ?

A. No ; for it is often irregular, and ends in *'d* or *'t* ; as, *plac'd* or *plac't*, for *placed* ; and sometimes in *n* ; as, *beaten, begun, &c.*

Q. Why is the Participle in, *ing*, called the Active Participle ?

A. Because it signifies Action or Doing.

Q. Why is the Participle in, *ed*, called the Passive Participle ?

A. Because that with the Verb, to be, makes up the whole Passive Voice.

Q. Is the Active Participle ever used as a Substantive ?

A. Yes very often ; for from, to begin, comes the Participle, *beginning* ; as, *I am beginning the work* ; which is turned

turned into a *Substantive*, as, *In the Beginning God created the World.*

Q. *Are the Participles ever used as Adjectives ?*

A. Yes.

Q. *When are they so used ?*

A. 1. When they have no Respect to *Time* ; as, *a learned Book.*

2. When they are joined to *Substantives* ; as, *an understanding Man, a writing Desk, a carved Head.*

3. If they may be compared ; as, *learned, more learned, most learned.*

4. If they are compounded with a *Preposition* that the *Verb* they come from cannot be compounded with ; as, *unbecoming, unheard, unseen* ; for we do not say, *to unbecome, to unheard, &c.*

Q. *Are not the Participles really mere Adjectives ?*

A. No ; For the *Participle* is often used where the *Adjective* can have no Place.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Participle ?*

A. From *Participium*, that is a *partaking Word*, because it, *capit Partem*, partakes of some Properties of the *Verb* and of the *Noun*. For it denotes *Being, Doing, or Suffering*, and implies *Time* as a *Verb* does ; and it is joined to a *Substantive* as a *Noun Adjective*.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Helping Verbs which are Defective.

WE have already observed that the *Verbs* in *English* do not change their *Endings* as in *Latin*, to denote the *Times* of *Being, Doing, or Suffering*, and the *Moods* or *Manners* of their signifying : For in our *Tongue* all these *Matters* are performed by the Assistance of certain *Words* which we call *Auxiliary* or *Helping Verbs* : Of which we shall now treat, beginning with those that are *Defective*.

O

* These

* These *Helping Verbs*, *Do*, *Will*, *Shall*, *May*, *Can*, with their *Preter Tenses*, *Did*, *Would*, *Should*, *Might*, *Could*, as also *Must*, are set before any other *Verbs*, the *Preposition To* being left out: Except after *Ought*.

So likewise these *Verbs*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Make*, being set before an *Infinitive Verb*, the *Preposition, To*, is left out.

We call these *Helping Verbs* Defective ones, because they are not used but in their own *Tense* and the *Preter Tense*; besides they have no *Participles*, neither do they admit any *Helping Verbs* to be put before them.

But these two *Do* and *Will*, because they are sometimes used as *Absolute Verbs*, are therefore formed throughout all *Tenses*, that is, they have *Participles*, [*doing*, *do'n*, *willing*, *willed*] and do also admit of the *Auxiliary* or *Helping Verbs* before them, to express the *Times*, &c. that is, when they are used as *Verbs absolute*, but not when they are *Helping Verbs*.

* When the *Helping Verb* is put before another *Verb*, it changes its own *Ending*, but the *Verb* that it assists is always the same; for Example,

I do burn, Thou dost burn, He doth burn, &c.

Here you see the *Helping Verb, Do*, changes its *Ending*, but in *Burn*, there is no change of *Ending* at all.

Do and *Did*.

* *Do* does *emphatically* denote the *Present Time*, and *Did* the *Preter Time*: As, *I burn, I burned*, or in a more *emphatical* or *expressive Manner*, *I do burn, I did burn*. They are thus formed,

I do,

I do, Thou dost or You do, He doth or does.
Plural. *We do, Ye do or You do, They do.*

I did, Thou didst or You did, He did. Plural.
We did, Ye did or You did, They did. *Did* is used
for *Doed*, and *didst* for *doedst*.

Shall and Will.

* *Shall* and *Will* denote the Future Time, or
the Time yet to come; as, *It shall burn, it will*
burn. They are thus formed,

I shall, Thou shalt or You shall, He shall. Plural.
We shall, Ye shall or You shall, They shall.

I will, Thou wilt or You will, He will. Plural.
We will, Ye will or You will, They will. But there
is this Difference between *shall* and *will*:

* *Shall* in the first Persons, as, *I shall, we shall*,
simply expresses the future Action or Event:
But in the second and third Persons; as, *He*
shall, They shall, it promises, commands, or threa-
tens.

* *Will* in the first Persons; as, *I will, We will*,
promises or threatens: But in the second and
third Persons; as, *Thou wilt or You will, Ye will*
or You will, He will, They will, it barely fore-
tells.

Thus when I say, *I shall go*, or *I will go*, I declare my
Willingness or Resolution to go: But, if I say, *You shall*

go, there is a plain Command or Injunction. So in *I shall burn, Thou wilt* (or *You will*,) *He will, We shall, Ye will, They will burn*; here I barely foretell: But in *I will, Thou shalt* (or *You shall*,) *He shall, We will, Ye shall, They shall burn*; I promise that it shall be, or *I will see* that it shall be done.

Should and Would.

* *Shall* makes *should* (from the old *Verb sholle*) and it is thus formed;

I should, Thou shouldst or *You should, He should.*
Plural. *We should, Ye should* or *You should, They should.* *Shouldst* is used for *shouldest*.

* *Should* tells what was, or had been to come.

* *Will* makes in the *Preter Tense, Would* (from the old *Verb, Wolle*) and it is thus formed;

I would, Thou wouldst or *You would, He would.*
Plural. *We would, Ye would* or *You would, They would.*

* *Would* tells what was, or had been to come.

But there is this Difference between *would* and *should*, that *would* intimates the *Will* or *Intention* of the *Doer*, but *should* the bare *Futurity*, or that the *Thing* will be; as, *I would burn*, that is, I am willing to burn; *I should burn*, i. e. I ought to burn.

May and Can.

* *May*, and its *Preter Time*, *Might*, denote or intimate the Power of doing a Thing. They are thus formed ;

I may, Thou mayst or You may, He may. Plural.
We may, Ye may or You may, They may.

* *I might, Thou might'st or You might, He might.*
Plural. *We might, Ye might or You might, They might.*

May comes from the Saxon *Meg*, and *Might* from *Miht*. The Country People do likewise say, *mought*, from the Saxon *Mot*.

* *Can*, and its *Preter Time*, *Could*, intimate the Power of doing a Thing, and are thus formed ;

* *I can, Thou canst or You can, He can.* Plural.
We can, Ye can or You can, They can.

I could, Thou could or You could, He could.
Plural. *We could, Ye could or You could, They could.*

But there is this Difference between *May* and *Can*, *May* and *Might*, are spoken of the Right, Lawfulness, or at least, the Possibility of the Thing : But *Can* and *Could*, of the Power and Strength of the Doer. As, *I might burn*, i. e. It was possible or lawful for me to burn ; *I can burn*, that is, *I am able to burn* ; *I could burn*, i. e. *I was able to burn*.

* *Must* and *Ought* imply Necessity, or denote that the Thing is to be done ; as, *I must burn, I ought to read.*

I must, Thou must or You must, He must. Plural. *We must, Ye must or You must, They must.*

I ought, Thou oughtest or You ought, He ought. Plural. *We ought, Ye ought or You ought, They ought.*

Must, comes from the Saxon, *Moſt*, a Word of the same Signification.

Can, May, Will, and Must, are used with Relation both to the *Present* and *Future Time*. *Shall*, is used only in the *Future*, and *Ought*, in the *Present Time*. But *Could*, the *Preter Time* of, *Can, Might*, the *Preter Time* of, *May, and Would*, the *Preter* of, *Will*, have Relation both to the *Time past* and to *come* : But *Should* from *Shall* relates only to the *Future Time*.

But if *Have* follows *Must, Ought*, and *Should*, then they relate to the *Time past* ; as, *I ought to have done it, I must or Should have gone thither.*

Questions relating to the Fourteenth Chapter.

Q. What do you mean by a Helping Verb ?

A. A Verb that is put to another *Verb* to denote or signify the *Time*, or the *Mood*, or *Manner*, of a *Verb*.

Q. Which Verbs are those ?

A. Do, will, shall, may, can, have, am or be, are such.

Q. What do you mean by a Defective Verb ?

A. A Verb that wants somewhat that other *Verbs* have ; as, *may*, has no *Active* or *Passive Participle*, nor does take any *Helping Verb* before it, as other *Verbs* do : For we do not say, *I shall may, or I have might.*

Q. When a Helping Verb is joined to another Verb, does it change its Ending to make the Second and Third Person Singular ?

A. The

A. The *Helping Verb* does, but the *Verb* it is set before is never changed ; as, *Thou dost love, He doth love, Thou hast loved, He hath or has loved* : Where you see, *love or loved* are the same in both Places.

Q. Is there any Difference between *Shall* and *Will* ?

A. Yes. In the first Persons *Shall* expresses the future Action or Event, and *Will* promises and threatens ; but in the second and third Persons, *Shall* promises and threatens, but *Will* barely foretells.

Q. Is there any Difference between *Would* and *Should* ?

A. Yes. *Would* intimates the Will or Intention of the Doer ; *Should* the bare Futurity, or that the Thing will be.

Q. Is there any Difference between *May* and *Can* ?

A. Yes. *May* is spoken of the Right, Lawfulness, or Possibility of the Thing : But *Can* of the Power or Strength of the Doer,

Q. Give me the Preter Time of the Defective Helping Verbs.

A. Do in the Preter Tense makes *did*, *may* makes *might*, *can* makes *could*, *will* makes *would*, *shall* makes *should* : But *must* and *ought* have no Preter Tense.

C H A P. XV.

Of the Perfect Helping Verbs, Have and Am or Be.

THE *Verbs* mentioned in the foregoing Chapter, are called *Defective*, because they take no *Helping Verbs* before them, on any Occasion ; neither are they used beyond the *Preter Tense* or Time : Now, for the contrary Reason these following Verbs are said to be *Perfect* and entire : i. e. *Have* and *Am* or *Be*.

Have.

Have is a *Verb* of very great Use among us, and in all other Modern Languages, though not in *Greek* and *Latin* ;
for

for it is used to denote diverse *Times* or *Tenses* of *Verbs*, both in an *Active* and *Passive* Signification ; and because it assists, or helps to denote the *Times* of *Verbs*, it is called a *Helping Verb*. But when it is not joined with another *Verb* then it denotes *Possession*, and has a *Noun* always following it. As, *I have a Book, I had a Horse*. It is thus formed ;

Present Tense.

I have, Thou hast or You have, He hath or has. Plural.
We have, Ye have or You have, They have.

Preter Tense.

I had, Thou hadst or You had, He had. Plural. *We had, Ye had or You had, They had.*

The *Active Participle* is, *Having* : The *Passive Participle* is, *Had* for *Haved*.

Have comes from the *Saxon* *Hebbe, Hafa or Haue*. *Had* from *Hefod*.

* *Have* denotes the *Time* of the *Action* to be just past when we spoke ; as, *I have dined*. *Had* denotes the *Action* to have been finished at that *Time*, when we were discoursing of the *Matter* ; as, *I had dined, that is, when Peter came to my House*.

But *Had* does likewise intimate the *Time past* of an *Action* not done, but intended to be done ; *I had go'n thither, but Peter prevented me ; I had dined with you, but the Rain hindered me*.

* But when *Shall* or *Will* is added to *have*, it signifies the *Time* that will be past ; as, *I shall have burned, He will have burned*.

Am or Be.

To supply the Want of *Verbs Passive* in our Language, we, as well as the other Modern Languages, make use of the

the Helping Verb *Am* or *Be*, and do by it express, what the Latin and Greek Tongues express by one Word.

* *Am* or *Be* being joined to the *Passive Participle* makes up the *Passive Voice*; as, *I am loved*: But when it is used by it self it signifies *Being*.

The Latin Tongue does likewise make use of this Verb to denote some particular Tenses of the *Passive Voice*.

* *Am* or *Be* is also sometimes used with the *Active Participle* to express *Action* or *Doing*: As, *I am writing*, for *I write*; *I was Writing*, *I have been writing*, *I had been writing*.

This Verb is very irregular, as it often happens that those Things, which are most vulgar or common are most irregular: And it has a double or twofold Formation.

Present Time.

I am, *Thou art* or *You are*, *He is*. Plural. *We are*, *Ye are* or *You are*, *They are*. Or,

I be, *Thou be'st*, *He be*. Plural. *We be*, *Ye be*, *They be*.

The Preter Tense.

I was, *Thou wast* or *You were*, *He was*. Plural. *We were*, *Ye were* or *You were*, *They were*. Or,

I were, *Thou wert*, *He were*. Plural. *We were*, *Ye were*, *They were*.

When it is used *Infinitively*, it makes *to be*; the *Active Participle* is *being*; the *Passive Participle* is *been*; for which some corruptly write *bin*.

* The second *Formation* or *Ending* of the *Present Tense*, that is, *be*, *be'st*, *be*, &c. and the second *Formation* of the *Preter Tense*, that is, *were*, *wert*, *were*, &c. is for the most Part used after the *Conjunctions*, *if*, *that*, *although*, *whether*; as, *if I be then alive*: *I do not know whether it were*
he

he or no. *Be*, is also used after the Verb, *Let* ; as, *let him be*, &c.

N. B. But some are for making this second Formation a *Subjunctive Mood*.

Am comes from the Saxon *Eam* or *Am* ; *Art* from *Eart* ; *Be* from *Beo* ; *Best* from *Byst* ; *Was* from the Saxon *Wes*, or rather from the Gothick *Was* ; *Were* from the Saxon Word *Were* ; But *Wert* I believe comes from the Gothick *Warst*, which is sometimes used for *Wast*.

Do, *did*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, *would*, *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, are always set before the Verb in the *Present Time* ; as, *I do burn*, &c. But *Have*, *Had*, *Am*, *Be*, *Was*, *Been*, are set before the *Active* and *Passive Participle* ; as, *I have loved*, *I am loving*.

These *Helping Verbs* are likewise often joined together ; as, *I might have died* ; but then one of them expresses the *Manner*, the other the *Time* of the *Verbs* signifying ; except in *Be* or *Been*, which is used to denote *Being* or *Suffering*, i. e. *to be done*.

Questions relating to the Fifteenth Chapter.

Q. *Why are these Verbs called Perfect Helping Verbs ?*

A. Because they are formed like other Verbs.

Q. *When are Be and Were to be used instead of Am ?*

A. They are commonly used after, *if*, *that*, *although*, *whether* ; as, *If it be so*, *If he were alive*, &c.

C H A P. XVI.

Of the Irregular VERBS.

WE shall now give you an Account of the *Irregular Verbs* of our Tongue : Where are two Things to be taken Notice of,

* 1. That

* 1. That all the following *Irregularity* relates only to the Formation of the *Preter Tense* and *Passive Participle*.

For in our *Irregular Verbs*, we have nothing else *Irregular*.

* 2. This *Irregularity* does not relate to *Foreign Words*, but only to the Native Words of our Tongue.

By *Foreign Words*, I mean those that we have borrowed from the *Latin, French, Italian, Spanish, or Welch*, of which there are a great Number : But I call those Native Words, which take their Original from the old *Teutonic* or *Saxon Language* ; all which are Words of one Syllable, or derived from *Verbs* of one Syllable.

* The first *Irregularity*, and that which is the most general, took its Rise from our Quickness of Pronunciation, by changing the Consonant *d* into *t*, (the Vowel *e* in the regular Ending *ed*, being cut off) that the Pronunciation might be made more easy and free. And it seems indeed to be rather a *Contraction* than an *Irregularity*.

For, *c, ch, sh, f, k, p, x*, and the Consonants *s, th*, pronounced hard, and sometimes *l, m, n, r*, (when a short Vowel goes before) more easily take *t* after them than *d*. As, *plac't* for *plac'd* or *placed*, *snatch't* for *snatch'd* or *snatched*, *fish't* for *fish'd* or *fished*, *stuff* for *stuff'd* or *stuffed*, *clapt* for *clap'd* or *clapped*, *mixt* for *mix'd* or *mixed*, *wak't* for *wak'd* or *waked*, --- *dwel't* for *dwel'd* or *dwelled*, *smel't* for *smel'd* or *smelled*, from the Verbs, *to place, to snatch, &c.*

But sometimes when a long Vowel goes before, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one, for the sake of quicker Pronunciation ; as, *kept, slept, wept, crept, swept,*
lept,

lept, from the Verbs *to keep*, *to sleep*, *to weep*, *to creep*, *to sweep*, *to leap*.

But *d* remains after the Consonants *b*, *g*, *v*, *w*, *z*, and *s*, *th*, when they are softly pronounced ; and *d* likewise remains after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, when a long Vowel goes before ; for they more easily unite and join together with *d*, than with *t*, by Reason of the like Direction of the Breath to the Nostrils. So, *liv'd*, *smil'd*, *raz'd*, *believ'd*, from *live*, *smile*, *raze*, *believe*.

Except when the long Vowel is shortned before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* ; or when *b* and *v* are changed into *p* or *f*, and the softer Sound of the Letters *s*, *th*, passes into their harder Sound : As, *felt* from *feel*, *dealt* from *deal*, *dreamt* from *dream*, *meant* from *mean*, *left* from *leave*, *berest* from *be-reave*, &c.

But in some Words whose *Present Tense* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preter Tense* is the same as the *Present Tense* ; as, in the *Present*, *read*, *Preter*, *read* ; in the *Present*, *cast*, so in the *Preter*, *cast* : But it is very probable they are Contractions of *ed*, and should be writ with a double *dd* or *tt*.

Sometimes the regular Spelling of these Words is observ'd ; as, *placed*, *believed*, &c. though not often. But in these Cases great Regard is had to the Pronunciation ; whence it happens, that we often say, *wept*, *kept*, but very seldom, *weep'd*, *keep'd*.

N. B. This closing in one Syllable the Termination or Ending of the *Preter Tense* ; as, *lov'd* for *loved*, &c. has very much disfigured the Tongue, and turned a tenth part of our smoothest Words into so many Clusters of Consonants. This is the more remarkable, because the want of Vowels in our Language has been the general Complaint of our politest Authors, who nevertheless are the Men that have made these Retrenchments, and consequently very much increased our former Scarcity : As has been very justly remarked by the ingenious Author of the 135th *Spectator*.

Verbs ending in *y*, either take a *d* with an *Apostrophe* ; as, *marry*, *marry'd* ; or else change *y* into *ied* ; as, *married*, *tarried*, *garried*, &c.

* There is another common Irregularity, but which relates only to the *Passive Participle*: For the *Passive Participle* was formerly often formed in *en*, in Imitation of the *Saxons*: And we have a great many of this Sort, especially when the *Preter Time* suffers any remarkable Irregularity. But this Ending may be reckoned as another Formation of the *Participle*; as, *been, given, taken, slay'n, know'n*, from the Verbs *to be, to give, to take, to slay, to know*.

We do also use, *written, bitten, eaten, beaten, shotten, rotten, chosen, broken*, as well as, *writ, bit, eat, beat, shot, rat, chose, broke*, &c. in the *Passive Participle*, though not in the *Preter Tense*; from the Verbs *to write, to bite, to eat, to beat*, &c. For Example, we say, *I eat*, but not *I eaten*, but we say, *I have eaten, or eat*.

So likewise we say *sow'n or sow'd, shew'n or shew'd, hew'n or hew'd, mow'n or mow'd, loaden or loaded, laden or laded*, from the Verbs *to sow, to shew, to hew, to mow, to load or lade*.

But the Irregularities of the Verbs will best appear, if we put them alphabetically; first, those that alter the *Preter Tense*, the *Passive Participle* being the same with it; and then those that have a *Passive Participle* different from the *Preter Tense*.

Those that have this Mark (*) before them, are not proper or usual.

TABLE

TABLE I.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Preter Tense--- and Partic.</i>	<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Preter Tense--- and Partic.</i>
Awake	Awoke	Hang	Hung
Abide	Abode	Have	} Had for } Haved } behaved
Be	Been	whence	
Bend	Bent	Behave	
Unbend	Unbent	Hear	Heard
Bereave	Bereft	Keep	Kept
Beseech	Besought	Lay	Laid
	& * beseeched	Lead	Led
Bind	Bound	Leave	Left
Bleed	Bled	Leap	Lept
Breed	Bred	Lend	Lent
Bring	Brought	Lose	Lost
Buy	Bought	but	
Catch	Caught	Loose	Loosed &
Creep	Crept	Make	Made (loos'd
Deal	Dealt	Mean	Meant
Dig	Dug and * Digged	Meet	Met
Dream	Dreamt	Rend	Rent
Dwell	Dwelt	Say	Said
Feed	Fed	Seek	Sought
Feel	Felt	Sell	Sold
Fight	Fought	Send	Sent
Find	Found	Shine	Shin'd & shone
Flee	Fled	Sit	Sat
Fling	Flung	Sleep	Slept
Fraight	Fraught	Smell	Smelt
Geld	Gelt and Gelded	Spell	Spelt
Guild	Gilt and Gilded	Spill	Spilt
Gird	Girt and Girded	Spend	Spent
Grind	Ground	Spin	Spun
		Stand	Stood
		Stick	Stuck
		Sting	Stung
		Sweep	Swept

Teach

Teach	Taught	Weep	Wept
Tell	Told	Wind	Wound
Think	Thought	Work	Wrought and
		Wring	Wrung (worked)

TABLE II.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Preter Tense.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Bear	Bore or * Bare	Born
Begin	Began	Begun
Bid	Bid or Bad	Bidden
Beat	Beat	Beaten
Bite	Bit	Bitten
Blow	Blew	Blown
Break	Broke or * Brake	Broken
Chide	Chid	Chidden or Chid
Choose or chuse	Chose	Chosen
Cleave	{ Clave Cleft Clove	{ Cleft or * Cloven
Come	Came	Come
Crow	Crew and Crow'd	Crow'd
Dare	Durst or Dared	Dared †
Die	Died	Dead
Do	Did	Do'n or done
Draw	Drew	Drawn
Drink	Drank or * Drunk	Drunk
Drive	Drove	Driven
Eat	Eat or Ate	Eaten or Eat
Fall	Fell	Faln
Fly	Flew and Fled	Flown
Forfake	Forfook	Forfaken & for-
Freeze	Froze	Frozen (fools
Get	Got	Gotten or Got
Give	Gave	Given

† And *did dare* when *not* is added; as, *He did not dare.*

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Preter Tense.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Go	Went from Wend	Go'n or Gone
Grow	Grew	Grown
Help	Helped or Helpt	Helpt
Hew	Hewed	Hewn
Hide	Hid	Hidden and Hid
Hold	Held	Holden
Know	Knew	Known
Lie	Lay	Lay'n
Mow	Mowed	Mown
Ride	Rid or Rode	Ridden or Rode
Ring	Rang	Rung
Rise	Rose	Risen
Run	Ran	Run
See	Saw	Seen
Seeth	Sod	Sodden
Shake	Shook	Shaken and Shook
Shear	Shore	Shorn
Shew or Show	Shewed	Shown
Shoot	Shot	Shoten and Shot
Shrink	Shrank	Shrunk
Sing	Sang and * sung	Sung
Sink	Sank or Sunk	Sunk
Slay	Slew	Slain
Slide	Slid	Slidden
Sling	Slung	Slung
Smite	Smote	Smitten
Snow	Snowed	Snown
Sow	Sowed	Sown
Speak	Spoke * Spake	Spoken and Spoke
Spring	Sprang or Sprung	Sprung
Steal	Stole	Stolen and Stole
Stink	* Stank or stunk	Stunk
Strike	Struck	Stricken & Struck
Spit	Spat	Spitten, spit, & spat
Strive	Strove	Striven
Swear	Swore and * sware	Sworn

Swell	Sweld	Swoln or Swell'd
Swing	Swung & * swang	Swung
Swim	Swum & * fwam	Swum
Take	Took	Taken and Took
Tear	Tore and * tare	Torn and Tore
Thrive	Throve * Thrived	Thriven
Throw	Threw	Thrown
Tread	Trod	Trodden & Trod
Win	Won and * wan	Won
Wear	Wore	Worn
Weave	Wove	Woven
Write	Writ and wrote	Written writ and Wrote

Questions relating to the Sixteenth Chapter.

Q. *Wherein does the Irregularity of the English Verbs consist?*

A. In the Formation of the *Præter Tense* and the *Passive Participle*.

Q. *Give me some Examples?*

A. Give, would, if it was regular, or formed according to Rule, make *gived* in the *Præter Time*, and *gived* in the *Passive Participle*; but it makes *gave* in the *Præter Tense*, and *given* in the *Passive Participle*; therefore it is said to be *Irregular*, or not according to Rule; for the *Præter Time* and the *Passive Participle* should end if they were formed according to Rule, in *ed*.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Formation of the Times or Tenses of the Verb Active, or the Verb that signifies Doing.

WE shall first speak of the Formation of the *Time present, past, and to come*.

* The *Present Time* is thus formed or made.
 Singular Number. *I burn, thou burnest or you burn,*
 P 3

burn, he burneth or burns. Plural. We burn, ye burn or you burn, they burn.

This Time you may call the first *Present Time*.

* The *Preter* or past Time is thus formed or made. Singular. *I burned, thou burnedst* or *you burned, he burned*. Plural. *We burned, ye burned* or *you burned, they burned*.

i This Time is the first *Preter Time*.

These two Tenses are made by changing the End of the *Verb* in the second and third Persons of the Singular Number; but that denoting the other *Time*, is done by the Assistance of another *Verb*: As,

* The *Future Time*, or that Time which is yet to come, is expressed by the help of *Shall* or *Will*: As,

Singular Number. *I will burn, thou wilt burn* or *you will burn, he will burn*. Plural. *We will burn, ye will burn* or *you will burn, they will burn*.

Sing. *I shall burn, thou shalt burn* or *you shall burn, he shall burn*. Plural. *We shall burn, ye shall burn* or *you shall burn, they shall burn*.

This Tense you may call the first *Future Time*.

* There are also two other Ways of expressing the *Present Time*.

For when we would express the *Action* more distinctly and fully, we make use of the *Helping Verb Do*; especially with the *Adverb Not*; as, *I do not burn*.

Sing.

Sing. *I do burn, thou dost burn or you do burn, he doth or does burn.* Plural. *We do burn, ye do burn or you do burn, they do burn.*

Or when we would express more fully that it is now a doing, or the Continuance in doing, we use the Verb *Am* and the *Active Participle*. As,

Sing. *I am burning, thou art burning or you are burning, he is burning.* Plural. *We are burning, ye are burning or you are burning, they are burning.* And indeed,

* All the Tenses of a *Verb Active* may be expressed by the Verb *Am*, and the *Active Participle*; as, *I am burning, that is, I burn. I was burning, that is, I burned, &c.*

* There are also four other Ways of expressing the *Preter Time*, or the Time past.

For we may say that a Thing is *precisely* or *just done*, or we may only say that it was done, without determining it to a *Day, a Week, a Month, a Year, &c.*

When we say only that the Thing was done we express it by the *Preter Tense*, just mentioned, as, *I burned*; but when we express the Action to be *precisely* or *just done*, we do it by the *Helping Verb, Have*.

* The *Preter Time* of the Action *precisely* or *just done*, is thus expressed, as,

Singular. *I have burned, thou hast burned or you have burned, he hath or has burned.* Plural. *We have burned, ye have burned or you have burned, they have burned.*

N. B. This Time you may call the second *Preter Time*; or the *Present Time* of the *Perfect* or finished Action.

But

But if we join any of these Words, *formerly, heretofore, in Times past*, to *Have*; then, *Have*, may denote or signify a greater Space of Time: As, *I have formerly loved him.*

N. B. *Have*, with the *Passive Participle* immediately after it, always denotes Action; but if, *been*, comes between, it denotes *Suffering*: Thus, *I have burned*, is *Active*, but *I have been burned*, is *Passive*. But wherever the *Active Participle* is, it denotes Action: As, *I have been burning.*

But if we consider the Action as imperfect, or not yet finished, we express the Time past by, *was*, and the *Active Participle*: And this Time is called the *Preter-imperfect Time*, or the *Time imperfectly past*, or the *Preter Time* of the imperfect Action.

* 2. The *Preter Time* of an imperfect Action, or an Action not finished, is thus expressed. As,

Singular. *I was burning, thou wast burning or you were or was burning, he was burning.* Plural. *We were burning, ye were burning or you were burning, they were burning.*

But when we would express a Time as past, before some other Time past; as, *I had supped before the Clock struck Six*; or if we would express the Time past of an Action not done, only designed; as, *I had killed the Bird, if you had not hindered me*, we do it by the Verb, *Had*, and the *Passive Participle*.

* 3. The Time considered as *Preter* or past before some other Time past, or the *Past Time* of an Action not done, only designed, is thus expressed. As,

Singular. *I had burned, thou hadst burned or you had burned, he had burned,* Plural. *We had burned,*

burned, ye had burned or you had burned, they had burned.

This Tense is called by some, the *Preter-pluperfect Tense*, or the *Preter Time* more than past.

Lastly. When we would express the *Preter* or *Past Time*, in an *emphatical* or *full Manner*, we make Use of the Verb *Did*.

* 4. The Expressing of the *Time past* in an *emphatical* or *full Manner* is as follows;

Singular. *I did burn, thou didst burn or you did burn, he did burn.* Plural. *We did burn, ye did burn or you did burn, they did burn.*

This Word *Did* denotes indeed the *Time* as absolutely *past*, but when *Whilst* is set before it, then it denotes the *Time imperfectly past*; as, *whilst I did write*, that is, *whilst I was writing*.

* There is also another Way of expressing the *Future Time*.

For if we consider the *Time to come* of the *Action* as finished; or if we consider two *Things to come*, one of which is supposed to be *past*, before the other will be done, we express that *Time* by the adding of *Have* to *Shall* or *Will*.

* The *Future Time* of the *Action* not finished is thus expressed: As,

Sing. *I shall have burned, thou shalt have burned or you shall have burned, he shall have burned.* Plural. *We shall have burned, ye shall have burned or you shall have burned, they shall have burned.*

This

This Tense you may call the second *Future*.

N. B. *Shall*, is often omitted or left out ; as, *If he write*, for *shall write* ; *If he have writen*, for *shall have written*. The *Present* and *Preter Times* are also frequently used instead of this, and the other *Future Time* : As, *When he writes*, for *when he shall write* ; *When he has writen*, for *when he shall have written*.

A Scheme of the Tenses of the Verb Active, considering the Action as imperfect or not finished, or perfect and finished.

I. *The present Time of the imperfect Action.*

Sing. I burn or do burn, thou burnest or dost burn or you burn or do burn, he burneth [burns] or doth burn.
Plural. We burn or do burn, ye or you burn or do burn, they burn or do burn.

II. *The Preter Time of the imperfect Action.*

Sing. I was burning, thou wast or you was burning, he was burning. *Plural.* We were burning, ye or you were burning, they were burning.

III. *The Future Time of the imperfect Action.*

Sing. I shall burn, thou shalt or you shall burn, he shall burn. *Plural.* We shall burn, ye or you shall burn, they shall burn.

Or, *Sing.* I will burn, thou wilt or you will burn, he will burn. *Plural.* We will burn, ye or you will burn, they will burn.

IV. *The Present Time of the perfect Action.* As,

Sing. I have burned, thou hast or you have burned, he hath or has burned. *Plural.* We have burned, ye or you have burned, they have burned.

V. *The Preter Time of the perfect Action.*

Sing. I burned, thou burnedst or you burned, he burned. *Plural.* We burned, ye or you burned, they burned.

Or thus, *Sing.* I had burned. thou hadst or you had burned, he had burned. *Plural.* We had burned, ye or you had burned, they had burned.

Or thus, *Sing.* I did burn, thou didst or you did burn, he did burn. *Plural.* We did burn, ye or you did burn, they did burn.

VI. *The Future Time of the perfect Action.*

Sing. I shall have burned, thou shalt or you shall have burned, he shall have burned. *Plural.* We shall have burned, ye or you shall have burned, they shall have burned.

Or, Smg. I will have burned, thou wilt or you will have burned, he will have burned. *Plural.* We will have burned, ye or you will have burned, they will have burned.

Questions relating to the Eighteenth Chapter.

Q. When may I use the Present Tense without the Verb Do ?

A. When you simply or barely affirm the Thing to be so or so ; as, *I burn, I love, I read, &c.*

Q. When do you use, Do, to denote the Present Tense ?

A. When you would express the Action more distinctly or fully, or when I deny the Thing to be so or so ; as, *I do love it dearly, I do read, I do not love him.*

Q. When do you express the Present Time by, Am, and the Active Participle ?

A. When I would express that I am now a doing the Thing, or my Continuance in doing it ; as, *I am reading now, I am now burning.* The Present Time is also most frequently thus expressed, in Answer to the Question, *What are you a doing ? A.* I am writing, I am reading.

And so likewise are the other Tenses often expressed by this Verb and the Active Participle ; as, *What was you a doing ? A.* I was playing. *What have you been doing ? A.* I have been reading, &c.

Q. When do you use the Preter Tense without the Verbs, Have, Had, &c.

A. When I would denote the Action as *past*, without determining or naming the Time, when the Thing was done ; as, *I loved, I burned, I wrote, I taught.*

Q. When do you express the Preter Time by the Help of the Verb, Have ?

A. When I say that the Thing is *precisely* or *just* done, or that it is already done ; as, *I have fought, or I have been fighting ; I have burned the Paper, or I have been burning it.* The Preter Time is always thus expressed in Answer to

to

to the *Question*, *Have you done it ? As, Have you danced ? I have [danced]. Has Charles played ? He has [played].*

N. B. *Danced, played,* are put into *Crotchets*, because in Answer to the *Question* made by *Have*, the *Participle Passive* is seldom expressed ; as, *Have you suppt ? A. I have.*

Have, is also used in the *Question*, *How often ?* and in Answer to it, when the particular *Time* is not specified, *How often have you seen the King ? I have seen him fifty Times.* But if the precise *Time* is expressd, we use *Did* an interrogative, and the *Preter Time* without the *Helping Verb* in the Answer ; as, *Did you see the King when you were at Kensington ? Yes, I saw him twice.*

Q. When is the Preter Time to be expressed by the Verb, Was, and the Active Participle ?

A. When we would express the *Time past* of an imperfect or unfinished Action, (or when we would express, that at some *Time past* something was then a doing, but not finished ;) as, *I was supping, or I was then at Supper.*

Q. When do you express the Preter or past Time by the Verb, Had ?

A. When we would denote a *Time as past*, before some other *Time past* ; as, *I had read it before he came.*

Or, when we would denote or mark the *Time past* of an Action not done, only designed ; as, *I had watered the Garden, if I could have found the Pot.*

Q. When is the Preter or past Time to be expressed by, Did ?

A. When we would express the *Time past* in an emphatical or full Manner ; as, *I did burn it, not Peter.*

Or, when the *Adverb, Not*, is added to the Verb ; as, *I did not burn the House, I did not do it.*

Q. When do you express the Future Time by, Will ?

A. When I promise or threaten to do a Thing ; as, *I will study, I will punish you.*

Q. When is the Future Time to be expressed by, Shall ?

A. When one simply foretells the Thing ; as, *I shall go, I shall lose it, I shall die.*

Q. When must I use the second Future Time ?

A. When you would denote or express an Action that will be past, before another Action will be finished ; as, *I shall have dined, before he will come.*

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Formation of the Times of the Verb Passive.

THE *Verb Passive* is expressed by the Help of the *Verb*, *Am*, or *Be*, and the *Passive Participle*; as, *I am burned*.

* The *Present Time* is thus expressed,

Sing. *I am burned, thou art or you are burned, he is burned*. Plural. *We are burned, ye or you are burned, they are burned*.

But the other Formation, *Be*, is used in a depending Sentence, after the *Conjunctions*, *If*, *Although*, &c. As, *If I be burned, Although he be burned*, &c.

N. B. When the *Passive Participle* ends in, *en*, (for there are several Irregular ones that end thus) this *en* is frequently neglected in the *Tenses* of the *Active Verb* formed by, *Have*, and *Had*; as, *I have or I had spoke to him*. Yet when this *Participle* is used as an *Adjective*, or helps to make the *Passive Verb*, it is better and more usual, to use the Ending, *en*; as, *It is a written Book*, not *a writt Book*; *It is spoken abroad*, not *spoke abroad*; *It was written*, not *writ*.

* There are three *Preter Times*; which are thus expressed,

* The first *Preter absolute*, commonly called the *Preter-imperfect Time*; as,

Q

Sing.

Sing. *I was burned, thou wast or you were burned, he was burned.* Plural. *We were burned, ye or you were burned, they were burned.*

* The second *Preter Tense*, commonly called the *Preter-perfect*; as,

Sing. *I have been burned, thou hast or you have been burned, he hath or has been burned.* Plural. *We have been burned, ye or you have been burned, they have been burned.*

* The third *Preter*, commonly called the *Preter-pluperfect*; as,

Sing. *I had been burned, thou hadst or you had been burned, he had been burned.* Plural. *We had been burned, ye or you had been burned, they had been burned.*

* The first *Future* is thus expressed,

Sing. *I shall be burned, thou shalt or you shall be burned, he shall be burned.* Plural. *We shall be burned, ye or you shall be burned, they shall be burned.*

Or, Sing. *I will be burned, thou wilt or you will be burned, he will be burned.* Plural. *We will be burned, ye or you will be burned, they will be burned.*

* The second *Future* is thus expressed; as,

Sing. *I shall have been burned, thou shalt or you shall have been burned, he shall have been burned.* Plural. *We shall have been burned, ye or you shall have been burned, they shall have been burned.*

Or,

Or, *I will have been burned, thou wilt or you will have been burned, &c.*

N. B. Not being able to please my self in the Description of the *Times* of the *Verb Passive*, they differing in some Respects from the *Tenses* in the *Verb Active*, I have contented my self with barely setting them down by the old Names, though I am afraid my Reader will not be much benefited thereby.

C H A P. XX.

Of the Method of expressing the Moods or Manners of a Verb, signifying Being, Doing, or Suffering.

WE have no *Moods*, that is, no different Endings of the Verb, to denote the Manner of the Verbs signifying *Being, Doing, or Suffering*.

* The bare or simple asserting a Thing to be so or not so, is thus expressed,

I burn or do burn, I do not burn, I will burn, I will not burn, &c.

This Manner of signifying is called the *Indicative Mood* in *Latin*.

* The Manner of Verbs signifying *Command, or Exhortation*, is thus expressed,

In an Active Sense.

In a Passive Sense.

Singular.

Singular.

Burn thou or do thou burn.

Be thou burned.

Q 2

Plural.

Plural.

Burn ye or do ye burn.

Plural.

Be ye burned.

Note, The second Person Singular and Plural are oftener express'd without a Nominative Case than with ; as, *Go, and Preach to all Nations, &c.* for *Go ye, and Preach ye.*

* But this Manner of signifying in the other Persons is expressed by the Verb *Let* ; as,

In an Active Sense.

In a Passive Sense.

Singular.

Singular.

Let him burn.

Let him be burned.

Plural.

Plural.

Let us burn.

Let us be burned.

Let them burn.

Let them be burned.

Sometimes the *first Person* is thus expressed, *Sing we unto the Lord*, but this Manner of speaking is not to be imitated. The *third Person* is also thus expressed, *Be it so, Know all Men by these Presents, &c.* But here the Word *Let* may be understood.

This Manner of the Verbs signifying, is called in *Latin*, the *Imperative Mood*.

* The Manner of the Verb's signifying the *Power* of doing a Thing, is expressed in the *Present Time* by *can*, and in the *Preter* or *past Time* by *could* ; as,

Present Time.

Singular. *I can burn, thou canst or you can burn, he can burn.* Plural. *We can burn, ye or you can burn, they can burn.*

The

The Preter Time.

Sing. *I could burn, thou couldst or you could burn, he could burn.* Plural. *We could burn, ye or you could burn, they could burn.*

* This Manner in a *Passive Sense* is thus expressed,

Present Time.

Sing. *I can be burned, thou canst or you can be burned, &c.*

Preter Time.

I could be burned, thou couldst or you could be burned, &c.

* The Manner of a *Verb's* signifying the Liberty of a *Person* to do a *Thing*, or of a *Thing* to be done, is expressed by *May* in the *Present Time*, and *Might* in the *Time past*, as,

Present Tense.

Sing. *I may burn, thou mayst or you may burn, he may burn.* Plural. *We may burn, ye or you may burn, they may burn.*

Past Time.

Sing. *I might burn, thou mightst or you might burn, he might burn.* Plural. *We might burn, ye or you might burn, they might burn.*

* This Manner in a *Passive Sense* is thus expressed ; as,

Present Time.

Sing. *I may be burned, thou mayst or you may be burned, &c.*

Preter Time.

Singular. *I might be burned, thou mightst or you might be burned, &c.*

This Manner is called in *Latin* the *Potential* or *Subjunctive Mood*. It is called the *Potential*, because it denotes the Power of doing : And it is called the *Subjunctive Mood*, because it is subjoined or added to the first Sentence by some Couple or Tye ; as, *Peter comes that he may preach*, where *that* joins the two Sentences together.

N. B. *Can* and *May* are used with Relation both to the Time *present* and to *come* ; *Could* from *Can*, *might* from *may*, have a Relation both to the Time *past* and to *come*.

* The Manner of expressing the Inclination of the *Will* is done by *Will* and *Would* ; and the Necessity of a Thing to be done, by *Shall* and *Should*, and also *Must* and *Ought*.

But the Difference between *shall* and *will*, and *should* and *would* is, that *shall* and *will* denote the *Future Time absolute*, and *should* and *would* denote the *Future Time as conditional*.

Should and *Would* are often expressed by the *Subjunctive Mood* in *Latin* ; for most of the Tenses of that Mood, denote a Sort of *Euturity* or the Time to *come*.

* The

* The Manner of the Verbs signifying *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering*, without expressing either the Person or Thing, that, *is* *does*, or *suffers*, or the Number, is denoted by setting the Preposition *To* before the *Verb*; as, *to be*, *to burn*, *to love*, *to be loved*.

This Manner is called in *Latin* the *Infinitive Mood*.

CH A P. XXI.

Of the Verb Neuter.

I Have already made Mention of this Sort of Verb in the twelfth Chapter under the Name of an *Essential Verb*; but because it is not so well known by that Name, and I having but slightly treated of it there, I shall beg Leave to give a farther Explanation of it in this Place. And in order to give you a clear Notion of this Verb, I must first explain to you in a particular Manner what you are to understand by a *Verb Active*.

By a *Verb Active* we are to understand a Verb that does not only barely or simply signify Action, for that is not sufficient alone to make it a *Verb Active*; but it is required also that the Verb have some Noun following it; which may be the Subject of the Action or Impression that the Verb is used to denote: For Example, *to love*, *to teach*, are *Verbs Active*; because we can say *to love a Thing*, *to teach a Man*.

On the contrary, *to sleep*, *to go*, though these Verbs signify Action as well as *to love*, *to teach*, yet they are *Verbs Neuter*, because they cannot have any Noun following them; for we do not say, *to sleep a Thing*, *to go a Thing*. So in these Verbs, *to walk*, *to run*, the Action does not pass upon any other Thing or Person, there is nothing acted upon, but the Action is terminated or finished in the Person that acts. For we do not say, *to walk a Thing*, &c. but

but in these Verbs, *to beat, to read, to create, &c.* the Action is terminated in something without it self, or the Action passes upon some other Thing : For in this Expression, *to beat a Dog*, the Action of *beating* passes on the Dog ; the Dog is the Subject of *beating*. From these Considerations we may say,

* A *Verb Active*, is a Verb that can have after it a Noun signifying the Subject of the Action or Impression that the Verb is used to denote : As, *to create the World, to receive a Wound* : Or,

* A *Verb Active*, is a Verb that signifies so to act, as that the Action passes over on some other Thing : As, *to read a Book, to beat a Dog*.

* A *Verb Neuter*, is a Verb which signifies the State or Being, and sometimes the Action of a Person or Thing, but then it can have no Noun after it, to denote the Subject of Action.

But then it can have no Noun after it.] That is when it denotes Action, the Action does not pass upon any other Thing : For we do not say, *to walk a Thing, &c.*

This Verb is also called a *Verb Absolute* ; because the Action is terminated in the same Person or Thing ; as, *Peter grieves, &c.* For the Action does not pass upon a Subject, different from him who acts.

From what has been said it appears, that,

* There are two Sorts of *Verbs Neuter* :

1. One Sort that does not signify Action, but denotes the Being or State of a Person or Thing, either in Respect to its Posture or Situation ; as, *to sit, to hang, &c.*
2. The other Sort of Verbs Neuter signify Action, but in such a Manner that the Action does not pass upon a Subject

Subject different from what Acts ; as, *to crawl, to creep, to walk, &c.* So in this Sentence, *the Worm creeps* ; here the Action of creeping does not pass upon any other Subject, for we do not say, *to creep a Thing*, but the Action is terminated in the *Worm* it self.

N. B. Those Verbs that signify so to act, as that the Action passes on some other Thing, are called in the *Latin* Verbs *Transitive* ; and the Verbs whose Action do not pass on any other Thing, are called *Intransitive*.

The Verbs *Neuter*, which signify Action do also sometimes become *Transitive*, that is, their Action passes over on some other Thing : For Example, the Verb *Neuter, to walk*, becomes *Transitive* in this Sentence ; *Walk my Horse*, that is, *make my Horse to walk*.

But in these Phrases, *I run a Race, I go a Journey, I go home* ; the *Preposition* is left out, i. e. *in a Race, in a Journey, to Home* : For, *run, go*, do not pass the Action upon *Race, Journey, Home* ; these Words only declaring the Circumstances of *running, going, &c.* So, *I am about to go a long Way*, i. e. *to the End of a long Way*.

* The Signification of Verbs *Absolute* (or *Neuter* which signify Action) is in a Manner *Passive* : And therefore Verbs *Absolute* and *Passive* are frequently used for each other : As, *I am grieved, for, I grieve ; I am rejoiced, for, I rejoice ; I am laid, for, I lie*.

So the Verb *to go*, may be expressed also passively in the *Present* and *Future Tenses* ; as, *I go, or I am gone, I will go, I will be gone, &c.*

These Verbs following, *arrive, come, decay, fall, fly, go, grow, pass, return, stray, wither, run, &c.* commonly take the *Passive Formation, I am, I was*, for the *Active Formation, I have, I had*, as :

I am come, thou art come, he is come, we are come, ye are come, they are come ; for, *I have come, thou hast come, &c.* So, *I was come, thou wast come, he was come, &c.* for, *I had come, thou hadst come, he had come, &c.*

Questions

Questions relating to the Twenty-first Chapter.

Q. What is a Verb Neuter ?

A. A Verb Neuter, is a Verb which signifies the State or Being, and sometimes the Action of a Person or Thing; but then it can have no Noun after it, to denote the Subject of Action.

Q. How many Sorts of Verbs Neuter are there ?

A. Two. One Sort that signifies only the Being or State of a Thing : And the other Sort which signifies Action, but in such a Manner, that the Action does not pass upon a Subject different from him that acts.

Q. Are not some Verbs Neuter expressed like Verbs Passive ?

A. Yes. As, I grieve, or I am grieved, &c.

Q. What do you mean by a Verb Transitive ?

A. A Verb which signifies so to act, as that the Action passes over on some other Thing.

Q. What do you mean by a Verb Intransitive ?

A. A Verb that signifies to act, but the Action does not pass on any other Thing.

Q. Do Verbs Neuter ever become Transitive ?

A. Sometimes, as, Walk the Horse, &c.

Q. Whence comes the Word Neuter ?

A. From the Latin, Neuter, neither, because it is neither a Verb Active, (that passes the Action on a Thing) nor a Verb Passive.

Q. Whence comes Absolute ?

A. From *Absolutus*, finished or terminated, because, in a Verb Absolute, the Action is terminated in what acts.

Q. Whence comes Transitive ?

A. From *Transitivus*, or *Transire*, to pass over, because the Action passes on some other Thing.

Q. Whence comes Intransitive ?

A. From *Intransitivus*, or *in*, not, and *transire*, to pass over, because the Action does not pass over on some other Thing.

C H A P. XXII.

Of the A D V E R B.

WE are now come to speak of those *Parts of Speech* which are by some called *Particles*, as it were *little Parts of Speech*; and it is in the right Use of these, that the *Clearness* and *Beauty* of a good *Stile*, does more particularly consist. And we shall begin with the *Adverb*.

* An *Adverb* is a Word that is joined to a *Verb*, to an *Adjective*, to a *Participle*, or another *Adverb*, to denote or mark some *Circumstance*, some *Quality*, or *Manner* signified by them.

[*Joined to a Verb.*] The *Verb* signifies *Being*, *Doing*, or *Suffering*; the *Adverb* is joined to it, to show *How*, or *whether* or *no*, or *when*, or *where*, one *is*, *does*, or *suffers*: As, the Boy paints neatly, he writes ill, he writes now, The Book is read there, &c.

[*To an Adjective*] As, he is very good, no Man is always wise, &c.

[*To a Participle*] As, A Man truly fearing God, he is always living well, &c.

[*To another Adverb*] As, he lives very happily, &c.

We shall divide the *Adverbs* into *Classes* or *Heads*, according to their Signification, but we do not propose to give you a List of all the *Adverbs* of each *Class*, but only of some of the chief. Besides they will be best known by Use. We shall then without troubling the Reader with unnecessary Divisions, divide them into *Adverbs* of *Time*, of *Place* or *Situation*, of *Order* or *Rank*, of *Quantity* or *Number*, of *Quality*, of *Manner*, of *Affirmation*, of *Negation* or *Denying*, of *doubting*, and of *Comparison*.

A D V E R B S of TIME refer either to the *Time present*, *past*, to *come*, or to an *undetermined Time* or to a *Time not fixed*

ed : Those that relate to the *Time present* are, *Now*, i. e. *at this Time*; *To Day*, i. e. *in this Day*. Those that refer to the *Time past*, are, *Yesterday*, i. e. *the preceding Day*, or *the Day before the present Day*; *Already*, i. e. *before this Time*, or *having been before*, or *which is now done*; *Heretofore*, i. e. *before this Time*. Those that refer to the *Time to come*, are, *to Morrow*, i. e. *the Day following this*, or *the next Day to this Day*; *Henceforth*, i. e. *from or after this Time*; *Hereafter*, i. e. *After this Time*; *By and by*, i. e. *in some Time that is near to this Time*. Those that relate to an *undetermined Time*, when alone, are, *Often* or *Oftentimes*, i. e. *frequently*; *Always*, i. e. *in all Times*. *When* is used in asking a Question, i. e. *in what Time*; *Then*, i. e. *at that Time*; *Ever*, i. e. *at all Times*; *Never*, i. e. *at no Time*.

Now, comes from the Saxon *Nu*; *To Day*, from *to deg*; *Yesterday*, from *Gyrstandeg* or *Georstandeg*; *To Morrow* from *To Merigen*; *When* from *Hwenne*; *Then* from *Thonne*, &c. *Never*, i. e. *Ne ever*, (See under the *Adverb No*.)

That Expression *Never so much* is thus explained by my worthy Friend Mr. Benjamin Morland, E. G. Let a Man give *never so much*, i. e. Let him give *so much as he never gave before*. Which *Latin* is expressed by a Superlative Adjective.

ADVERBS OF PLACE relate to all Sorts of Place indifferently, and serve only to mark the Difference of the Distances and Situation in Regard either to the Person that speaks, or to the Things that are spoken of; as, *Where*, i. e. *in which Place*, or *in what Place*? (this Word is used in asking a Question.) *Here*, i. e. *in this Place*; *There*, i. e. *in that Place*; *Whither*, i. e. *to which Place*, or *to what Place*? *Hither*, i. e. *to this Place*; *Thither*, i. e. *to that Place*; *Upward*, i. e. *towards the Top*; *Downward*, i. e. *towards the Bottom*; *Whence*, i. e. *from which Place*, or *from what Place*? *Hence*, i. e. *from this Place*; *Thence*, i. e. *from that Place*; *By*, or *hard by*, i. e. *near such a Place*; *Far*, or *Far-of*, i. e. *a great Way distant from such a Place*; *Asunder*, denotes Separation or the Space between. *No where*, i. e. *in no Place*; *Elsewhere*, *in some other Place*. The Notion of *Order* or *Rank*, is inseparable from that of *Place*, under which they are naturally comprised, and a great many of them refer both to *Order* and *Place*; as, *before*, *behind*, &c. But these are

are rather *Prepositions*. Those that relate to *Order*, as, *Secondly, Thirdly, Fourthly, Afterwards*; for *First, Second, &c.* are really *Nouns Adjective*, some *Substantive* being understood.

Where, comes from the *Saxon, Hwer*; *Here*, from *Her*; *There*, from *Ther*; *Whither* from *Hwider*, *Hither* from *Hider*, *Thither* from *Thider*, *Whence* from *Hwanon*, *Hence* from *Heonon*, *Thence* from *Thanon*, *No where* from *Nowher*, *Elsewhere* from *Elleshwider*.

ADVERBS of NUMBER are, *Once*, i. e. *one Time*, *Twice*, i. e. *two Times*, *Thrice*, i. e. *three Times*. But afterwards we express the Number by two Words; as, *Four Times, Five Times, &c.* *Rarely, Seldom*, are also counted *Adverbs of Number*. *Frequently, often*, signify also an indefinite Number.

ADVERBS of QUANTITY, or those which serve to denote the *Price or Value* of Things, as well as any Quantity of them, are, *How much*, i. e. *how great*, when it signifies Quantity: But *How many* when it signifies the Number: *Enough*, i. e. *what is sufficient*, &c. *So Much, Little*, which are really *Adjectives*.

ADVERBS of AFFIRMING or of Consent are, *Yea, Yes, I, Yes* is more usual and modish than *Yea, I* for *Yes*, is used in a hasty or merry Way; as, *I Sir, I Sir*. And sometimes we use *Ay*, but this Way of Affirming is rude and ungentile. *Yea* or *Yes* comes from the *Saxon Ia*.

ADVERBS of DENYING are, *No, Not, and Nay*.

No and *Nay* are used absolutely, that is, without being joined to any other Word; as, *Will you do it? A. No.* *Not* is used when joined to some other Word; as, *I do not love it*, where we must not say, *I do no love it*, neither may we use *I do no read, He is no well*, for, *I do not read. He is not well, &c.* But *no* before a Substantive is an Adjective for *none*; as, *No man, or no Body did it*.

Nay is emphatically and elegantly used to correct an Error in our selves or others: As, *He is as good a Scholar as you are, nay, a better*.

No comes from the *Saxon No*, and *Not* from *Noht*: The Saxons used also *Ne* for *No*, which did often lose its *e*, and coalesce or join with other Words; as, *Nill* for *Ne will*, i. e. *will not*; so *None* for *Ne one, &c.*

* *Ay* seems to be a Contraction of the Latin Word *Aio*, as *Nay* is of *Nego*. For our *Nay*, *Nay*; *Ay*, *Ay*; is a plain imitation of Terence's *Negat quis? Nego. Ait? Aio.* Eunuch. II. 2. 21.

N. B. Two Negatives, or two Adverbs of Denying do in English affirm.

We put our Adverb of denying after the Verb; as, *I do not love him*, *I love not him*, or *I love him not*: But the other Adverbs may be placed indifferently either before or behind. Only you may observe, that the Adverbs which end in *ly*, are commonly placed next to the Verb.

Nor, is always in the second Member of a Sentence, and then, *neither*, is in the first; as, *I have eaten neither Meat nor Bread to Day*. But if, *not*, be in the first Member, *neither*, but rather, *nor*, is in the second: As, *I have not tasted Bread to Day*, *nor* [*neither*] *have I seen any*.

ADVERBS OF DOUBTING whether it be so or not, are, *Perhaps*, or *Peradventure*, i. e. *it may be so or not so*.

These are applicable both to Affirmation and Negation, and are, conjectural, doubtful, and contingent: *Perhaps* and *Peradventure* are used adverbially, though strictly speaking they are no Adverbs but a Preposition compounded with a Substantive: As, *Perhaps* is by Hap or Accident; *Peradventure* is by Adventure, or rather by an Adventure; as also, *indeed*, which is compounded of a Preposition and Substantive.

But these Words relate to Certainty, or Confidence, that the Thing is so or not so; *Truly*, *Surely*, *Indeed*, *Verily*, &c.

ADVERBS OF COMPARISON; those Adverbs which do themselves mark Comparison, or the Difference of Degree in Persons or Things, are, *How*, *As*, *So*, *How much More*, *Less*, *Least*, *Most*, *Very*, *Rather*, *Than*.

The Adverbs of Comparison, *More*, *Least*, and *Most*, are joined to any Adverbs, that are capable of receiving *More* or *Less*.

* Or you may derive *ay* from the Sax. *gea*, *ga*, *ia*, *ya*, Dan. *ja*. Goth. *ga*, *gai*. So *Yes*, from the Sax. *gyse*, or *gyse*. So *nay* may come from the Sax. *na*, *ne*, Gr. *νῆ*, or *νῆ*, which is common in Composition.

ADVERBS

ADVERBS OF QUALITY, or of the Manner ;---From most Adjectives in our Language are formed Adverbs which end in *ly*, and these for the most Part denote the same *Quality* or *Manner*, as the Adjectives do, from whence they are derived ; as, *that was nobly done*, or *that was a noble Deed* ; *God's Mercy is infinite*, or *God is infinitely merciful*. So from *just*, *wise*, *prudent*, *brave*, *right*, *constant*, &c. come the Adjectives, *justly*, *wisely*, *prudently*, *bravely*, *rightly*, *constantly*, &c.

This Ending answers to the *Saxon* Termination in *LICE*, as, *rihtlice*, *rightly*, from *riht* : And to the *French* Ending *MENT*, as, *purement*, *purely* : To the *German* Ending *LICH*, as, *warlich*.

This Sort of Adverbs commonly admit of *Comparison* ; as, *happily*, *more happily*, *most happily*.

N. B. There are Abundance of Words, which are reckoned for Adverbs and are not ; and there are great Numbers of Adjectives that are used adverbially, or as Adverbs : But these, and those that are formed from them ending in *ly*, and several *Prepositions* that are reckoned as Adverbs, I have designedly omitted.

* Some *Adverbs* are also compared ; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*, &c.

Adverbs in *ly*, are compared by *more* and *most* ; as, *wisely*, *more wisely*, *most wisely*.

Sometimes the Article *The*, is used in an emphatical Manner, before the *Comparative* ; as, *The less I see him, the better* ; *The more I talk with him, the less I like him*.

Motiou from one Place to another, is commonly expressed by the Adverbs that end in *ther* ; as, *Hither*, *to this Place* ; *Thither*, *to that Place*.

Hither, is sometimes used as an Adjective : As, *On the hither Side of it*, in contra-distinction to the *other Side*, or the *farther Side of it*.

The *Adverb* is also often in the Modern Languages explained by the *Noun* and the *Preposition* ; as, *with justice*, *for*, *justly* ; *with wisdom*, *for*, *wisely*, &c.

Questions relating to the twenty-second Chapter.

Q. What is an Adverb ?

A. An Adverb is a Word that is joined to a *Verb*, to an *Adjective*, to a *Participle*, or another *Adverb*, to denote or mark some *Circumstance*, some *Quality*, or *Manner* signified by them.

Q. Is an Adverb joined only to a Verb ?

A. No ; for it is also joined to *Adjectives*, *Participles*, and to other *Adverbs*.

Q. What is the Use of the Adverb ?

A. To denote some *Quality*, *Manner*, or *Circumstance*, which the Word it is put to signifies.

Q. Are not Adjectives sometimes used as Adverbs ?

A. Yes : They often are so used, and there is hardly any *Adjective* from whence an *Adverb* in *ly* may not be formed.

Q. What sort of Adverbs are the Adverbs in ly ?

A. Adverbs in *ly*, are Adverbs of *Quality*, or of the *Manner* signified by them.

Q. Are not Adverbs sometimes compared ?

A. Yes : Some are, especially the Adverbs in *ly*.

Q. What is the Signification of Where, here, there, hence, thence, &c ?

A. *Where*, is, in what Place, *here*, in this Place, &c.

Q. Whence comes the Word Adverb ?

A. From the *Latin Adverbium*, which comes from *Ad* to and *Verbum*, a *Verb* or Word, because it is added to another Word to shew some *Manner* or *Circumstance*, and especially to the *Verb*.

C H A P. XXIII.

Of the Conjunction.

A Conjunction is a Part of Speech that joins Sentences together, and shows the Manner of their Dependence upon one another.

For,

For, to use Mr. Lock's Words already quoted, To think well, a Man must observe the Dependence of his Thoughts and Reasonings one upon another : And to express well such methodical and rational Thoughts, he must have Words to shew what *Connexion*, *Restriction*, *Distinction*, *Opposition*, *Emphasis*, &c. he gives to each respective Part of his Discourse. See Page 85. of this Grammar.

I shall therefore divide the Conjunctions into Conjunctions *Copulative* ; into *Disjunctive*, or of *Division* ; into *Adversative*, or of *Opposition*, and of *Exception* ; into *Conditional* ; into *Suspensive*, or of *Doubling* ; into *Concessive* ; into *Declarative* ; into *Interrogative* ; into *Comparative* ; into *Augmentative* and *Diminutive* ; into *Causal*, or *Causative* ; into *Illative*, or *Conclusive* ; into *Conjunctions of Time*, and of *Order* ; and into *Conjunctions of Transition*.

Conjunctions Copulative

Are those Words which serve to join or couple two Propositions or Sentences under the same Affirmation, or under the same Negation. *And*, *also*, are those which are used for the Affirmation ; *nor*, or *neither*, for the Negation.

There is no Conjunction of such general Use as, *And*. As *Bread* and *Cheese*, *Beer* and *Ale*, and *yet*, and *therefore*, &c.

Conjunctions Disjunctive

Are those Words which do serve in such a Manner for the *Connexion* of Discourse, that they mark at the same Time *Division* or *Distinction* in the Sense of the Things spoken of : These are, *Or*, and *Whether*, *Either* ; as, *it is one or the other*. *I do not know whether it be good or bad*.

Conjunctions Adversative ; Or,

Conjunctions of Opposition, are those Words which are used to couple two Sentences, in marking the *Opposition* in the second Sentence, with regard to the first. The

chief of these is, *But*, the others are, *Nevertheless*, *However*, &c.

As, *But to say no more* : Here *But* intimates, (As Mr. Locke says) a Stop of the Mind, in the Course it was going, before it came to the End of it. *I saw but two Plants* : Here it shews, that the Mind limits the Sense to what is expressed, with a Negation of all other. *You pray ; But, it is not that God would bring you to the true Religion, But what he would confirm you in your own* : The first of these *Buts* intimates a Supposition of the Mind, of something otherwise than it should be ; the latter shews, that the Mind makes a direct Opposition between that and what goes before it.

So, *All Animals have Sense ; But a Dog is an Animal* ; Here it signifies little more, but that the latter Proposition is joined to the former, as the *Minor* of a Syllogism.

Conjunctions of *Exception* or *Restriction* are, *unless*, *but*, *otherwise*, &c. as, *I will not go unless you will go with me*.

Conjunctions *Conditional* are such as, in connecting one Part of the Discourse to the other, serve to put, between the two Sentences that they join, a Condition or Clause without which, that which is expressed in the principal Sentence ceases to have its Effect. These Conjunctions are, *If*, *But if*, also *save* and *except* ; if they may be allowed to be Conjunctions.

The Conjunctions *Suspensive* or *Dubitative*, which serve to mark Suspension or Doubting in Discourse, are *Whether*, &c. as, *I do not know whether it be so or no*.

Conjunctions *Concessive*, or such as grant the Thing to be so, are *Although*, &c.

Conjunctions *Declarative*, are such as are used to explain the Thing more clearly ; as, *As*, *namely*, *to wit*, for Example, &c.

As, *There are four Elements, Namely, or for Example, or to wit, Earth, Water, Air, Fire*. But if any one should insist that, *Namely*, is an Adverb ; *For Example*, a Preposition and a Substantive ; *To wit*, a Preposition and a Verb ; I shall not dispute it. *To wit*, comes from the Saxon, *witan*, to know.

Conjunctions *Interrogative*, are such as are used in asking a Question, or the Reason of a Thing. These are, *Why*,

Why, Wherefore, &c. as, *Why did you do it?* But this shall suffice for the Conjunctions, since it would be too tedious to go through all the Divisions of them, and I may some other Time explain them more largely and accurately. For the Instances we have given from Mr. Locke in the Conjunction, *But*, may give occasion to reflect upon their Use and Force in Language, and lead us into the Contemplation of several Actions of our Minds in Discoursing, which it has found a Way to intimate to others by these Particles, some whereof constantly, and others in certain Constructions, have the Sense of a whole Sentence contained in them. And there are some of them do really belong to several other Divisions, besides what they are generally divided into.

The Conjunctions not yet mentioned are, *For, Because*, (i. e. *by cause*, as it was wrote formerly;) *That, Therefore, Whereas, Since, Likewise, Thereupon, &c.*

If any shall reckon some of these Words as Adverbs, and some of the *Adverbs* as *Conjunctions*, they being often used in both Senses, there will be no great Harm done.

Questions relating to the twenty-third Chapter.

Q. *What is a Conjunction?*

A. A Conjunction is a Part of Speech that joins Sentences together, and shows the Manner of their Dependence upon one another.

Q. *What is the Use of the Conjunction?*

A. It is used to join Sentences.

Q. *Does it join Words together?*

A. Strictly speaking it does not; for in this Sentence, *Peter and Paul preaches*; *preaches* is understood in the first Part of the Sentence, that is, *Peter preaches*, and *Paul preaches*, where you see there are two Sentences joined together by the Cople or Conjunction, *And*.

Q. *Whence comes Conjunction?*

A. From *Conjunctio*, a Joining together; because the Use of the *Conjunction* is to join Sentences together.

Of the PREPOSITION.

THIS Part of Speech being of such special Use in our Language, that by the Help of it, almost all our Syntax is performed : We have therefore treated of it in the Eight Chapter p. 84.

C H A P. XXIV.

Of the INTERJECTION.

THE *Interjection* is nothing but an Expression, which is used to denote some sudden Motion or Passion of the Mind. And as the greatest Part of the *Expressions* used on these Occasions, are taken from Nature alone, the real *Interjections* in all Languages, consist but of one Syllable. And as all Nations do agree in these Kinds of natural Passions, so, likewise, do they very much agree in the Signs or Indications of *Mirth, Sorrow, Love, Hatred, &c.* Some have indeed denied the *Interjections* to be Words, or any Part of distinct Speech, but only natural Signs of the Motions or Passions of our Mind, expressed by such rude Sounds, several of which are common with us, to brute Creatures. But as the Ingenious and Reverend Mr. Symes, * very well observes, since there are Passions, and these must be represented in Discourse, the *Interjection* has as good a Foundation in Nature, and is as necessary in Construction as the best of them.

* An *Interjection* is a Part of Speech, that denotes some sudden Motion or Passion of the Soul.

* In a Book called *Nolumus Liliam defamari.*

They

They may be divided into *Solitary* and *Passive*, being used by us when we are alone, or not so directly tending to Discourse with others, in which the Party speaks as suffering some Change in himself. They are the Result, either of a surprized *Judgement*, denoting either *Admiration*, as, *Heigh* ; *Doubting* or *Considering*, as, *Hem*, *Hy* ; *Despising*, as, *Pish*, *Shy*, *Tush*, &c. or such as denote a surprized *Affection*, moved by the Apprehension of *Good* or *Evil*, denoting *Mirth* ; as, *Ha*, *Ha*, *He* ; *Sorrow*, as, *Hoi*, *Oh*, *Oh*, *Ah* ; *Love* and *Pity*, as, *Ah*, *Alack*, *Alas* ; *Hate* and *Anger*, as, *Vauh*, *Hau*, *Phy*, *Foh*.

The other Sort may be stiled *Social* and *Active*, being never used by us, when we are alone, but immediately tending to Discourse with others, in which the Party speaks with Design to procure some Change in his Hearers. These are such as denote *Exclaiming*, or crying out, as, *Oh*, *Soho* ; *Silencing*, as, *St*, *Hush* ; Such as are used to dispose the Senses of the Hearer, bespeaking his Attention, *Ho*, *Oh* ; *Expressing Attention*, as, *Ha* ; Such as are used to dispose the Affections of the Hearer, by Way of *Insinuation* or *Blandishment*, as, *Now* ; or by Way of *Threatning*, as, *Ve*, *Woe*. But *Woe* is rather a Substantive ; for *Woe's me*, is, *Woe is to*, or *for me*.

Questions relating to the Twenty-third Chapter.

Q. *What is an Interjection ?*

A. An *Interjection* is a Part of Speech that denotes some sudden Motion or Passion of the Soul.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Interjection ?*

A. From *Interjectio*, a Casting, or Putting between ; it falling abruptly or on a sudden between our Discourse.

C H A P. XXV.

Of the EXPLETIVES.

THere are certain Words called *Expletives*, that are redundant Words, used in several Languages, especially in the *Greek* and *Tuscan*: These Words contribute nothing to the *Syntax* or *Construction*, nor to the *Sense* of the *Discourse*; but their chief Use is to give greater *Emphasis* or *Force* to the *Expression*.

Our Language admits of several Words of this Sort; therefore I have just mentioned them here.

* An *Expletive* is a Word that is used to give an *Emphasis* or *Force* to the *Expression*, but is unnecessary either as to the *Construction* or *Sense* of the *Discourse*.

Such are, *From, For, Now, The, Then, Well, &c.* As *From whence come you?* *For, whence come you, &c.* *I go for to see, i. e. I go to see.*

*The Heroe came the Battle for to see,
But unto him appear'd no Enemy.*

Here also *Unto* is put for *To*. *Prishee now do. for, Prishee do, i. e. I pray thee do so or so. What am I the better? Do it then; Well, read the Book. **

* The Learned Dr. *Clarke*, in his Edition of *Homer*, is of Opinion, that in the *Greek* Tongue, the little Words called *Expletives* are not made use of only to fill up the Verse, but that they add *Elegance* to the Sentence, and likewise serve to connect the Sentences together. V. Pref. p. 2.

Quæstion

Questions relating to the Twenty-fourth Chapter.

Q. *What is an Expletive ?*

A. An Expletive is a Word that is used to give an Emphasis or Force to the Expression, but is unnecessary either as to the Construction or Sense of the Discourse.

Q. *What is the Use of the Expletive ?*

A. To give an Emphasis or Force to the Expression.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Expletive ?*

A. From *Expletivus*, or *explere*, because it does as it were fill up the Sentence,



P A R T

PART II.

CHAP. I.

Of Etymology or Derivation.

HAVING in the former Part treated of the several Parts of Speech; I shall now come to observe the Agreement or Affinity of each to the other, or how one Word comes or is derived from another: And this Part of *Grammar* is called *Etymology*, taken in its common and more usual Sense, as it treats of the *Derivation* of Words.

* From any Substantive, or Adjective, put for a Substantive, (in the Singular Number) is formed the *Genitive Case* by adding *s*. See Chap. VI. Page 65.

* Every Substantive put for an Adjective, becomes an Adjective.

This may be called an *Adjective Respective*. See Chap. IX. Page 108.

* Many Substantives, and some Adjectives (and sometimes the other Parts of Speech) being

ing put for *Verbs*, become *Verbs*: And denote or signify some Sort of Application of the same Thing, or the Thing signified by the Substantive: The Vowel being commonly made long, and the Consonant softned.

As from *a House* comes *to house*, i. e. to go into a House, or to receive into a House. From *Brass*, to *braz*e, i. e. to cover with *Brass*: So from *Glass* to *glaze*; *Grass*, to *graze*; *Price*, to *prize*; *Breath*, to *breathe*; *Shade*, *shadow*, to *shade*, to *shadow*; from a *Fish*, to *fish*, *Oil*; to *oil*; *Rule*, to *rule*; *Love*, to *love*; *Life*, to *live*; *Strife*, to *strive*: *Further*, to *further*; *Forward*, to *forward*; *Hinder*, to *hinder*: And a great many more.

Sometimes the Syllable *en* is added, especially to *Verbs* that come from *Adjectives*; as, from *Short*, comes to *shorten*, that is, to make short; *Fast*, to *fasten*; *White*, to *whiten*, or to *white*; *Black*, to *black*, or to *blacken*; *Hard*, to *harden*; *Soft*, to *soften*: And many others.

* From *Verbs* are formed the *Participles*; The *Passive* one that ends in *ed*, or *en*; as, *loved*, *given*: And the *Active Participle* that ends always in *ing*, as, *loving*: From which *Verbs* by the Addition of *er* to the Ending of the Present Tense comes a Substantive signifying the *Agent* or *Doer*. As from *Hear* comes the Noun *Hearer*, i. e. one that hears: From *Run*, *Runner*, i. e. one that runs.

* From Substantives, by adding the Termination or Ending *y*, are formed *Adjectives* of Plenty, or of Abounding.

As, from a *Louse* comes *lousy*, i. e. one that has a great many *Lice*; *Wealth*, *wealthy*; *Health*, *healthy*; *Might*, *mighty*; *Worth*, *worthy*; *Wit*, *witty*; *Water*, *watry*; *Earth*,
S
earthy;

earthy ; *Wood, woody* ; *Air, airy* ; *Heart, hearty* ; *Hand, handy* : And a great many others. The Saxon and German Termination *ig*, answers to this Termination *y*, as, *Enig, any*.

* Some Adjectives end in *en*, and signify the Matter out of which any Thing is made : As, *Ashen, Birchen, Oaken, Beachen* ; An *Oaken Stick*, i. e. A Stick made of Oak.

* From Substantives come also Adjectives, denoting *Fulness*, by adding the Termination *ful*.

As, from *Joy*, comes *joyful*, i. e. full of Joy ; *Fruit, fruitful* ; *Youth, youthful* ; *Lust, lustful* ; *Care, careful* ; *Use, useful* ; *Delight, delightful* ; *Plenty, plentiful* : And many others.

* Sometimes the Termination *some* is added, having much the same Sense with *ful*.

As, from *Trouble* comes *troublesome*, i. e. full of Trouble ; *Delight, delightful* ; *Game, gamesome* ; *Burden, burdensome* ; *Light, lightsome* ; *Hand, handsome* ; *Alone, lonesome* ; *Whole, wholesome* ; *Toil, toilsome* ; *Foul, Sax. Ful, foulsome*. This answers to the Saxon Termination *Sum*.

* But the Termination *less*, being added to Substantives, forms Adjectives signifying *Want*.

As, *Worthless*, i. e. of no *Worth*, or that wants *Worth* ; *Witless, Heartless, Joyless, Careless, Helpless, Useless* ; so from *Comfort, comfortless* ; *Sap, sapless*, i. e. without *Sap* : And many others. This Termination answers to the Saxon *Leas*, or *lease* ; as, *Facleas*, without fault. Which *Leas* comes from the *Meso Gothick Laes*, which signifies *free from*, or *without*, and in Composition denotes *Privation* or *Defect*.

* The same Thing is also signified by *un*, or *in*, prefixed to Adjectives, though *in* is only used in Words derived from the *Latin*.

As, *Pleasant*, *unpleasant*, i. e. not pleasant; *wise*, *unwise*; *profitable*, *unprofitable*; *Unworthy*, *unfruitful*, *unusual*, *Innocent*, i. e. not hurtful, *impatient*, i. e. not patient: But we shall speak of the *Particles*, *un* and *in*, more fully in the Chapter of the *Inseparable Prepositions*.

* By adding the Termination *ly* to Substantives (and sometimes to Adjectives) are formed Adjectives which denote *Likeness*.

As, from *Giant*, comes *giantly*, i. e. like a *Giant*; *Earth*, *earthly*; *Heaven*, *heavenly*; *God*, *godly*; *Good*, *goodly*, &c.

The same Termination *ly*, being also added to Adjectives, forms Adverbs of Quality, as from *Mighty*, comes *mightily*; *Rich*, *richly*, &c. See Chap. XXII.

This Termination answers to *lic*, or *lice*, of the *Saxons*; as, *Heofonlic*, *heavenlike*, or *heavenly*: And to *lich* and *lick* of the *Germans* and *Dutch*.

Adjectives Diminutive, or Adjectives that denote Lessening of the Signification are made by adding *ish* to Adjectives, and often to Substantives.

As, *Green*, *greenish*; i. e. a little or somewhat *green*; *White*, *whitish*; *Soft*, *softish*; *Thief*, *thievish*; *Wolf*, *wolfish*; *Child*, *childish*: And after this Manner you may form many others.

N. B. But these Words in *ish*, if they come from a Substantive they generally denote *Likeness*; as, *Wolfish*, i. e. like a *Wolf*, from the Substantive *Wolf*; but if they come from an Adjective they denote Diminution, or lessening the Sense of the Word they come from; as, *Softish*, i. e. somewhat *soft*: From the Adjective *soft*.

There are also some National Names which end in *ish*; as, *English*, *Spanish*, *Danish*, *Scottish*, (by Contraction *Scotch*) *Swedish*, &c. This Ending answers to the Saxon Ending *isc*; as, *Engleisc*, *English*, &c.

CHAP. II.

Of Substantives Diminutive, &c.

* **A** Noun Diminutive is a Word, that commonly, by the Addition of some Letter or Syllable to the Word from whence it comes, serves to denote a Diminution or Lessening the Sense of that Word from whence it comes: As, *Lambkin*, from *Lamb*.

Here *kin* being added to *Lamb* denotes the lessening the Signification of the Word, for *Lambkin* is a little *Lamb*.

Ing is mostly the diminutive Termination as to *Animals*: *Gosling*, *Duckling*, and the like. *Ing* there seems to signify *Young*, Sax. *iung*, Dan. *ung*. Isl. *ing*. So that *Lambkin*, is for *Lamb ing*: *Lamb-young*. The *k* being put in here for better Sound Sake.

So these are Forms of Diminutives; from *Hill*, *Hillock*, i. e. a little *Hill*; *Part*, *Particle*, *Parcel*; *Cock*, *Cockerel*; *Pike*, *Pickerel*; *Poke*, (an old Word) *Pocket*, i. e. a little *Poke*; *I will not buy a Pig in a Poke*, i. e. *Bag*. A *Goose*, a *Gosling*; a *Chick*, a *Chicken*; a *Pipe*, a *Pipkin*: So a *Man*, *Mannikin*, i. e. a little *Man*; a Word seldom used. So *Wilkin*, i. e. little *Will*; *Tomkin*, little *Tom*.

There are also other Ways of forming *Diminutive* Words, by softening or thinning the Sound, as it were, of the Letters, especially of the Vowels; as the Form of making *Augmentative* Words, or such as encrease the Signification, is by swelling, or else drawing out the Sound, and that is done sometimes not so much by changing the Letters, as by the Pronunciation of them: As, to *sup*.

to *tip* ; *Soop*, *Sop*, *Sippet* ; *Top*, *Tip* ; *Spit*, *Spout* ; *Tong*, *Ting* ; *Babe*, *Baby*, *Booby* : The Sense of this Sort of Words is also enlarged or lessened by adding *great*, or *little* to them. The Sense is also often enlarged or lessened, by drawing out the Sound in a Word ; as, *Great*, *great booby* ; So, *lee-tle pre-ty Parrot*, for, *little, pretty*, &c.

So likewise these Words may be said to be Diminutives, *Scruple*, to *Dally*, to *Slumber*, *Dribbles*, *Smack*, *Trip*, *Nibble* ; being considered in Relation to *Doubt*, to *play*, to *sleep*, *Sum*, *Taste*, to *stumble*, to *bite*, &c. These are also Diminutives *Nag*, *Cottage*, *Palles*, *Wicket*, *Sprig*, *Puppet*, *Dagger*, *Pistol*, *Scrap*, *Crum*, *Speck*, &c. being considered with Respect to *Horse*, *House*, *Bed*, *Door*, *Branch*, *Image*, *Sword*, *Gun*, *Piece*, &c.

* Words ending in *Ship*, denote or signify Office, Employment, or Condition.

As, *Kingship*, i. e. the Office of a King ; *Stewardship*, the Office or Employment of a Steward ; so *Fellowship*, *Partnership*, *Chancellorship*, *Headship*, *Lordship*, *Worship*, whence *Worshipful* and to *worship*. This Termination answers to the Saxon ending *Seyp*, or *Scype* ; as, *Weorth-scype*, i. e. *Worship*, or *Worthship*.

* Words ending in *dom*, denote first Office or Charge with Power and Dominion, or without them ; as, *Popedom*, *Kingdom* ; Secondly, the State, Condition, Quality, and Propriety, and also the Place in which a Person exercises his Power ; as, *Freedom*, *Thraldom*, *Whoredom*, *Wisdom*, &c. *Dukedom*, which denotes the Authority or Power of a Duke, as also the Place where he exercises that Power.

This ending answers to the Saxon *dom*, or *dome* ; as, *Freedom*, *freedom* ; *Wisdom*, *wisdom* ; *Huredom*, *whoredom*.

* Words ending in *Rick*, denote also Office and *Dominion* ; as, *Bishoprick*, &c.

This Ending answers to the *Saxon Rice* or *ric*, which signifies *Dominion*, *Power*, &c. as, *Bisceop-ric*, i. e. *Bishoprick*.

Also those Words which end in *Wick*, have the same Signification ; as, *Bailiwick*, &c.

N. B. *Ment* and *Age*, are purely *French* Terminations, and have the same Meaning with us as with them, and scarce ever occur but in Words which come from that Language ; as, *Commandment*, *Usage*, &c.

* From Adjectives by adding *Ness*, come also Substantives, which signify the *Essence* of the Thing.

As, from *White*, *whitness* ; *hard*, *hardness* ; *great*, *greatness* ; *skilful*, *skilfulness*, &c. These are called *Abstract Nouns*.

This Ending answers to the *Saxon Ness*. *

* Nouns that end in *Hood* and *Head*, denote the *State*, *Condition*, and *Quality* ; as, *Godhead*, *Manhood*, *Widowhood*, *Knighthood*, *Likelihood*, *Falseness*, &c.

This Ending answers to the *German Heyt*, and the *Saxon had*, or *hade*, which signifies *Order*, *Sex*, *Degree*, *State*, and *Quality*, &c. as, *Medenhad*, *Maidenhead*.

* The adding of *ness* is now the common Way of denoting abstract Idea's, whether relating to *Things* or *Persons* : But antiently *hede* was more peculiar to personal Qualities, and *ness* served for most other Things. As, *Chastede*, *Chastity* ; *Kuynhede*, *Kindness* ; *Orkuindhede*, *Unkindness* ; *Fairhede*, *Fairness*, *Beauty*, *Wretchede*, *Wretchedness*.

There

There are also other Substantives (derived from *Adjectives* and *Verbs*) which are made by adding the Ending *th*; there being sometimes some small Change made.

As, from *Long*, comes *length*; *strong*, *strength*; *broad*, *breadth*; *wide*, *width*; *deep*, *depth*; *high*, *height*; (or as formerly *height*;) *true*, *truth*; *warm*, *warmth*; *dear*, *dearth*; *slow*, *slowness*; *merry*, *mirth*; *hail*, *health*; *well*, *weal*, *wealth*; *dry*, *drowth*, *drought*, *dryth*; *young*, *Youth*; *Moon*, *Month*.

Of this Kind are also several Words derived from *Verbs*: As, from *to dy*, comes *death*; *to till*, *tilth*; *grow*, *growth*; *mow*, *mowth*; as, *later mowth*, *the after-mowth*, now called *Math*. *Steal*, *stealth*; *see*, *sight*; *flee*, or *fly*, *flight*; *weigh*, *weight*, &c.

These Words do also retain the same Form, *Faith*, *Spight*, *Wrath*, *wrath*, *Broth*, *moth*, *Froth*, *breath*, *Sooth*, *worth*, *Light*, *wight*, an old Word that signifies Thing, or Person, also *strong*, or *nimble*.

This Ending is an Imitation of the *Saxon* Ending *th*, or *the*; as, *Myrthe*, *Mirth*; *Eorth*, i. e. *Earth*, &c.

Questions relating to the first and second Chapters of the Second Part.

Questions relating to the First Chapter.

Q. *What do you mean by Etymology?*

A. *Etymology* as it is here treated of, relates to the Derivation of Words, or shows how one Word comes from another.

Q. *Do Substantives ever become Verbs?*

A. Yes; For from a *House*, comes the Verb *to house*; from a *Fish*, comes *to fish*; from a *Rule*, comes the Verb *to rule*, &c.

Q. *Do Substantives come from Verbs?*

A. Yes; Almost every Verb has some Substantive coming from it, which is therefore called a *Verbal Noun*, i. e. a Noun that comes from a Verb.

Q. *Give me an Example?*

A. From the Verb, by adding *er*, comes a Substantive signifying the *Agent*, or *Doer*: As, from *Hear*, comes *Hear-er*,

er, or one that *bears*; from *run* comes a *Runner*, or one that *runs*.

Q. *What do Adjectives that end in y denote?*

A. They denote *Plenty*, or *Abundance*.

Q. *What do Adjectives that end in ful signify?*

A. They signify *Fulness*.

Q. *What do Adjectives that end in some denote?*

A. They also denote *Fulness*.

Q. *What do Adjectives in less denote?*

A. They denote or signify *Want*; as, *Careless*, without *Care*.

Q. *What do Adjectives in ish signify?*

A. They imply a *Diminution* or *Lessening* the *Sense* of the *Word*; as, *Softish*, i. e. somewhat *soft*.

Questions relating to the Second Chapter.

Q. *What is a Diminutive Noun?*

A. A *Noun* that denotes *Diminution* or a *lessening* the *Sense* of the *Word* it comes from; as, *Lambkin*, a little *Lamb*, from *Lamb*.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Diminutive?*

A. From *Diminutivus*, or *Diminuere*, to *lessen*, or make a *Thing* *less*.

Q. *What do Nouns that end in Ship denote?*

A. They denote *Office*, *Employment*, or *Condition*.

Q. *What do Nouns ending in dom denote?*

A. They denote *Office*, or *Charge*, with *Power* or *Dominion*.

Q. *What do Nouns that end in Rick and Wick signify?*

A. They denote also *Office* and *Dominion*.

Q. *What do Words that end in Hood and Head denote?*

A. They denote the *State*, *Condition*, and *Quality* of a *Thing* or *Person*.

C H A P. III.

Of Words borrowed from the Latin.

* **W**E have a great many Words borrowed from the *Latin*, (and indeed almost all that are not Words of one Syllable, or that do not come from Words of one Syllable are *Latin*;) but the greatest Part of these the *French* or *Italians* borrowed from the *Latin*, and we from them.

* *Nouns Substantive* as well as *Adjective*, are made *English* from the *Latin* by some little Alteration or Change in the Words, which is common to us with the *French*: As,

Nature comes from the *Latin* Word *Natura*, Grace, from *gratia*, Clemency, *clementia*, Synod, *synodus*, ingenious, *ingeniosus*, ingenuous, *ingenuus*, Ornament, *ornamentum*, vice, *vitium*, Infant, *infans*, prudent, *prudens*, Quiet, *quies*, Union, *unio*, nectar, *nectar*, Honour, *honor*, Image, *imago*, Multitude, *multitudo*, Majesty, *majestas*, Virtue, *virtus*, Poem, *poema*, Poesy, *poesis*, Phenix, *Phoenix*, audacious, *audax*, liberal, *liberalis*, specifical, *specificus*, possible, *possibilis*, implacable, *implacabilis*, &c. But when there happens any very considerable Alteration, we then take the Words from the *French*: For from the *Latin* Words *Bonitas*, *leo*, *eleemosyna*, *eleemosynarius*, *tempus*, *novus*, *extraneus*, *fons*, *mons*, *acris*; are made the *French* Words *Bonté*, *Lion*, *Aumône*, *Aumosnier*, *Tems*, *Neuf*, *Etrange*, *Fontaine*, *Montagne*, *Aigre*; from whence come the *English* Words
Bounty

Bounty, Lion, * *Alms*, *Almoner*, (and *Ambry*, i. e. *Almy*)
Tense, *New*, *Strange*, *Fountain*, *Mountain*, *Eager*, &c.

In our Words *Chamber*, *tender*, *Cinder*, which come from the *Latin Camera*, *tener*, *cinis*, or *ciner*, we have the Interposition of the Letters *b* and *d* from the *French*, who write *Chambre*, *tendre*, *cendre*, &c.

The same Thing may be also said of the Words *Dissemble*, *resemble*, *assemble*, *humble*, *tremble*, &c. which come from the *Latin Simulo*, *similis*, *simul*, *humilis*, *tremulus*.

* Our Verbs that come from the *Latin* are formed or made from the *Present Tense*, or from the *Supines*, by laying aside the Termination or Ending, and making some other small Alteration.

From the *Present Tense* are formed *Extend* from *extendo*, *Spend* and *expend*, from *expendo*; *conduce*, *conduco*; *despise*, *despicio*; *approve*, *approbo*; *conceive*, *concipio*; *relinquish*, *relinquo*; *distinguish*, *distinguo*; *diminish*, *diminuo*; *replenish*, *repleo*; *vanquish*, *vinco*; *establish*, *stabilis*; *correspond*, *correspondeo*; *contain*, *contineo*; *administer*, *administro*; *govern*, *guberno*; *concern*, *concerno*; *certify*, *certifico*; *reply*, *replico*; *multiply*, *multiplico*; *supply*, *supplico*, &c.

From the *Supines Supplicatum*, *demonstratum*, are formed *Supplicate*, *demonstrate*: So *Dispose*, *suppress*, *exempt*, *collect*, *consecrate*, *contract*, *mix*, *reject*, *exact*, *afflict*; come from the *Supines*, by throwing away the Ending, *Dispositum*, *suppressum*, *exemptum*, *collectum*, *consecratum*, *contractum*, *mixtum*, *rejectum*, *exactum*, *afflictum*, &c.

* *Almes*, may be directly from the *Saxon Aelmesse*, and that from the *Greek ἐλεημοσύνη*. *New* also may come from the *Saxon Niwe*, and *Cinder* from the *Saxon Sinder*, *Sindran*; our modern Spelling [*c* for *s*] being taken from the *French*: Which Words are from *Sindrian*, *Separare*, to part, which perhaps from *συνδιασείν*.

Some Verbs are formed both from the *Present Tense* and the *Supine*, but their Signification is for the most Part something different ; one of these we form immediately from the *Latin*, and the other is brought from the *Latin* by the help of the *French* ; as from *Compono* comes *compound* and *compose* ; from *expono*, *expound* and *expose* ; *refer* and *relate*, from *refero* ; *confer* and *collate*, from *confero*, &c.

* There are also many Nouns and Verbs which we have brought into our Tongue, that are purely *French*, and which are not derived from the *Latin* : As,

Garden, *garter*, *buckler*, *to advance*, *to cry*, *to plead*, which come from the *French* *Fardin*, *jarriere*, *bouclier*, *avancer*, *crier*, *plaidier*, &c. Though indeed there are not many Words in the *French* Tongue that are purely *French*, and which are not Originally derived from the *Latin*.

* But there are many Words which are for the most Part common to us with the *Germans*, of which it is doubtful whether the ancient *Teutones* received them from the *Latins*, or the *Latins* from them, or whether they did not both receive them from the same common *Fountain*.

As, *Wine*, *vinum*, Sax. *win*, *ſivog* ; *wind*, *ventus*, Sax. *Wind* ; *went*, *veni*, Sax. *wendan*, *windan* ; for to *wend* in old *English* is to *Go* ; *Way*, *via*, Sax. *Waeg* ; *Wall*, *vallum*, Sax. *Wall* ; *wallow*, *volvo*, Sax. *walwian* ; *Wool*, *vellus*, Sax. *Wulle* ; *will*, *volo*, Sax. *will* ; *Worm*, *vermis*, Sax. *Wurm* ; *Worth*, *virtus*, Sax. *Weorth*, *Wyrth* ; *Wasp*, *vespa*, Sax. *Waeps* ; *Day*, *dies*, Sax. *Daeg* ; *draw*, *traho*, Sax. *dragan* ; *tame*, *domo*, Sax. *tamian*, *ſapudā* : *Yoke*, *jugum*, *ζεύγος* *Earth*, Sax. *Eorth* ; *ſēa* over, *upper*, Sax. *ofer*.

ofer, ὑπέρ am, ἐμὶ break, Sax. brecan, ῥηγνύω fly, volo, Sax. fleogan; blow, flo, &c.

For it is not at all to be doubted, but that the Teutonic Language was of greater Antiquity than the Latin, neither is it to be doubted but that the Latins, who have taken a great Number of Words, not only from the Greek, especially the *Holic*, but also from other neighbouring Tongues (as from the *Oscan* and others, which are now so lost, that there are hardly any Foot-steps remaining) received also a great many from the Teutonic.

Strabo says, that though the Nation of the *Osci* was quite lost, yet their Language survived among the Romans; Τῶν μὲν γὰρ Ὀσκῶν ἐκλελοιπότεων ἡ διάλεκτος μένει παρὰ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις. l. 5. and the Way that it was preserved, as he intimates, was no other than by means of their Plays and Comedies.

It is certain that the English, the German, and other Languages that are derived from the Teutonic, have many Words from the Greek, which were never received in the Latin; as, Path, pfad; ax, achs; with, mit; ford, pfurd; daughter, tochter; mickle, mingle; Moon; fear; grace; graff, to grave, to carve, to scrape; whole, i. e. all, and whole, i. e. sound, and heal; from the Greek, Πάθος, ἀξίνη, μετὰ, πόσθι, θυγάτηρ, μεγάλη, μιγνύω, μήνη, ξηρ, χάρις, γράφω, ὅλος, ἔλος, εἰλω, &c. And since these are immediately derived from the Greek, and some immediately from the Hebrew, without the Intervention of the Latin, why may we not conclude, that several others are likewise immediately derived thence, notwithstanding that they are also to be found in the Latin Tongue.

But it is somewhat surprizing, to consider how far different the Humour of our Ancestors was from this of our Days: For they were mighty careful to contract, whatever Words they received from other Languages, into one Syllable, though they were in the Original of many Syllables: And to this End they not only cut off the formative Terminations, but even the Heads or Beginnings of Words, especially of those which began with a Vowel; they likewise threw Vowels out of the Middle of the Word, without having any regard to them, and the Con-

sonants

sonants that had but a weak Sound, they likewise rejected; retaining only those that were of a stronger Sound; they also altered and changed them, as they thought fit, for others of the same Organ, that the Sound might be softened: They did likewise often invert or change the Order of the Letters, that they might, when the intermediate Vowels were removed, fall the more easily into an agreeable Sound: We also, in Words derived from the *Latin*, often shorten the Length of the Syllable that gives them a grave Air in their own Language, to make them more conformable to the Genius of ours.

For Example: As from *Expendo* comes *spend*, *exemplum*, Sample; *excipio*, scape; *extraneus*, strange; *extractum*, * stretched, straight; *strictum*, streight; *excrucio*, to screw; *excutio*, (in *Italian*, *scutere*, *scotere*) to shoot, shout, shut: *Exscorio*, to scour; *excorio*, to scourge; *excortico*, to scratch; *emendo*, to mend; *Episcopus*, Bishop, in *Danish* Bisp; *Hospitale*, Spittle; *Hispania*, Spain; *Historia*, Story: Which *English* Words you plainly see are made by cutting off the Beginning and Ending of the *Latin* Words; as, in *Theatre*, from *Theātrum*; *Orator*, from *Orātor*; *Longitude*, from *Longitudo*, &c. But in these Words following the Formation seems to be somewhat more harsh; as, from *Alexander*, Sander; *Elisabetha*, Betty; *Apis*, a Bee; *Aper*, a Boar; by changing *p* into *b*, and cutting off *a* in the Beginning; (but this *A* is often restored in the Middle; as, *After*, a *Star*;) so from *Aprugna* comes *Brawn*, by changing the *P* into *B*, and by transposing the *A* as in *Aper*; so *Pignus*, *Pawn*; *Lege*, *Law*; by changing *G* into *W*; *Ἀλώπηξ*, *Fox*, the Head being cut off, and the *P* changed into *F*: So from *Pellis* comes a *Fell*; *Pullus* a *Fowl*; *Pater*, a *Father*; *Pavor*, *Fear*; *Polio*, *File*; *Pleo*, *Impleo*, *fill*, *full*; *Piscis*, a *Fish*; *Mustum*, *Stum*; *Defensio*, *Fense*; *Dispensator* *Spencer*, *Exculpo* *scrape*, (turning *L* into *R*, which were changed in *γράφω*, *γλύφω*) and hence

* Both which Words may come from the *Saxon* *astrecan*, *streccan*, and *streht*.

come *scrap*, *scrable*, *scrawl*, &c. *Exculpo*, *Scoop*; *Exterritus*, *start*; *Attonitus*, *stoned*, *now stunned*; *Stomachus*, *Maw*, (in Saxon *Maga*;) *Offendo*, *find*; *Obstipo*, *stop*; *Audere*, *Dare*; *Cavere*, *Ware*, (in Saxon *Gearwe*;) hence *aware*, *beware*, *wary*, *warn*, *Warning*, (for the *V* Consonant of the *Latins* was formerly sounded like our *W*, and the present Sound of our *V*, was proper to *F*, that is the *Eolic Digamma*, which had a different Sound from Φ or *Ph*; and the present Sound of *F* was that of the *Greeks* Φ or *Ph*; *Ingenium*, *Engine*, *Gin*; *Infundibulum*, *Funnel*; *Gagates*, *Fett*; *Projectum*, *to jet forth*; *Cucullus*, *a Cowl*, &c.

There are likewise some more harsh Cuttings off; as, *Time*, from *Tempus*; *Name*, from *Nomen*; *Dame*, from *Domina*; (as the *French*, *Homme*, *Femme*, *Nom*, from *Homine*, *Fœmina*, *Nomen*;) thus *Page*, from *Pagina*; *Pot*, from *ποτήριον*; *Can*, from *κύπελλον*, *Can* from *Cantharus*; *Tent*, from *Tentorium*; *Pray*, from *Precor*; *Prey*, from *Præda*; *Spy*, from *Specio*; *to Ply*, from *Plico*; *Imply*, *Implico*; *Reply*, *Replico*; *Comply*, *Complico*; and *See* of a *Bishop* from *Sedes*.

The Vowel is also sometimes thrown out of the Middle of the Word, to lessen the Number of Syllables; as, *Aunt*, from *Amita*; *Spright*, from *Spiritus*; *Debt*, from *Debitum*; *Doubt*, from *Dubito*; *Count*, from *Comes*, or *Comite*; *Clerk*, from *Clericus*; *Quit*, *Quite*, from *Quietus*; *acquit*, from *acquieto*; *to spare*, from *separo*; *Stable*, *stabilis*; *Stable* for *Horses* from *Stabulum*; *Palace*, *Place*, from *Palatium*; *raïl*, *rowl*, *wrawl*, *brawl*, *rabble*, *brabble*, from *rabula*; *Quest*, from *Quæsitio*; *Request*, *requisitio*; *Inquest*, *Inquisitio*; *Acquest*, *acquisitio*; *Conquest*, *conquisitio*; *Clown*, *Colonus*; *Crown*, *Corona*; *Monk*, *Monachus*; *Minister*, *Monasterium*; *Pencil*, or *Penfil*, *Penicillus*; *Crane*, *Geranus*, &c.

Sometimes the Consonant, especially when it has a softer Sound, as also whole Syllables are thrown out; as, *round* from *rotundus*, *Roll*, *rotula*; *frail*, *fragilis*; *sure*, *securus*; *Rule*, *Regula*; *Tile*, *Tegula*; *Seal*, *Sigillum*; *Stall*, *Stabulum*; *subtile*, *subtle*, *subtilis*; *Noun*, *Nomen*; *Dean*, *Decanus*; *Host*, *hospes*; *Hostle*, *hospitale*; *Count*, *Computo*; *Accompt*, *Account*, *accomputo*; *sudden*, *subitanus*; *to soar*, *superare*; *peril*, *periculum*; *perilous*, *periculosus*; *Marvel*,

Marvel, marvellous, *Mirabilis*; Perch, *Pertica*; Main, *Magnus*; deign, *Dignor*; disdeign, *dedignor*; feign, *fain*, *fingo*; Stain, *Tingo*; Paint, *Pingo*; Preach, *Prædicare*; Mean, *Medianus*; Master, *Magister*, &c.

These Contractions seem yet more harsh than the former, where several of them meet together in the same Word; as, *Kyrk*, *Kyrke*, *Church*, from *κυρκαός*, i. e. *dux* & Priest, *Presbyter*; Sexton, *Sacristanus*; Freeze and Fresh, from *Frigesco*, by changing *Sc* into *Sh*, as before in *Bishop*, *Fish*, *Shoot*; also in *Skiff*, *Scapha*, *Ship*; refresh, *Refreschment*, &c. *Refrigerium*; Fresh, *Viresco*; blame, *Blasphemo*; Phleam, *Flæam*, from *Phlebotamus*, (an Instrument to let Cattle Blood;) Coin or Quine, (a Term in Architecture, signifying the Angle where the Walls meet) from *Conjungo*; Quaint, *Conjunctum*; Coit, *Quait*, *Conjectum*; Turn, *Torqueo*; Beef, *Bovina*; Veal, *Vitulina*; Vellum, *Vitulina*; Squire, *Scutifer*; Penance, *Pœnitentia*; Sanctuary, *Sanctuarium*; Alms, *Almes*, French *Almofne*, *Almône*, *Almoner*, *Alm'ner*, *Amner*, *Almory*, i. e. a Repository of Alms, *Alm'ry*, *Amry*, and *Ambry*; Chase, from *Quæsitio*; Purchase, *Perquisitio*; Mickle, Muckle, *μύγας*, *μυγάλη* [rather from the Saxon *Mycel*;) Much [Italian *Molto*, Spanish *Mucho*] from *Multum*; Ouse, *Isis*; Eel, *Anguilla*; Isle, *Ile*, *Island*, *Iland*, (as it were *Ile Land*) from *Insula*; so *Ister*, *Ilet*, *Eyght* (a little Island in a River) and more contractedly *Eyt* (from the Saxon *Ea*;) whence *Owfsney*, *Ruley*, *Ely*, &c. that is, the Isle in the Ouse, *Royal Island*, and *Eel Island*; to scan, from *Examinare*; E and O being, as usual, thrown away from the Beginning and End, there remains *Xamin*, which the Saxons who had no X, wrote *Csamin*, or for the better Sound *Scamin*, whence *Scan* is contracted; as, *Don*, from *Dominus*; Noun, from *Nomen*; Ban, from *Abominor*; thus the Italians form *Sciame*, from *Examen*, a Swarm of Bees; and from *Sciame*, by inserting the Letter R denoting the Murmur, we derive our Word *Swarm*: So *Store*, from *Thesaurus*; *Stool*, and *Stall*, from *Stabulum*; *Wet*, from *Τέτος*, *Vdus*; *Sweat*, *Sudo*; *Gay*, *Gaudium*; *Foy*, *Focus*; *Foyous*, *Focus*; *Juice*, *Succus*; *Chair*, *Cathedra*; *Chain*, *Catena*; *Chance*, *Cadentia*; *Thunder*, *Tonitru*; *Crap*, *Craw*, *Crapula*; *Pull*, *Vello*; *Red*, *Ruber*; *Stanch*, *Squench*, or *quench*; *stint*.

flint, from *Extinguo* ; *flack*, *laxus* : *fast*, *festinus* ; *hast*, *hasten*, from *festino* ; where we imitate the Spanish, who change F into H ; as, *Hablar*, from *fabulari* ; *Crow*, *Corvus* ; *Crew*, *Cherva* ; *else*, from *alias* ; *Worth*, *Virtus* ; *forth*, *foras* ; *Spice*, *Species* ; *Span*, *Spishama* ; *read*, *recto* ; *Aid*, *Adjuvo* ; *Age*, *Ever*, *Æon*, *Ævum* ; *Lock*, *Flocus* ; *Stress*, *Stringo*, or *Strictum* ; *Distress*, *Districum* ; *Dress*, *Address*, *dirigo*, *addirigo* ; *Prog*, *Progle*, *Prowl*, from *Trocuro* ; *scrape*, *scrabble*, *scrawl*, from *excerpo* ; *stray*, *straggle*, *extravagor* ; *clot*, or *clutch*, *collectum* ; *Coil*, *Colligo* ; *recoil*, *recolligo* ; *swear*, *severo*, *assevero* ; *Skrill*, *Stridulus* ; *to Pounce*, *Pungere*, or *Punctuare* ; *Power*, *Possum*, [in French *Pouvoir* ;] *Poor*, *Pauper*, in French *Pauvre* ; *Prize*, *Prehensum* ; *Comprise*, *Comprehensum* ; *Poise*, *Pensum* ; *to Prise*, *praise*, *Pretari* ; *Proxy*, *Procurator* ; *to Push*, *Pulso* ; *a Quill*, *Calamus* ; *to Impeach*, *Impetere* ; *a Quilt*, *Calcitra* ; *to wax*, *augeo*, *auxi* ; *to wane*, *vanesco*, for which we now use, *to encrease and decrease* ; *Kitchen*, *Coquina* ; *Corn*, *Granum* ; *a Pin*, *Spina*, *Spinula*, French *Epingle* ; *Mince*, *Minuciare* ; *Cramp*, *Crump*, *Crumple*, *Crinkle*, *Comprimis* ; *Square*, from *Quadratum* ; Italian *Squadra*, &c.

Of the Derivation of some Proper Names.

Though many of these Words just mentioned may seem to be far fetched, yet they ought not to be rejected, since it is plain there are many Names derived from proper Names which seem as much forced, and yet there is none but who agrees in their Etymology or Derivation. As, *Elick*, *Scander*, *Sander*, *Sandy*, *Saury*, from *Alexander* ; *Elizabeth*, *Elisbeth*, *Betty*, *Bess*, from *Elizabetha* ; *Margaret*, *Marget*, *Meg*, *Peg*, from *Margareta* ; *Mary*, *Mall*, *Mell*, *Pall* or *Poll*, *Malkin*, *Mawkin*, *Mawkes*, from *Maria* ; *Matkew*, and *Mat*, from *Matthaus* ; *Pat*, from *Martha* ; *William*, *Will*, *Billy*, *Wilkin*, *Wickin*, *Wicks*, *Weeks*, from *Guilielmus*, *Wilkelmus*, *Uesquies*, (Ital. *Girolamo*, French *Guillaume*) ; *Richard*, *Dick*, *Hick*, *Dickin*, from *Richardus* ; *Robert*, *Pupert*, *Robin*, *Dobe*, *Hobe*, *Bob*, from *Robertus* ; *Roger*, *Hodge*, *Hodgekin*, from *Rogerus* ; *Giles*, *Egidius* ; *Austin* or *Austen*, *Augustinus* ; *Ferome*, *Hieronymus* ; *Ralph*, *Rafe*, *Radulphus* ; *James*, *Jeames*, *Jemmy*.

from *Jacobus*, (Ital. *Giacomo*, Spanish, *Diego*, French, *Jacques*;) *Bennet*, *Benedictus*; *Mawdit*, *Maledictus*; *Magdalen*, *Mawdlin*, from *Magdalena*; *Mawd*, *Mathildis*; *Christopher*, *Kester*, *Kit*, *Christophorus*; *Oliver*, *Nol*, *Oliverus*; *Ellen*, *Nell*, *Helena*; *Gant*, or *Ghent*, *Gandavum*; *Dort*, *Dordrechtum*; *Trent*, *Tridentum*; *Utrecht*, *Ultrajectum*; *Maes-trich*, *Mosa trajectus*; *Lyons*, *Lugdunum*; *Ireland*, *Ferna*, *Hibernia*; *Rocheſter*, *Roffa*; *Dover*, *Dubris*; *Gloceſter*, *Glo-vernia* [i. e. *Claudii Caſtra*, or the Camp of *Claudius*;) *Lis-bon*, *Uliſſoponia*; *Sherry*, *Xeres*; *Tangier*, *Tingis*; *Nimegen*, *Neomagus*; *Rouen*, *Rotomagus*; *Caen*, *Cadomus*; *Breſlaw*, *Uratiſlavia*; *Jew*, *Judeus*; *Jewry*, *Judea*; *Payn*, *Paynim*, *Paganus*; *Heathen*, *Ethnicus*. *Idvinox*, *Salonike*, *Theſſaloni-ca*; *Scanderoon*, *Alexandretta*; *So Gill-flower*, (which the Vulgar by Miſtake turn into *July-Flower*, as if it drew its Name from the Month of *July*) from *Cariophyllus* (Ital. *Gerofol*, French, *Giroflée*); *Sperage*, (which the Vulgar wreſt to *Sparagraſs* or *Sparrowgraſs*) from *Asparagus* or *Spa-ragus*; *Parsley*, *Petroſelinum*; *Purſlain*, *Portulaca*; *Quince*, *Cydonium*; *Quiddony*, *Cidoniatum*; *Peach*, *Perſicum*; *Eruke* from *Eruca*, this ſome turn to *Ear-Wig*, as if it took its Name from the Ear; *Pally*, *Paralyſis*; *Megrim*, *Hemicranium*; So a *Gimmel* or *Gimbal*, i. e. a doubled or twiſted Ring, from *Gemellus*, hence *Gimbal* and *Fum-bal* are applied to other Things twiſted and twined after that Manner. *Hogo* from *Alnus Guſtus*, (French, *haute goût* or *haut goût*); *Kickſhaws*, from *Qualeſcunque Cauſe*, or French *Quelque Chofes*. Now ſince the Origin of theſe and many more Words is generally agreed upon, how-ever they have been wreſted and forced; we ought not to wonder, if our Fore-fathers did the ſame Thing by many others, eſpecially if we reflect upon their Fondneſs for Monosyllables or Words of one Syllable; and that they might render theſe more ſafely ſounding to the Ear, they took a very great Liberty of maiming, cutting off, leaving out, ſoftening and tranſpoſing as they thought fit. And they are rather to be commended than blamed for what they did, ſince they reduced long Words into ſhort ones, by ſomewhat leſſening them; as, *Prieſt* from *Presbyter*, *Seat* from *Sedile*, *Speed* from *Expedio*, &c.

But while we are deriving these Words from the *Latin*, we would not have the Reader fancy that we owe all to the *Latin*, and have not many Words that came down to us pure and unmixt, directly from the *Saxon*, *Danish*, *Belgic* and *Teutonic* Languages, and their Dialects: For many of those Words which of old we received from the *Latins*, and likewise many of those which we have more lately received from them, by the Mediation or Assistance of the *French*, *Italian*, or *Spanish*, with some small Variation according to the Diversity and Idiom of each Dialect, are common to us with the *Saxons*, *Danes*, &c. and thence have come directly down to us, though they may be Originally *Latin*, *Greek*, or *Oriental*. I have often wished with the Learned Author of the *Spectator* N^o. 165. that as in our Constitution there are several Persons, whose Business is to watch over our Laws, our Liberties and Commerce, certain Men might be set apart as Super-intendants over our Language, to hinder any Words of a Foreign Coin from passing among us, and in particular to prohibit any *French* Phrases from becoming current in this Kingdom; when those of our own Stamp are altogether as Valuable.

But whatever may be allowed to our Forefathers in shortening the Words they borrowed from other Languages; I cannot but find fault with the Humour of so miserably courtailing some of our Words: In familiar Writings and Conversations, they often lose all but their first Syllables, as in *Mob*, *rep*, *pos*, *incog*, and the like; and as all ridiculous Words make their first Entry into a Language by familiar Phrases, I dare not answer for these, that they will not in Time be looked upon as a Part of our Tongue. We see some of our Poets have been so indiscreet, as to imitate *Hudibras's* Doggrel Expressions in their serious Compositions, by throwing out the Signs of our Substantives, which are essential to the *English* Language. Nay, this Humour of shortening our Language had once run so far, that some of our celebrated Authors, among whom we may reckon Sir *Roger L'Estrange* in particular, began to prune their Words of all superfluous Letters as they termed them, in order to adjust the Spelling

to the Pronunciation, which would have confounded all our Etymologies, and have quite destroyed our Tongue.

Of Words which having a different Sense, have also a different Original.

It is observable, that the same Word is derived from a different Original, according to its different Sense: For Example; To *bear*, speaking of a Burthen; and *beer* or *bir*, a Frame on which a dead Corps lies, also *burden*, come from *fero*; but to *bear* Children (whence *Birch*, *born*, *Bairn*, a Child) comes from *pario*; and *Bear*, a wild Beast, if it be of Latin Original, comes from *Fera*: So *Pearch*, the Name of a Fish from *Perca*; but *Perch*, a Measure, also the *Perch*, that Birds *perch* on from *Pertica*: To *spell*, i. e. to divide a Word into Syllables, comes from *Syllaba*, by transposing the Consonants, and the *v* returning into *p*, which was in *σύλλαβις*: *Spell*, by which the common People fancy that the Boundaries of Fields are so fixed and guarded, that no body can pass them without the Owners leave, comes from *expello*; but *Spell*, for a Message seems to come from *Epistola*, whence *Gospel*, as it were *Goodspell*, or a good Message, *Εὐαγγέλιον*, or *Godspell*, a Divine Message, or Epistle: So *Freeze*, or *Freeze*, implying the Congealing of Water, comes from *Frigeſco*; but *Freeze*, a Term of *Architecture*, from *Zophorus*; and *Freeze*, a Sort of Cloth perhaps from *Frisia*; or it may be, this may come from *Frigeſco*, as denoting a Cloth better than others against Cold. Thus *Fresh*, when you speak of the bleak Air comes from *Frigeſco*, (whence *refresh*, from *refrigero*, *refreshment*, *refrigerium*;) but it is formed rather from *Vireſco*, when it is meant of the Bloom of Plants, and when metaphorically used for *alacer* and *recens*, *brisk* and *new*. So to *fell*, to cut down (as to *Fall*) comes from *Falle*, or rather from *σφάλλα*. hence perhaps might *Fell*, cruel be derived, and *Felon*, as a *Feller of Men*; but *Fell*, a Hide or Skin comes from *Pellis*, whence a *Fellmonger*: In like manner *Spit*, that comes out of our Mouths, comes from *Sputum*; but a *Spit* to dress Meat on, perhaps from *spica*, *quasi Spicatum*; and *Spit*, that is, as much as a Spade at once digs up, or a *Spadefull*, comes from *Spatha*, as *Spade* it self does. Thus *Spittle*, i. e.

what

what we spit, from *Spuo*; but *Spittle*, an *Hospital*, from *Hospitale*. So *File*, to file, seems to come from *Polio*, to polish; but a *File*, as a *File* of Pearls, a *File* of Papers, a *File* of Soldiers, comes from *Filum*, a *Thread* or *Line*; to set, or make one sit down, is from *Sedeo*, to set or plant from *Sero*; *Vice*, wickedness from *vitium*; but a *Vice*, or *Vise* (in French *Vis*) comes from *Vitis*. A *Porter* of a Gate from *Porta*, which signifies a Gate; but a *Porter* to carry a Burthen from *Porto*, (*Portitor*) to bear, or carry, &c.

* Some few Rules whereby to know when a Word is derived from the *Latin*, and how it may be made *Latin* again.

1. Most *English* Words ending in *nce* or *cy*, are derived from *Latin* Words in *tia*; *Temperantia*, *Clementia*, *Temperance*, *Clemency*.
2. Words in *ion* in *English*, are made *Latin* by casting away *n*; as *Question*, *Questio*; *Religion*, *Religio*.
3. Words ending in *ty*, are made *Latin* by changing *ty* into *tas*; as, *Liberty*, *Libertas*; *Charity*, *Charitas*.
4. Words ending in *ude* are derived from the *Latin*, by changing *o* into *e*; *Fortitude*, *Fortitudo*; *Gratitude*, *Gratitudo*, &c.
5. Adjectives which end in *d*, do for the most part become *Latin* by the Addition of *us*; as, *Rigid*, *Rigidus*, *Putrid*, *Putridus*, &c.
6. Words ending in *t*, *n*, or *r* between two Vowels become *Latin* by changing the last Vowel into *us*; as, *Mute*, *Mutus*; *Obscure*, *Obscurus*; *Obscene*, *Obscœnus*, &c.
7. Most Words ending in *nt*, are made *Latin* by changing *nt* into *ns*; as, *Latent*, *Latens*; *Vigilant*, *Vigilans*, &c.
8. Many Words ending in *al* by the Addition of *is* become *Latin*; as, *Liberal*, *Liberalis*, *Substantial*, *Substantialis*.

C H A P. III.

Of the Prepositions used in Composition.

* **A** Compounded Word is, when two or more Words go to the making up of one.

Words in *English* are compounded, either with a *Preposition*, or with some other Part of Speech.

The *Prepositions* are of two Sorts, *Separable* and *Inseparable*; the *Separable Prepositions* are such as may be used alone; the *Inseparable* are such as are not used in *English* unless in Composition.

But we shall consider the chief Senses of the *Prepositions*, in an Alphabetical Order. We shall begin with the *English Prepositions*, then we shall speak of those that are *Latin*, and lastly of those that are *Greek*.

A, is used for *on*, or *in*; as, *afoot*, *ashore*, for *on Foot*, *on Shore*; *abed*, *adaies*, *anights*, for *in Bed*, *in the Days*, &c. This *A* is also oftentimes redundant or superfluous, at the Beginning of a great many Words; as in *abide* for *bide*, *arise* for *rise*, *awake* for *wake*, *above*, *abroad*, &c. *

Be, is often redundant or of no Signification at the Beginning of a great many Words; as, *bemoan*, &c. But it sometimes is significant, and signifies *about*; as in *Besprinkle*, i. e. to sprinkle about, *bestir*, i. e. to stir about, *besmear*, *to bedawb*, *to bethink*, i. e. to have his Thoughts about him, &c. *To besiege*, &c. It signifies *by* or *nigh*; as *beside*, i. e. by or nigh the *Side*. It signifies *in*; as, *betimes*, i. e. in time or early. It signifies *for* or *before*; as, *to bespeak* i. e. to speak for, &c.

* *Casaubon* (*de Quat. Ling.* p. 236.) observes that we herein followed the *Greek Custom*.

For, signifies *Negation* or *Privation*, i. e. it *denies* or *deprives*; as in *to forbid*, i. e. *bid it not to be done*; *to forsake*, i. e. *not to seek it any more*; *to forgive*, i. e. *not to give or reckon it to one*, &c. *to forswear*, i. e. *to swear the Thing not to be that is so*, &c.

* *Fore*, Sax. *fore*, Gr. *πρός*, *ante*, signifies as much as *before*; as, *to foresee*, *to see before it comes to pass*; *to forebode*, *to tell or say before it happens*.

Mis, is always used in a bad Sense, it denotes *Defect* or *Error*; as, *Mis-Deed*, i. e. *an ill Deed*, or *not done right*; so from *take*, *to mistake*, *to take it wrong or otherwise than it is*; so *to misuse*, *to misemploy*, *to misapply*, &c.

This Word comes from the *Saxon Mis*, and *Gothick Misse*, which signifies a *Fault* or *Defect*; So *to miss* signifies to *fail*. In old *English* also *Misse*, signifies a *Fault* or *Misdeed*:

For thi grete merci forgive my misse,

And bring me to thin endless blisse.

Hence comes the *French* Preposition *Mes*, and by an *Apocope* *Me*, as in *mecontent*, *meconnoître*, *to forget*, or *not to know*, &c.

Over, signifies *Eminency* or *Superiority*; as, *to overcome*, *to over-see*, *to over rule*: It denotes also *Excess*; as, *over-hasty*, i. e. *too hasty*, *over joyful*. This comes from the *Saxon Ofer*, as, *Ofer-blich*, i. e. *Over-blich*, or *merry*.

† *Out*, signifies *Excess*, *Excellency* or *Superiority* in any Thing; as, *to out-do*, *to out-run*, *to out-go*, &c.

* The *Negative* *for* seems partly to flow from *fore*, and partly from the *Greek* *πρός*. *Forbid*, is *forebid*, i. e. *forewarn* against it. *Forgive*, Sax. *forgifan*, signified formerly both to *give* and *forgive*, like *Condonare*: *Remitting* a *Debt* or *Penalty*, is a *Kind of Gift*. *Forsake*, in old *English* is to *deny* or *refuse*; and is from *forseegan*, i. e. *fore-say* or *forewarn* against a Thing. *Forswear*, is *πας ορκειν*, the *for* made from *πας*. So *Forbear*, *παρ-ειναι*.

† *Out* from the Sax. *ute*, *utan*, *foris*, *extra*, *ultra*. But the *Compounds* of this Form and in this Sense are very modern: *ut-adoen*, in *Saxon*, is *to do out*. But from the *French* *outré-passer*, and the like, we have taken this Form.

UN denotes *Negation* and *Contrariety*, or the not being so or so; also *Dissolution*, or the undoing a Thing already done: For Example, *Un* being prefixed or set before *Adjectives*, signifies *Not*; as, *pleasant*, *unpleasant*, i. e. *not pleasant*; So *unworthy*, i. e. *not worthy*; *unsound*, i. e. *not sound*, &c. Here *Un* answers to the *Latin Preposition In*. But when *Un* is put to *Verbs*, it destroys, makes void, or undoes what has been already done; as, *to say*, *to unsay*, which signifies not only, *not to say*, but to call back, and deny, what has been said, to be said; so *to undo*, is to destroy what has been already done; *to unweave*, is to undo what has been already *woven*: Here *Un* answers to the *Latin Prepositions De* and *Re*, signifying a contrary Action; as in *Detego*, *Depopulo*, *Deduceo*, &c. This is an Imitation of the *Saxon On* or *Un*, which is also compounded with *Adjectives* and *Verbs*; as, *unlytel*, not little, i. e. *great*; so *uncnytan*, to untie, &c. Thus the *Scotch* say *unwell*, i. e. *not well*. But this Form of Speaking seems to have been derived from the *Goths*.

UP denotes *Motion upwards*, or *Place* and *Things* that lye upwards. As, *Upland*, i. e. the upper Land, or the Land that lies high in Respect of some other; *Upside*, i. e. the Side that is highest. This comes from the *Saxon up* or *uppe*, which has the same Signification as, *Upland*, i. e. the mountainous Part of a Country; *Upward*, to rise up.

WITH signifies *against*; as, *to withstand*, i. e. *to stand against*; Sometimes it signifies as much as *from* or *back*; as, *to withhold*, i. e. *to hold from* one; *to withdraw*, i. e. *to draw from* or *back*, &c. This is also an Imitation of the *Saxons*; as, *Withstandian*, to withstand; *withteon*, to withdraw, &c.

Of the *Latin Prepositions*, that are used in the Composition of English Words.

AB or ABS, i. e. *from*, when it is compounded, denotes some *Excess* or encreasing the Sense of the Words; as, *to abhor*, *to abuse*, *absurd*, &c. or else it signifies *Parting* or *Separation*; as, *to abstain*, *to abolish*, *to abdicate*, &c.

AD, signifies *to* or *at* ; as, *Advocate, Advent, Adverb, Adjective, Adjacent, &c.* Where *Advocate* is one that is called *to*, &c. *Adjacent*, that which lies *at* or *nigh*.

ANTE, signifies *before* ; as, *antecedent*, the foregoing Word, or the Word that goes before another in a Sentence : *To antedate*, or *date it before*, &c.

CIRCUM, signifies *about* ; as, *Circumlocution*, a round about Way of speaking, as when one Word is expressed by many ; *Circumvallation*, a Ditching about ; *Circumstance*, what stands, as it were, about a Matter, as *Time, Place, Person, &c.*

CON from *Cum*, signifies *with* or *together* ; as, *Convocation*, a calling or meeting together ; *Colloquy*, a Talking with or together ; *Copartner*, a Partner with another ; *Commerce*, Trading together.

CONTRA, signifies *against* ; as, *to contradict* or *gainsay* ; and denotes *Opposition* or *Contrariety* : And hence comes the Preposition *Counter*, as *to Counterfeit*, &c.

DE, a Kind of motion from, as, *decant, detract, deduce, decay, defile*, for filing off, *to decamp*, that is to move the Camp, &c. Sometimes it only extends the Sense of the Word : As, *to demonstrate, to deplore*, &c.

DIS, signifies *Separation, Difference* or *Diversity*, and does every where give a Signification contrary to the Word it is compounded with : As, *Disagree, not to agree ; disbelieve, not to believe ; disadvantage, no advantage ; dislike, not to like.*

DI, has hardly any other Use than the extending or stretching out the Sense of the Word it is compounded with : As, *to direct, to diminish*, &c. *

E or

* *Dis* from the Greek *δυσ*, which in Composition signifies *agè, non, diffculty, &c.* *δυσάρεστος* *displece, displease, dis-oblige.* The *Latins*, borrowed this Way of the *Greeks*, and the *French* of the *Latins* : And we of the *French* ; first in borrowing the very *French* Words ; and afterwards prefixing *dis*, even to some *Saxon* Words, in imitation of the other. All our Words of this Form are later

E or Ex signifies *out* ; as, *Event*, the falling *out* ; *to eject*, to cast *out* ; *to exclude*, *to shut out* : So *to express*, *exhibit*, *expect*, *explain* : *Eloquence*, *Elocution*, &c.

EN, See under IN.

ENTER comes from the *French entre*, and that from the *Latin Inter*, i. e. *between*, &c.

EXTRA signifies *beyond*, *over and above* ; as, *extravagant*, one that goes beyond Bounds ; *extravasated Blood*, Blood that is thrown out or beyond the *Vessels*, &c.

IN generally denotes the Position or Disposition, or an Action, whereby one Thing is as it were put into another, or the Impression whereby a Thing receives such or such a Form, and becomes such or such ; as, *to import*, *to impale*, *to inclose*, *to envelop*, *to inroll*, *to infuse* ; In these Words in marks the Action, by which one Thing comes to be put into another : But in these Words *to inchant*, *to image*, *to encourage*, *to enrich*, In denotes the Impression by which one Thing receives such or such a Form, and becomes such or such, &c.

IN is also used at the Beginning of Words to denote Privation or *not*, and gives a contrary Sense to the Word it is compounded with : As, *indecent*, i. e. *not decent* ; *inhuman*, *not humane* ; *injustice*, *not justice* ; *innocent*, *not nocent*, i. e. *hurtful* ; *invincible*, *not to be conquered*. *

EN is a Preposition that we use in the Spelling of Words that come from the *French* : As, *to enrage*, *encourage* ; though we do not always observe this Distinction ;

later than the Conquest ; most of them several hundred Years later.

Di may be referred either to *δια*, or *δις*, which together may account for all such Compositions, *διαφέρειν*, *differre*, *differ* ; *dividere*, *divide* ; only it may be observed, that in some Words *di* is instead of *de* ; as, *diminuo* is *de-minuo*.

* In is used commonly in modern Words, which we have taken from the *Latin*. In our old Words of *Saxon* Original, we preserve the *Saxon*, *un* ; and sometimes even in the *Latin* Words borrowed from the *Latin*, as having been used to say *un*, not *in*.

for we sometimes write *in* instead of *en*: This *en* has much the same Signification as *in*, but it never denotes Privation or *not*, which *in* often denotes.

But it is to be observed, that as all *Latin* Words compounded with *in* do not denote Privation; so neither do all *English* Words, which are written with *in*: For we have many of them from the *French*, but which are for the most Part originally *Latin*, that are promiscuously written with *en* or *in*, in which the genuine Signification of the *Latin* Preposition *in* is preserved: As, *Ingender*, *Implant*, *Ingrave*, &c. which are also written with *en*; as, *Eggender*, *Engrave*, &c. and their Participles *Engendered*, *Engraven*, &c. And it were to be wished, for the sake of Foreigners, that *en* were preserved in those Words that come from the *French*, rather than that the *Latin*, *in*, should be restored, whence the *en* came: By this means all Ambiguity or Uncertainty concerning the Signification of this Preposition would be removed; For *un* is always privative, or signifies as much as *not*; *en* never is; but *in* is sometimes privative, and sometimes not; for it is not privative in the Words that are promiscuously written with *en* or *in*. But in other Words it is most commonly privative; namely, in those which come from *Latin* Words that are originally so.

INTER, signifies *between*; as, *to intervene*, to come between; *Interval*, the Space between; *interrupt*, to break in between other Business; but in *interdict*, it signifies as much as *for* in *forbid*, &c. Sometimes we use *enter* in Words that come from the *French*, and they are written *entre*, which comes from the *Latin* *inter*.

INTRO, is a *Latin* Adverb from the Preposition *intra*, or a various Ending of the same Preposition, and signifies *within*; *to introduce*, to bring into, &c.

OB, signifies *against*; as, *Obstacle*, i. e. what stands in the Way; *to oppose*; to put against.

PER, i. e. *through*, it denotes a certain Degree of Excellency or Excess; as, *perfect*, i. e. thoroughly done; *perforate*, to pierce through; *to persecute*, to persuade.

POST, *after*; as, *Postscript*, i. e. written after; a *Posthumous* Work, that is published after the Author's Death.

PRE, comes from the Preposition *Pra*, and signifies before; as, *to premeditate*, to meditate of before; *Preface*, prepare, prefer, prevent; *preingage*, or to cage before-hand, &c.

PRO, signifies *for*, or *forth*; but it has also a great many other Senses; as, *to profess*, protect, pronounce, prorogue, promise, &c.

PRETER, signifies *against*; as, *Preternatural*, against Nature.

RE, generally implies a repeated Action; as, *to repeat*, i. e. to say over again; *to relapse*, to fall ill again; *to return*, i. e. to come again; *to re-enter*, to enter again: Sometimes it denotes Opposition or *against*; as, *to repulse*, to beat back: It often denotes only the enlarging the Sense of the simple Verb; as, *to repose*, *repast*, &c.

RETRO, signifies *backward*; as, *Retrograde Motion*, i. e. a going backward.

SE, for *Sine* without, or *Seorsum*, by it self, in such Words as these, *secure*, (i. e. *Sine curâ*, or *Seorsum, à Curâ*) *secrete*, *separate*, *seclude*, and the like. *Se* comes from $\zeta\alpha$, for $\delta\iota\alpha$, from $\delta\iota\omega$. Vid. Baxt. Gloss. Rom. p. 297.

SUB, signifies *under*; as, *to subscribe*, to write under.

SUBTER, *under*; as, *Subterfluous*, flouting under, &c.

SUPER, *upon*, *over*, or *above*; as, *Superscription*, the writing upon a Letter; *Superfluous*, over and above: This Preposition is changed in some Words that come from the *French* into *Sur*, *upon* or *over*; as, *Surface*, &c.

TRANS, signifies *over* or *beyond*; as, *to transport*, to carry over; *to transgress*, to go beyond; and it signifies in a great many Words the moving from one Place to another; as, *to transplant*, *to transpose*, *Transmigration*, &c. In other Words it denotes the Changing of one Thing into another; as, *to transform*, *transfigure*, *Transubstantiation*, &c.

The Greek Prepositions; the chief of these are,

A, which signifies *Privation* or *not*; as, *Anonymous* without a Name; *Anarchy*, without Government.

AMPHI, signifies *on every side*.

ANTI, signifies *Against*; as, *Antagonist*, one that is against you; *Antichrist*, one that is in Opposition to Christ.

HYPER, Over or Above.

HYPO, Under.

META, is the same as *trans*, i. e. *beyond*; or else denotes the Changing of one Thing into another: As, *Metaphor*, *Metamorphosis*, i. e. *transformation*.

PERI, About.

SYN, with or together; as, *Synod*, that is, *Convocation*; *Syntax*, that is *Construction*.

The Prepositions do often change their last Letter into the Consonant that the Word begins with: As, in *Con*, *n* is changed into *l*, as, *Colloquy*; and sometimes they lose a Letter, as in *Coeternal*, where *n* is left out, &c. but we must not now enlarge.

Questions relating to the Third Chapter.

Q. What does *Ab* signify?

A. *From*, and denotes Separation, &c.

Q. What does *Ante* signify?

A. *Before*: And so you may repeat the Question with Respect to any of the other Prepositions.

CHAP. IV.

Of the finding out the Original of the Names of PLACES.

I Shall here but just explain a few of the Beginning and Ending Syllables, that denote the Original of the Names of Places, as they have been treated of by the learned Bishop Gibson, in his Edition of the *Chronicon Saxonicum*.

AB, at the Beginning of the Names of Places, is often to be derived by a Contraction from *Abbot*, and denotes that a Monastery was formerly there, or at least that the Place belonged to some *Abbacy*: As, *Abbingdon*, or *Abbyndon*, i. e. the Mountain or Town belonging to the *Abbacy*.

Ac,

AC, AK, these initial Syllables come from the Saxon *Ac*, an Oak; as, *Aſton*, i. e. a Town encompassed with Oaks.

AL, ATTLE, ADLE, come from the Saxon *Ethel*, signifying Noble, Famous.

AL, ALD, come from *eald*, ancient; as, *Aldborough*, i. e. *Oldborough*.

BARROW, comes from *Bearwe*, *Bearwe*, a Grove.

BRAD, at the Beginning of Words signifies broad, spacious, &c. from the Saxon *Brad*, broad, large; as, *Bradford*, i. e. the broad Ford.

BRIG, from *Bricg*, a Bridge.

BRUN, BRAN, BROWN, BOURN, BURN, whether they begin or end Words, signify a River, from the Saxon *Born*, *Bourn*, *Brunna*, &c. as, *Brunburh*, *Braunston*, i. e. a Town near the River.

BURROW, BURH, BURG, come from *Burg*, *Byrig*, a Town, City, Castle, &c. *Peterborough*, i. e. the Town of St. Peter, it being dedicated to his Honour: This Ending is now often written

BURY, as, *Edmundbury*, the Town of St. Edmund.

BYE, BEE, these ending Syllables come from the Saxon *By*, *Bying*, a Habitation or Dwelling; as, *Grimsbey*, *Kettleby*, that is a Dwelling for the Makers of Kettles, this Town being once noted for such Kind of Workmanship.

CAR, or CHAR, comes from *Caer* a City; as, *Cardigan* &c.

CASTER, CHESTER, come from the Saxon, *Ceaſter*, a City, Town, or Castle; as, *Casterford* or *Castleford*, i. e. a Castle upon the Ford. And it was usual with the Saxons to add the Terminations of *Chester*, *Caester*, *Caster* to the Names of Places, where the Romans had formerly erected their *Castra*, *Castles*, or *Fortis*.

CHIP, CHEAP, CHIPPING, denote that the Town, when it received its Name, was a Market Town; they come from the Saxon *cyppan*, *ceapan*, to buy or sell; So *Chippenham*, *Chippingwiccomb* and *Cheapside*. And hence, as Bishop Gibson observes, may come *Chop*; as to *chop and change*, also *Chapman* from *Cypman*; and perhaps *Shop* may have some Relation hereupon. Hence may also be derived the Names of the Swedish and Danish Towns ending in *Copen*; as, *Ny-Copen*, i. e. New Market.

CLIFF, or CLIVE, whether at the Beginning or Ending of a Word, signifies a *Cliff*, i. e. a steep Place, a *Rock*, from the *Saxon*, *Clif*, which comes from the *Latin* *Clivus*.

COMP, at the Beginning of Words, and COMB at the Ending, denote the *lower Situation of a Place*, or a *Valley*, from the *British*, *Kum*, which is a Word of the same Signification; as, *Melcomb Regis*, &c.

COT, COTE, COAT, whether at the Beginning or Ending of the Names of Places, denote a *Cote*, *Cottage*, or little House, from the *Saxon*, *Cot*, a little House; whence *Cot-fleta*,—he that dwells in a *Cottage*. And *Sheep-Cote*, the Place where Sheep lye. *Cotswold*, a Place in *Glocestershire*, is so called from the Abundance of Sheep-Cotes there.

Crag, is a *British Word*, and denotes a *craggy Rock*.

DEN, was added to the Names of Places that were situated in Valleys or in Woods: For the *Saxon*, *Den*, denotes a *Valley*, or a *woody Place*. So *Tenderden*, *Biddenden*, *Marden*, &c.

The Syllable ER in the Middle of the Names of Places, is a Contraction of the *Saxon*, *Wara*, i. e. *Dwellers*, *Inhabitants*; for the City which we call *Canterbury*, the Saxons called *Cant-wara-burh*. And ER at the End of a Word, denoting the *Inhabitants* of a Place, seems to be of the same Original; for whom we call *Londoners*, the Saxons call *Lunden-wara*; So *Marshers*, i. e. the *Inhabitants* of the *Marshes*, they called *Merse-wara*. Unless any one had rather derive this Ending from the *Gothick* *Wair*, a Man; as, *Lundenwer*, by Contraction *Lundener*, *Londoner*, i. e. a Man of *London*.

Words ending in ERNE, or ERON, are derived from the *Saxon*, *Ern*, *Earn*, a secret Place to put any Thing in. Hence comes *Ink-ern*, i. e. a little Vessel into which we put *Ink*, for which we corruptly write *Ink-Horn*, as the Right Reverend Bishop *Gibson* has very justly remarked.

EYE, Ea, Ee, these ending Syllables differ in three Respects, 1. Either as they come from the *Saxon* *Ig*, an Island, (G being melted into Y) as, *Ramsley*, *Mersey*; whence it is plain, that if Y signifies as much as our Word *Island*, we are guilty of a *Tautology*, when we say *Ramsley Island*, *Mersey Island*, *Fersey Island*. 2. They either come from the *Saxon* *Ea*, a Water, a River, &c. Or, 3. From *Leag*, a Plain Field.

FLET,

FLET, *Fleet*, *Flot*, signify a *Ditch*, where the Tide comes to a *Gulf* or *Bay* : Hence *Fleetditch*, &c.

GATE, in the Names of Places, denotes a *Way*, or *Path* ; as, *Highgate*, i. e. *The High Way* or *Road*, &c.

HAM, whether at the Beginning or Ending of the Word signifies a *House* or *Habitation*, or *Home*, &c. as, *Eastham*, *Westham*, &c. So *Hamweard*, i. e. *Homeward*.

HOLME, *Howme*, whether used alone (for there are several Places which are called *the Holmes*) or joined with another Word, signify an *Hill* or *Isle*, encompassed with little Brooks or Rivers. So *Stepholme*, *Flatholme*.

HOLT, whether at the Beginning of a Word, as, *Holton*, or at the Ending, as, *Cherry-holt*, *Apple-holt*, is a certain Sign that that Place did formerly abound with Woods.

HYRST, *Hurst*, *Herst*, come from the Saxon, *Hyrst*, a *wood* or *Forest*.

How, *Hough*, seem to denote the lower Situation of a Place. So *How-gate*, i. e. a *Low Way* much beaten, &c. Perhaps hence comes *Holland*, as it were, *Howland*, i. e. *Low-land*.

INGE, signifies a *Meadow*, and *Meadows* are now called in some Parts of *England* the *Inges*.

LADE, *Lode*, signify the Mouth of a River, or the Passage, from the Saxon, *lade*, a purging or emptying ; as in *Crek-lade*, *Fram-lade*, *Lechlade*, &c. because thereabouts the Water empties it self into the Sea, or into some greater Rivers.

LEY, *Lee*, *Leg*, *Lay*, whether at the Beginning or Ending of a Word, come from the Saxon, *Leag*, a plain Field, or Pasture Ground : The *g* being softened.

LOWE, *Loe*, come from the Saxon, *Hlewe*, or *Hleaw*, a *Hill*, or *Hillock* ; as, *Houndslow*, i. e. a *Hill* of Dogs, or a hill fit for Hunting.

MARSH, *Mars*, *Mas*, come from the Saxon, *Merse*, a *Marsh*, or *Marshy Place*.

MAER, *Mere*, in the Names of Places, either at the Beginning, Middle, or End signify a *Marshy Place*, from the Saxon, *Mere*, a *Marsh*, &c.

NESSE, or *Ness*, at the End of the Name, denotes the Place to be, or to be near a *Promontory*, called in Saxon, *Naeſe*, *Naeſſe*, *Nese*, from its Resemblance to a *Nose*.

OVER,

OVER, whether at the Beginning or End of the Names of Places, denotes commonly the Situation of the Place to be near the Bank of some River; from the Saxon, *Ofer*, or *Ofre*, a *Brink*, or *Bank*; as, *Brownsover*, &c. But if there be any neighbouring Town, that has *nether* prefixed to it, then you may derive that *Over* from the Saxon, *Ufer*, i. e. *upper*, in Opposition to *nether* or *lower*.

PREST and *Pres*, as in *Preston*, *Presbury*, seem to come from the Saxon, *Preost*, a *Priest*, O being thrown out, as it often happens, for *Derby* was formerly written *Deoraby*.

RIG, *Ridge*, seem to denote the hanging Side, or Steepness of a Hill, as in *Lindridge*, *Cotheridge*, *Waldridge*, &c.

SEL, denotes the Greatness of the Thing to which it is prefixed; as, *Seltun*, i. e. a *great Town*; So *Selwood*, i. e. a *great Wood*. For *Sel* in the Saxon signifies *Good*, or *Large*, &c. as, *Selby*, &c.

STEAD, and *Sted*, signify *Place*: Except in the Names of Towns that are nigh Rivers, when perhaps it may be better derived from the Saxon, *Stathe*, a *Shore*, a *Bank*, a *Haven*, &c.

STOWE, or *Stoe*, from the Saxon, *Stowe*, a *Place*; as, *Godstowe*, i. e. a *Place dedicated to God*.

THORP, *Throp*, *Threp*, *Trep*, *Trop*, come from *Thorpe*, a *Village*.

TUN, *Ton*, signify a *Town*, *Village*, &c. This perhaps comes from the Saxon, *Dun*, because the Towns were formerly built on Hills.

WEALD, *Wald*, *Walt*, signify a *Wood*, *Forest*, &c.

WERTH, *Weorth*, *Wyrb*, come from *Weorthig*, a *Village*, *Street*, &c.

WIC, or *Wich*, as in *Dunwich*, *Harwich*, comes from the Saxon, *Wic*, which signifies a *Bank*, a *Shore*, a *Fort*, &c.

WIN, at the Beginning of the Names of Places, comes from the Saxon, *Wim*, a *Battle* or *Fight*, and denotes that some Battle was fought there.

WIS, denotes the Western Situation of the Place; as, *Wisegothi*, i. e. the *Western Goths*.

WYRT, *Wert*, *Wyrd*, come from *Wyr*, an *Herb*, &c. Perhaps as Bishop *Gibson* conjectures, hence comes the Word *Root*, which ought to have been written *Wrote*.

PART III.

CHAP. I.

Of the Syntax.

WE are now come to speak of that Part of *Grammar* which treats of the *right* placing or joining of Words together in a Sentence, called *Syntax*.

But the *Syntax* or Construction of the Noun, being chiefly performed by the help of the *Prepositions*, and I having in every Chapter given an Account of what more particularly relates to each Part of Speech, there is not much left for me to say on this Head.

* The *Substantive* that *is*, *does*, or *suffers*, comes before the *Verb*: As, *I am*, *Peter loves*, *the Men read*: *The Book is read*.

Except. 1. In an *Interrogative Sentence* (when a Question is asked) where the *Substantive* is put after the *Verb*: As, *Is John at Home*?

If there be an *Helping Verb*, then the *Substantive* comes after that; as, *Does Peter love*? *Will you read*?

If there be two *Helping Verbs*, then the *Substantive* is set after the first of them: As, *Could he have done it*? *Might Charles have brought it*?

Except.

Except. 2. In an *Imperative* or *Commanding* Sentence, where the *Substantive* is likewise set after the Verb : As, *Burn Thou ; Burn Ye.*

3. Also when the Verb is used by way of yielding or Concession : As, *Had I [if I had] known, he should not have done it. Were I a bad Man, &c.*

4. The *Substantive* or *Nominative Word* is put after the Verb, when, *there*, is set before the Verb : As, *There came a Man to me : There was the Boy in the Dirt : There is Heat in the Sun, i. e. Heat is in the Sun.*

5. When the *Substantive* or the *Nominative* is more particularly denoted or pointed at, we often set, *it*, before the Verb, and put the *Substantive* after it : As, *It was John that spoke last ; It was the Glass that fell.*

Sometimes the *Substantive* is also set after the Verb, when none of these foregoing Exceptions happen : As, *Then followed the General, &c. Says I, for I say ; said he, for he said ; Peter writes and so do I, i. e. and I do so, &c.*

* When the *Genitive Case* and another *Substantive* come together, the *Genitive Case* is always put first : As, *John's Horse*, not, *Horse John's.*

Concerning the Construction of the Adjective. See Chap. IX.

* The Article, *a*, is joined only to *Substantives* of the *Singular Number* ; *the*, to *Substantives* either *Singular* or *Plural*. See Chap. VII.

* The Pronoun has two States : The *Foregoing State* which goes before the Verb, unless in those Cases where the *Substantive* does not. See the Exceptions just mentioned.

* The following State follows the Verb or Preposition : As, *The Master loves me ; not I.* But, *whom*, is generally placed before the Verb ; as, *he is the Man whom I saw.*

* But

* But after the Verb *Am* or *Be*, the *Foregoing State* of the Pronoun is used : As, It is *I*, not *Me*. See Chap. X.

The Word that answers to the Question, *Who is ? Who does ? Who suffers ? Or, What is ? What does ? What suffers ?* is the *Substantive* to which the *Verb* relates, and is called the *Nominative Word*. As, *I love*, who loves ? *I*, that is the *Nominative Word*. *We read*, who reads ? *We*, where *We* is the *Nominative*. The *Book is read*, What is read ? *The Book*, here *Book* is the *Nominative Word*.

N. B. When we speak of *Persons*, the Question is to be made by *Who*, when we speak of *Things*, it is to be made by *What*.

This *Nominative Word* is what the *Latins* call the *Nominative Case*.

* But not only *Nouns* and the *Pronouns Substantive*, but whatever denotes that which *is*, or *does*, or *is done*, is accounted a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb*.

So the *Verb* put *infinitively*, that is, with the *Preposition To* before it, often tells *what is*, *does*, or *suffers*, and therefore is a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb* ; as, *to play will please*, what will please ? *To play* ; therefore *to play* is as a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb please*. *To laugh will fatten*. And so may any Sentence, that shews *what is*, *does*, or *suffers*, be as a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb* : As, *That the Sun shines is clear*, or *it is clear that the Sun shines* ; *What is clear ? That the Sun shines* ; Therefore, *that the Sun shines*, is as a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb*, *is clear*. So in the following Example, *An honest and sincere Mind, and a hearty Desire and Endeavour to do the Will of God*, is the greatest Security and best Preservative against dangerous Errours and Mistakes in Matters of Religion. *What is the greatest Security ? &c. An honest and sincere Mind, and a hearty Desire, and Endeavour to do the Will of God* ; Here, *an honest and sincere Mind, and a hearty Desire, and Endeavour to do the Will of God*, is as a *Nominative Word* to the *Verb IS*.

If a *Verb* put *infinitively* (that is with the *Preposition*, *to*, before it) or if a Sentence be as a *Nominative Word* to a *Verb*, we usually set the *Verb* infinitive, or the Sentence, after the other *Verb*, and put *IT* before it : As, *IT is an evil Thing to Lye*, i. e. *to Lye is an evil Thing*. *IT is the Custom*

Custom of Boys to neglect their Books, i. e. to neglect their Books is the Custom of Boys.

So likewise when the *Nominative Word*, or the *Substantive* to which the *Verb* relates, is left out or understood, we put *IT* before the *Verb*: As, *It Rains, it Snows, it Thunders, &c.* Where *Rain, or Cloud, or some other Word* is understood: For there can be no *Verb* that signifies *Being, Doing, or Suffering*, but what refers or has relation to some *Person or Thing*, that is, *does, or suffers*.

This Manner of Expression is rendered in *Latin* by a *Verb*, which they call an *Impersonal*, but *why, or how right*ly it is so called, we have shown in our *Explanation of the COMMON GRAMMAR*.

* The *Verb* must be of the same *Number* and *Person* as the *Nominative Word* or *Substantive* is of, to which it relates; as, *Peter loveth, Men love.*

Where you see *loveth* is of the *Singular Number*, and of the *third Person*, because *Peter* is so: *Love* is of the *Plural* because *Men* is so. See Chap. XI.

Now *Peter love, or Men loveth*, would be false Grammar. So, *I art, we am, ye is, thou are*, is false Grammar; for we ought to say, *I am, We are, thou art, ye are, &c.*

* But when two *Substantives Singular* are joined together, they speak of more than one, and so, being of the *Plural Number*, must have a *Verb Plural*; as, *Robert and Mary love, not loveth or loves.*

1. For *I* and *another* is as much as *We* the first Person *Plural*.

2. *Thou* and *another* is as much as *ye* the second Person *Plural*.

3. *He [She or It]* and *another*, is as much as *They* the third Person *Plural*.

Sometimes the Verb may be put in the Singular Number, when there are two Substantives; as, *His Justice and Goodness was great*: But then here, *was great* is left out in the first Sentence; as, *His Justice was great, and his Goodness was great*.

Likewise though the Noun be of the Singular Number, yet if it comprehend many Particulars, the Verb may be put in the Singular or Plural Number; as, *The Committee has examined the Prisoner*, or, *The Committee have examined the Prisoner*: Where *has* is of the Singular Number, and *have* of the Plural.

Where, in the first Example, the Verb, *has*, is of the Singular Number because the Substantive, *Committee*, is so; and, in the second Example, the Verb, *have*, is of the Plural Number, because the Substantive includes more than one Person. So, *Part is gone, Part are gone*.

Sometimes the Endings *Eth*, *Eth*, or *S* of the Verb are left out after the Conjunctions, *if*, *that*, *though*, *although*, *whether*, &c. As, *If the Sense require it, for, If the Sense requireth or requires it. He will dare though he die for it*; that is, *though he dieth or dies for it*. These Endings of the Person of the Verb are also sometimes left out after some other Conjunctions and Adverbs, especially when the Verb is used in a Commanding or Depending Sense.

* *Not*, the Adverb of denying, is put after the Verb; as, *It burned not, it did not burn, it burned me not*.

We shall just take Notice that a Sentence or Saying is either *single* or *compounded*.

* A single Sentence is that which has but one Verb Finite in it; as, *Life is short*.

By a Verb Finite, you are to understand any Verb but what is put infinitively, i. e. that has, *To*, put before it; as, *to love, to read*.

* A compounded Sentence is when two single Sentences are joined together by some Cople or Tye: So then in a compounded Sentence, there is,

1. One simple or single Sentence; as, *Life is short*.

X

2. Another

2. Another single Sentence after it ; as, *Art is long.*

3. Between these two a *Cople* is put to join them together ; as, *Life is short, and Art is long. Life is short, but Art is long.*

The *Coples* are *Conjunctions*, whose only Use is to join two Sentences together ; as, *And, &c.*

2. A Relative Word, or a Word which fetcheth back a foregoing *Substantive* ; as, *who, which, that.*

3. A Comparative Word whereby two Things are compared together ; *so, as, such, so many, as many, more than.*

Examples where a Conjunction is the Cople ; *Peter died, and so did John ; Will you play, or will you not ?* Examples where a Relative is the Cople ; as, *This is the Man which [Man] I saw ; He is the Man that stole the Horse ; This is the Boy who came to our House.*

Examples where a Comparative Word is the Cople ; as, *As you do so will I ; I eat more than he ; I heard such a Story as you never heard in your Life.*

Questions relating to the First Chapter.

Q. What is Syntax ?

A. It is a right Joining of Words in a Sentence.

Q. Where is the Nominative Word, or the Substantive that the Verb relates to, to be placed ?

A. Before the Verb : As, *I love, thou readest.*

Q. Is it always placed before the Verb ?

A. No ; For in an Interrogative Sentence, or where a Question is asked, the Nominative Word is placed after the Verb ; as, *Are you the Boy ? Is Peter alive ? Does he read well ?*

2. In an Imperative or Commanding Sentence, the Substantive is also set after the Verb : As, *Burn thou, Read ye, &c.*

3. In a Conditional or yielding Sense : As, *Say I, Had I read the Book, &c.*

4. When the Word, THERE, is set before the Verb, the Nominative Word follows it : As, *There was a Noise, i. e. a Noise was.*

5. Also when, IT, is put before the Verb : As, *It was John, &c.*

Q. How

Q. How is the Genitive Case to be placed ?

A. Always before the other Substantive ; as, *The Master's Horse.*

Q. How is the Article, A, to be placed ?

A. Only before Substantives of the Singular Number ; as, *a Man, a Boy, not a Men, a Boys.*

Q. How is the Article, the, to be placed ?

A. Before Substantives either of the Singular or Plural Number ; as, *The Man, the Men, the Boy, the Boys.*

Q. How is the Pronoun to be placed ?

A. The Fore-going State of the Pronoun is to be placed before the Verb : But the Following State after the Verb or Preposition ; as, *I love, We love, love me, love us, to me, to us.*

Q. Is the Foregoing State of the Pronoun never placed after the Verb ?

A. Yes. When a Question is asked, in a commanding Sentence, &c. as, *Am I, Is He, Fight Thou, &c.* But more particularly it goes before and follows the Verb *Am* or *Be* ; as, *I am, I am He, &c.*

Q. What do you mean by the Nominative Word ?

A. The Word that answers to the Question, *Who* or *What* is, does, or suffers ; as, *Who is good ? Thomas, &c.*

Q. Is not the Verb put infinitively, and sometimes a Sentence, counted as a Nominative Word to the Verb ?

A. Yes. As, *to Lye is shameful.*

Q. How must the Verb agree with the Nominative Word ?

A. It must be of the same Number and Person, that the Nominative Word is of. For Example, *Thou lovest, Thou* is the Second Person Singular, therefore *lovest* must be so too, for *thou loveth, or love* would be false Grammar.

Q. If two Substantives Singular come together, how must the Verb be put ?

A. It must be put in the Plural Number ; as, *Peter and John fight.*

Q. How shall I know what Persons they are of ?

A. I and another is as much as *We.*

Thou and another is as much as *Ye.*

He and another is as much as *They.*

And *We* is the first Person, *Ye* the second, and *They* the third Person Plural.

Q Is not the Verb sometimes of the Plural Number, though the Nominative Word be of the Singular ?

A. Yes : If the Substantive be a Collective Noun, or a Noun of Multitude, that is, comprehends or includes many Particulars in it. As, *Part are*, or *Part is* ; the Multitude are very noisy, or is very noisy.

Q. What is a single or simple Sentence ?

A. A single Sentence is, that which has but one Verb Finite.

Q. What is a Verb Finite ?

A. Any Verb that has not the Preposition, *to*, before it expressed or understood.

Q. What is a Compound Sentence ?

A. A Compound Sentence is, when two single Sentences are joined together by some Cople or Ty : As, *Life is short* and *Art is long*.

Q. What Words are those that couple or join Sentences together ?

A. A Conjunction ; a Relative Word, or a Word that has Relation to some other Word in the Sentence ; as, *Who*, *which*, *that* : Lastly, a Comparative Word, or a Word whereby two Things are compared together ; as, *So*, *as*, &c.

Q. Whence comes the Word Syntax ?

A. From the Greek Preposition *Syn* together, and *Taxis*, ordering or ranking. In Latin it is called *Constructio*, from *Con* together, and *Structio* Building, or a setting Things in good Order.

Q. Whence comes Nominative ?

A. From *Nominare* to Name.

Q. Whence comes Finite ?

A. From *Finitus* bounded, because a Verb Finite is bounded by Number and Person.

C H A P. II.

Of Transposition, or the transplacing of Words and Sentences.

THE Syntax, or the Construction of Words into Sentences may be distinguished into two Kinds : 1. That which is Natural and Regular ; or, 2. That which is Customary

many and *Figurative*. That *Syntax* may be called *Regular*, which is according to the natural Sense and Order of the Words. *Customary* or *Figurative Syntax*, is that which is used in the Forms of Speech peculiar to several Languages ; wherein Words are put together according to a *Metaphorical* or borrowed Sense of them : As, *To break a Jest, to be brought to Bed, to take one's Heels and fly away, &c.* The natural Order also of the Words is changed or transplaced : For in *English*, as well as in *Latin*, the Words of a Sentence are not always placed in their natural Order, as they lie in Sense, but are put into such an Order, as will sound sweetest to the Ear, yet so that the Sense be not thereby darkened or rendered obscure : For *Perspicuity* or *Clearness* is the chief Excellence of Speech. If so, we may take Notice of a very great Fault some Persons are too guilty of, who are for writing of Phrases, before they are acquainted with common Expressions ; it must be *Phrase Latin* or *Phrase English*, i. e. *Bombast Latin* or *English*. But this is no new Fault, since *Fabius* says, there was a certain Instructor of Youth, who used to order his Scholars to obscure or darken what they would say, making Use of the Greek Word *Συρίσκον*, i. e. *speak obscurely* ; hence that extraordinary Commendation, *So much the better, (or admirably performed) for I understood not a Word of it.*

* *Transposition* is the putting the Words in a Sentence, or Sentences, out of their natural Order, that is, putting Words or Sentences before, which should come after, and Words or Sentences after, which should come before.

The *Substantive* is often put out of its Place, especially when, *There*, or, *It*, is set before the *Verb* ; as, *There was a Man*, i. e. *A Man was* ; *It is the Custom*, i. e. *The Custom is*.

So always in an *Interrogative Sentence*.

So *Adjectives*, especially if a *Verb* come between the *Substantive* and the *Adjective* ; as, *Happy is the Man*, for *the Man is happy*.

The *Preposition* is frequently transplaced ; as, *Whom do you dine with ? For, With whom do you dine ? What Place do you come from ? For, From what Place do you come ?*

But I shall not stand to speak of the Transposition of each Part of Speech, but shall give you a Period or two ; whence our Youth may consider how it is not in the *Latin* alone, that Words and Sentences are thus transposed, but that we are somewhat guilty of this Custom, though not in so great a Degree : And this, by the Direction of their Master, may serve to put the Lads upon reducing the *English*, that is given them for their Exercise, into its natural Order before they attempt to turn it into *Latin*. But we shall first observe one Thing, which is, that the best and clearest Writers have the fewest Transpositions in their Discourses : And that they are more allowable in Poetry than in Prose, because it is there generally sweeter and more agreeable to the Ear. For Example : *Any Thing, though never so little, which a Man speaks of himself, in my Opinion, is still too much.* The natural Order is thus : *Any Thing is too much, in my Opinion, which a Man speaks of himself, though never so little.* So ; *This is the Word of Faith which we preach, that if thou shalt confess with thy Mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thy Heart, that God hath raised him from the Dead, thou shalt be saved.* The natural Order is thus ; *This is the Word of Faith which we preach, that thou shalt be saved, if thou shalt confess, &c.* So ; *It cannot be avoided, so long as there is Weakness on Earth, or Malice in Hell, but that Scandals will arise, and Differences will grow in the Church of God ;* The natural Order is thus : *It cannot be avoided, but that Scandals will arise, and Differences will grow in the Church of God, so long as, &c.*

So ; ——— Yet not the more,
Cease I to wander where the Muses haunt
Clear Spring, or shady Grove, or sunny Hill,
Smit with the Love of sacred Song ; but chief
Thee Sion, and the flow'ry Brooks beneath
That wash thy hallowed Feet, and warbling flow,
Nightly I visit, &c.

The natural Order is thus : Yet smit with the Love
of Sacred Song ; I cease not to wander, &c. But chief,
I nightly Visit thee Sion, &c.

So ; O Woman, best are all Things as the Will
Of God ordain'd them, his creating Hand
Nothing imperfect or deficient left
Of all that he created, much less Man.

The natural Order is thus ; O Woman, all Things are best
as the Will of God ordained them, his creating Hand left no-
thing imperfect or deficient of all that he created, &c.

Of Man's first Disobedience, and the Fruit
Of that forbidden Tree, whose mortal Taste
Brought Death into the World, and all our Woe,
With Loss of Eden, till one greater Man
Restore us and regain the blissful Seat,
Sing Heavenly Muse, &c.

The Order is thus ; Heavenly Muse Sing of Man's first
Disobedience, &c. But we shall conclude this Chapter of
Transposition with this Caution, that he who would write
clearly and plainly, must observe natural Order as much as
in him lies ; yet not so strictly, as wholly to neglect the
Transposition of Words, since sometimes he will be obli-
ged to transplace them in order to render them more mu-
sical and harmonious. But the Imitation of those Writers
who write the most sweetly and agreeably will be the best
Guide and Director in this Case.

Questions relating to the Chapter of Transposition.

Q. What is Transposition ?

A. A Placing of Words out of their natural Order in a
Sentence.

Q. Why do they place the Words out of their natural
Order ?

A. To render the Words more harmonious and agree-
able to the Ear.

Q. May

Q. May we then misplace all Words in every Sentence as we please?

A. No, not always; but we must in this, as in all other Things, follow the Use of the best Speakers.

Q. Whence comes the Word Transposition?

A. From Transpositio, or a putting beyond, or out of the natural Place.

C H A P. III.

Of the Ellipsis, or the Leaving out of Words in a Sentence.

* **W**Hatever Words may be as well understood when left out, as they would be if they were mentioned, may be left out in a Sentence.

* Words may be left out upon four Accounts.

I. When a Word has been mentioned just before, and may be supposed to be kept in Mind, then it is often left out. As, *Cæsar came, and saw, and conquered*; where you need not say, *Cæsar came, Cæsar saw, and Cæsar conquered*: So, *ye have eaten more than we, i. e. than we have eaten. This Book is the Master's, i. e. Book. Whose Horse is this? Ours, i. e. Our Horse.*

Therefore in a *Relative Sentence* (a Sentence having, *who, which, or, that*, in it) the *Antecedent* [foregoing] Word is seldom repeated: As, *I bought the Horse which you sold, i. e. which Horse, &c. The Wine is bad which you sent me, i. e. which Wine, &c. What Words I spoke, those I deny, i. e. those Words, &c.*

II. When any Word is to be mentioned straight or presently, if it can be well understood, it may be left out in the former Part. As, *I ever did, and ever will love you, i. e. I ever did love, &c. Drink ye white or Red Wine, i. e.*

Drink

Drink ye *White Wine*, or, &c. *The best of the Churches is Paul's*, i. e. *the best Church of the Churches is Paul's Church*; Or to put it into the natural Order; *Paul's Church is the best Church of the Churches*.

III. When the Thought is expressed by some other means; as, *Who is he?* Pointing to a Man, you need not say, *What Man is that Man?*

IV. Those Words which, upon the Mentioning of others, must needs be supposed to be meant, may be left out; as, *When you come to Paul's then turn to the left*, every Body knows you mean *Paul's Church*, and the *Left Hand*, therefore those Words need not be expressed. The Preposition, *to*, is often left out; as, *Reach me the Book*, for, *Reach the Book to me*. *Hand* is often left out; as, *turn to the Right*, *turn to the Left*, i. e. *to the Right Hand*, *to the Left Hand*, &c.

Thing, and, *Act*, are frequently left out when they may be understood: As, *It is hard to travel through the Snow*, i. e. *It is a hard Thing*, &c. *It is easy to do so*, i. e. *It is an easy Thing or Act*, &c.

The Cople, *that*, is oft left out in a Compound Sentence, &c. as, *I desire (that) you would write for me*. *I think I saw him*, i. e. *that I saw*, &c.

The Relatives *that*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, may be omitted or left out; as, *This is the Man I killed*, i. e. *that*, or *whom*. *Give me the Horse you stole*, i. e. *which you stole*, &c. *Is this the Man ye spoke of?* i. e. *of whom ye spoke*.

Sometimes a whole Sentence is left out: For Example; *It is our Duty to pay a Respect and Deference, as to all those that are virtuous and courageous, who design for the Good and Advantage of the Government, and (who) serve or (who) have served it in any of its Interests; so (it is our Duty to pay a Respect and Deference) to those also who bear any Office or Command in the State*.

I will give you an Instance or two of Transposition, and of the Ellipsis or Suppression together. *As the delicate Ear of the Artist can quickly discover the least Fault in his Musick; So, would we take as much Care in detecting and censuring our Vices, we might from the least and most trivial Matters, make several Observations that would be much to our Advantage. From the moving of our Eyes, for Example; from the merry or sorrowful*

sorrowful Air of our Countenances, &c. we might easily judge what is handsome and becoming us, and what is repugnant to the Rules of our Duty. That is ; As the delicate Ear of the Artist can quickly discover the least Fault in his Musick ; So [if] we would take as much Care in detecting and censuring our Vices, we might make several Observations from the least and most trivial Matters, that [i. e. Observations] would be much to our Advantage. But I shall give you something for an Example of this Proposition, *We might easily judge what is handsome and becoming, and we might easily judge what is repugnant to the Rules of our Duty from the moving of our Eyes, from the merry or sorrowful Air of our Countenance, &c.*

How useful and necessary this Doctrine of the *Ellipsis* or *Suppression* of the Words is, both for the right understanding the Genius of the *Latin*, and that of any other Language, will easily appear to any considering Persons ; since there are Abundance of Expressions which we could have no Sense of, if they were not resolved after this Manner : And though I would have nothing allowed for a *Rule*, without sufficient Authority ; yet we may now and then, to gratify an ingenious Mind, indulge our selves in a probable Conjecture. For Example, how would a Lad or Foreigner know how to render, *I'll on*, into any Language, unless he were first informed that, *I'll on*, is as much as, *I will go on* ? So it is an easy Matter to tell a Lad that in, *quid agis* ? *Quid* is *Latin*, for *what* ; and in, *quid ita* ? that *quid* is *Latin*, for *why* ; and the Lad must believe it, because the Master says so, though he finds himself puzzled to reconcile it to his own Mind, how the same Word should signify *what* and *why* : But it would be a greater Satisfaction to an ingenious Mind, if you acquainted him *how* or *why* it was to be so construed : E. G. *quid agis*, i. e. *tu, agis quid negotium* ? You do *what Business* ; in *quid ita fecisti*, i. e. *Ob quid negotium tu ita fecisti* ? For *what Thing* did you do that ? For *what Thing*, i. e. *Why*. So in like Manner, I should have a clearer Notion of *Quamobrem*, if you said it was a Composition for *Quam ob rem*, i. e. *Ob quam rem*, for *what Thing* or *Reason*, than if you said it was an *Adverb*, and signified *wherefore*, and gave me no farther Reason for it.

But

But he that has a Mind to be better acquainted with the Doctrine of the *Ellipsis*; as it relates to the *Latin* Tongue, may consult *Sanctius's Minerva*, and the judicious Notes of the Learned *Perizonius* thereupon : Or else an *Explanation* of the *Syntax* in our *Common Grammar*, wrote by my worthy Friend the Reverend Mr. *Parsel*, late *Master* of *Merchant-Taylor's-School* : Printed for Mr. *Bonwick* in *St. Paul's-Church-Yard* : In which Book the Reader will find a very rational and ingenious Account of the Rules of the *Latin Syntax* : And indeed the acquainting Lads with the Reasons of Things, and to let nothing pass, before they have attained a tolerable true and just Notion of it, would be of more Service to them towards the Exercise of their Reason, than the Knowledge of Thousands of *Latin* and *Greek* Words. And as the Knowledge of Things is far more preferable than that of Words; so the Words will be but poorly understood, unless we are also instructed in the Knowledge of the Things they are used to denote or express.

Questions relating to the Fourth Chapter.

Q. What is *Ellipsis* ?

A. The Leaving out of Words in a Sentence.

Q. May we leave out what Words we please in a Sentence ?

A. No.

Q. Upon what Account may Words be left out ?

A. I. When a Word has been mentioned just before, and may be supposed to be kept in Mind, then it is oft left out.

Therefore in a *Relative Sentence* [or in a Sentence that relates to some other] the *Antecedent* (or foregoing Word) is seldom repeated; as, *I bought the Books, which [Books] be there.*

II. When any Word is to be immediately mentioned, if it can be well understood, it may be left out in the former Part; as, *Drink ye Red [Wine] or White Wine.*

III. When the Thought is expressed by some other Means: As pointing to a Man, you need not say, *Who is that Man ?* But *who is that ?*

IV. Those

IV. Those Words which, upon the mentioning of others, must needs be supposed to be meant, may be left out; as, *When you come to Paul's then turn to the Left*; every body knows you mean *Paul's Church*, and the *Left Hand*, therefore these Words need not be expressed.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Ellipsis?*

A. From the Greek Word *Elleipsis*, an Omission, or Leaving out.

Q. *Whence comes Suppression?*

A. From *Suppressio*, as it were, the stopping or keeping the Word out of a Sentence.

Q. *Whence comes Antecedent?*

A. From *Antecedens*, foregoing, or going before.

CHAP. V.

Of the Points or Pauses in a Sentence.

THE Method of distinguishing the Sense in a Sentence, properly belongs to that Part of Grammar that is called *Syntax*. For in a Sentence, not only its *Structure* or *Order* is to be regarded, but also *Distinction*. For the Use of Stops is not only to mark the Distance of Time in pronouncing, but also to prevent any Confusion or Obscurity in the Sense, by distinguishing Words from Words, and Sentences from Sentences. But how this Distinction is to be made, is not yet very thoroughly agreed upon among the *Learned*: For you will scarce meet with any two, even *Learned Men*, who shall distinguish a Paragraph by the very same Points. And indeed it is not much Matter whether we do so or no, provided we take Care so to distinguish Words and Sentences, as not to darken the Sense, or transgress any known, easy, and plain Rule: Namely, when a Question is asked, not to make this Mark (?), and at the Ending or Conclusion of an Assertive Sentence, not to put this Mark or Point (.)

Distinction of a Sentence, is, either of a Sentence written, or pronounced.

The

The Points or Stops that direct what Kind of Pause is to be observed, are four: *A Comma* (,) *A Semicolon* (;) *A Colon* (:) *A Period* or full Stop (.).

Note, Of these we shall immediately treat, after having taken Notice, that *Writing* being the Picture or Image of *Speech*, ought to be adapted unto all the material Circumstances of it; and consequently, must have some Marks to denote these various Manners of Pronunciation: Which may be sufficiently done by these six Kinds of Marks or Points.

* 1. *Parenthesis*. 2. *Parathesis*. 3. *Erotesis*. 4. *Ecphrasis*. 5. *Emphasis*. 6. *Irony*.

Some do also add *Hyphen*, but of that we shall treat in the *Orthography*.

1. *Parenthesis* or *Interposition* serves for the Distinction of such an additional Part of a Sentence, as is not necessary to perfect the Sense of it; and is usually expressed by the inclosing of such Words betwixt two curve or crooked Lines, (). As, *Your Kindness to me, (which I account a very great Happiness) makes me undergoe, &c.*

Note, Some do use this Point wrong, when they include, *as I think, as he says, &c.* in this Point; where it is sufficient to set only a *Comma*, or at most a *Semicolon* on each Side. We ought also to take Care that our *Parenthesis*'s be not too frequent or too long, nor crammed one into another, for that obscures and darkens the Sense.

2. *Parathesis* or *Exposition* is used for Distinction of such Words as are added by Way of Explication, or of Explaining something that preceeds or goes before, and is usually expressed by inclosing such Words between two Angular Lines, []. As, *Angular Lines, [Brackets] mark the Point called a Parathesis.*

3. *Erotesis* or *Interrogation* is a Kind of *Period* for the Distinction of such Sentences as are proposed by Way of
Y Question,

Question, and is usually thus marked (?). As, *Does he yet doubt of it?*

4. *Ecphonesis*, *Admiration* or *Wonder* and *Exclamation* is a Note of Direction for raising the Tone or Voice, upon Occasion of such Words, denoting some vehement Passion; and is marked thus, (!). As, *O the Folly of Men!*

Note, Some do often omit this Note; and they had better do so, than in such Sentences to make a Note of *Interrogation* as some do.

5. *Emphasis* is used for the Distinction of such Word or Words, wherein the Force of the Sense doth more peculiarly consist, and is usually expressed by putting such Kind of Words into another Character, as the *Italick*, &c. Some do also express it by beginning the Word with a *Capital* or great Letter: Wherefore for the better keeping up the Use of *Distinction Emphatical*, one ought not promiscuously to write every *Noun* with a great Letter as is the Fashion of some now a-days. But we shall in the *Orthography* lay down some Rules when to write Words with *Capital Letters*.

6. *Irony* is for the Distinction of the Meaning and Intention of any Words, when they are to be understood by Way of *Sarcasm* or Scoff, or in a contrary Sense to that which they naturally signify.

N. B. And though there be not (for ought I know) any Note designed for this, in any of the instituted Languages, yet that is from their Deficiency or Imperfection: For if the chief Force of *Ironies* does consist in the Pronunciation, it will plainly follow, that there ought to be some Mark for Direction, when Things are to be so pronounced. As, *He's a special Fellow*: Suppose this Mark <. I have lately learnt from a *German* Writer, that the *Germans* make Use of the Note of *Exclamation* turned up to Mark the *Irony*; as, *O good Sir*; Which Mark may do very well.

The *Comma* is the shortest Pause or Resting in Speech, and is used chiefly in distinguishing *Nouns*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*. As, *A good Man, and Learned. To exhort, to pray. Sooner, or later, every Body must die.* It distinguishes also the

the Parts of a shorter Sentence : *As, Life is short, and Art is long.*

A Semicolon is the Mark of a Pause that is greater than a Comma, and less than a Colon. The proper Place for this Point is in the Subdivision of the Members or Parts of a Sentence : *Ex. As the Shadow moves, and we do not perceive it ; or as the Tree grows, and we do not apprehend it : So Man, &c.* It is also of great Use in the distinguishing of Nouns of a contrary Signification : *As, Things domestic, Things foreign ; publick Things, Things private ; Things sacred and profane.*

A Colon is used when the Sense is perfect, but the Sentence not ended : *As, If you Sing, you Sing ill : If you read, you Sing.*

The Colon is generally used before a Comparative Conjunction in a Similitude : *Ex. As the Ape commonly kills her young Ones by too much fondling : So some Parents spoil their Children by too much Indulgence.*

Also if the Period runs out pretty long, the Colon is often made Use of.

A Period or full Stop is the greatest Pause, and is set after the Sentence when it is compleat and fully ended : *As, God is the chiefest Good.*

Questions relating to the Fifth Chapter.

Q. Whence comes the Word Pause ?

A. From the Greek Παῦσις, Pausis, a Stop or Resting.

Q. Whence comes Comma ?

A. From the Greek κόμμα, Komma, a Cutting off ; because the former Word or Part of a Sentence is cut off from the following one.

Q. Whence comes Colon ?

A. From κῶλον, Kolon, a Member ; becaused as the Body is divided into Members : So is a Period distinguished by these greater Members, a Colon, Semicolon.

Q. Whence comes Semicolon ?

Y 2.

A. From

A. From the *Latin* Word *Semi*, *half*, and the *Greek* κῶλον, *Kolon*, a *Member*; the *Semicolon* denoting half the Pause or resting in Speech of a *Colon*.

Q. Whence comes *Period*?

A. From *περίοδος*, *Periodos*, i. e. a going about, or as it were a *Circle* or *Revolution* of Words comprehended by some Ending.

Q. Whence comes *Parenthesis*?

A. From *παρένθεσις*, *Parenthesis*, *Interposition*, or a putting between.

Q. Whence comes *Parathesis*?

A. From *παράθεσις*, *Parathesis*, *Apposition* or a putting to; the putting one Word to another to explain it.

Q. Whence comes *Erotesis*?

A. From *ἐρώτησις*, an *Interrogation*, or asking a Question.

Q. Whence comes *Ecphonestis*?

A. From *ἐκφώνσις*, *Ecphonestis*, *Exclamation*.

Q. Whence comes *Emphasis*?

A. From *ἐμφαίνω*, *Emphaino*, to shew, or represent; it showing some particular Force to be in the Word or Sentence.

Q. Whence comes *Irony*?

A. From *εἰρωνεία*, *Ironia*, a pretending, &c. It meaning a Thing contrary to what it naturally signifies.



PART

PART IV.

CHAP. I.

Of Orthography, or Orthoepey, treating of the Letters and their Pronunciation.

THIS Part * of *Grammar* ought to have been treated of first; but we have for some Reasons referred it to this Place. And here I cannot dissimble my Unwillingness to say any Thing at all on this Head; *First*, Because of the irregular and wrong Pronunciation of the *Letters* and *Words*, which if one should go about to amend, would be a Business of great Labour and Trouble, as well as Fruitless and Unsuccessful. Many have been the Endeavours of this Kind, but it has been found impossible to Stem the Tide of prevailing Custom. *Secondly*, Because the Multiplying of Rules for the Pronunciation, rather confounds than helps the Learner: Since that Rule can be but of little Service, that admits of such a vast Number of Exceptions, as most of the Rules commonly laid down, generally do. I have therefore often

* The Treating of this Part last, being found fault with, I shall, if there be another Edition, place it in its proper Place,

thought, that some other Way ought to be found out to render this Matter more easy and expeditious : And the only and best Way that I can think of is, the Making of a Book, that shall contain all the Variety of Pronunciation, beginning with the *Syllables* and *Words* that are pronounced according to the most simple and natural Sound of the Letters, and thence proceeding gradually to *Syllables* and *Words*, that are pronounced otherwise than they are written, and contrary to the natural and genuine Sounds of the Letters. And this Book ought to contain not only single *Syllables* and *Words*, but *Sentences* and *Stories* : For by the Coherence or Agreement of the Parts of the Sentence, the Sense of the Words is better perceived ; and the Sense of the Words being known, the Pronunciation of them will be more easily and plainly understood. For Pronunciation being such a Thing, *quae nec scribitur, nec pingitur, nec eam hauriri fas est, nisi viva voce*, that is, which can be neither written nor painted, but must be learnt by Use, and the hearing of others pronounce : Such a Book as we have just mentioned, being first read by the Master to the Scholar, and then repeated by him, would, I believe sooner instruct the Learner in the Pronunciation, than if he were left to guess at the Sounds of the Words by himself. But to proceed ;

* A Consonant is a Letter that cannot be Sounded without adding a Vowel before or after it ; as, *m*, which is Sounded as *em* ; *p*, which is Sounded as *pe*.

There are one and twenty Consonants ; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z*. *y* is reckoned both as a Vowel and a Consonant ; for, when *y* follows a Consonant, it is a Vowel ; as, *dy* : But when it comes before a Vowel, it is a Consonant ; as, *Yes*.

But since of Letters there are made Syllables, and of Syllables Words, it will be convenient to explain what a Syllable is.

* A Syllable is the Sound of one or more Letters expressed in one Breath.

If there be one Letter in a Syllable, that Letter must be a Vowel ; as, *A-men* : For a Consonant cannot make a Syllable without a Vowel ; as, *Ab bot*, not *b bot*.

If a Word has but one Syllable, it is called a Monosyllable ; if it has two, a Disyllable ; if more, a Polysyllable.

N. B. The Word *Syllable* ought to have been wrote *Syllabe* ; as, our famous Poet Mr. Ben. Johnson writes it.

N. B. I might here observe from Bishop Wilkins and Mr. Ray, that our Alphabet is deficient in some Respects, and superfluous in others. But we may have Occasion to remark some of these Things under each Letter as we go along : We shall now therefore proceed to the Pronunciation, and begin with the Vowels.

Questions relating to the First Chapter.

Q. What is Orthography ?

A. See Page 45.

Q. What is Orthoepey ?

A. See Page 45.

Q. What is a Letter ?

A. A Letter is a Character or Mark of a simple Sound.

Q. How many Letters are there in English ?

A. Twenty Six.

Q. Which are they ?

A. A, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

Q. How are the Letters divided ?

A. Into Vowels and Consonants.

Q. What is a Vowel ?

A. A Vowel is a Letter that marks a full and perfect Sound of it self, without the Help or Joining of any other Letter to it.

Q. How many Vowels are there ?

A. Five ; a, e, i, o, u.

Q. Is not y a Vowel ?

A. Yes, it is used instead of i ; but since it has the same Sound, you need not make it a distinct Vowel.

Q. Is

Q. Is not y sometimes also a Consonant ?

A. Yes ; when it comes before a Vowel it is a Consonant ; as in *yet, yes* ; but when it follows a Consonant it becomes a Vowel ; as in *dy, my, &c.*

Q. What is a Consonant ?

A. A Consonant is a Letter that cannot be founded, without adding a Vowel before or after it.

Q. Give me an Example.

A. *M* is founded as if it were written *em* : *P* is founded as if it were written *pe*.

Q. How many Consonants are there ?

A. One and Twenty.

Q. Name them.

A. *B, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z.*

Q. What is a Syllable ?

A. A Syllable is the Sound of one or more Letters expressed in one Breath.

Q. If a Syllable consists but of one Letter, what Letter is that ?

A. A Vowel ; as, *a Man.*

Q. How many Letters may there be in a Syllable ?

A. Never more than Seven or Eight ; as, *Strength.*

Q. Can there be any Syllable without a Vowel in it ?

A. No.

Q. Whence comes the Word Letter ?

A. From the *Latin, Litera*, which comes from, *Linendo*, a Marking on Paper.

Q. Whence comes Vowel ?

A. From *Vocalis, Vocal* or *Sounding* ; *Litera* is understood.

Q. Whence comes Consonant ?

A. From, *Consonans, Sounding together with*, for it is founded with a Vowel.

Q. Whence comes Syllable ?

A. From *Syllaba, Comprehensio* ; for it comprehends or contains a Letter or Letters under one Sound.

C H A P. II.

Of the VOWELS.

THE Vowels, *A, E, I, O, U*, and *Y* for *I*, when they end a Syllable are commonly *long*, but other-ways are generally *short* : *Y* and *W* differ not at all with us (as Vowels) in Sound from *i* and *u* ; and in many Instances, are also indifferently used for the said Letters, e. g. *Mile, Chyle, Foul, Sow, Cow, &c.*

Of the Vowel *A*.

* *A* is generally pronounced with a more small and slender Sound than among many other Nations.

Much after the same Manner as the *French* pronounce their *E* when followed by *N*, in the Word *Entendment*, but something sharper and clearer, as the *Italians* do their *A*. But we must not pronounce it like the fat or gross *A* of the *Germans*, which we generally express, if long, by *au* or *aw*, or if short, by the short *o*.

But there are some Words in which *A* is pronounced broad or full : Namely, when *A* comes before the double *LL* in the End of a Word : As, *All, Talt, Hall, Call, Wall, Ball, Fall, &c.* In those also that come from these, or are compounded or made up of them ; as, *allthough, tallness, calling, Wallflower, &c.* Where I would advise that the Word be marked with a *Circumflex* ($\wedge$) to denote the broad Sound. But *walk, talk, &c.* are more rightly pronounced by the *English* (*A*) ; which Words are very carelessly sounded by some *wauk, tauk, &c.* in which Sound we imitate the *French*, who for *al* sometimes, before a Consonant, substitute or place *au* ; and so do the *Scotch* when a Consonant does not follow.

N. B. Our

N. B. Our *Alphabet* wants a Letter to express the Sound we give *A* in the Words *Hall, Wall, &c.*

Of the Vowel E.

* *E* is pronounced with an acute and clear Sound.

Just like the *E* Masculine of the *French*; but it is scarce ever pronounced with an obscure Sound, like the *French E* Feminine; unless when the short *E* goes before *R*, as in *Virtue, Stranger, &c.*

* But *E* simple, or alone at the End of the Word, is altogether mute or silent, neither has it now a-days any Sound of its own: As in *make, have, &c.*

Except in the Article *The*, which is written with a single *E* (to distinguish it from the Pronoun *Thee*;) and in some Proper Names; as, *Phæbe, Penelope, &c.* for single *E* is seldom else pronounced at the End of Words. For *He, She, he, we, me*, would be better written as they are sounded with *EE*; *Hee, Shee, bee, wee, mee*. But as often as the Sound of *E* is at the End of Words, it is expressed by another silent *E* being added to it; as, *Pharisee, Saducee*: Or else *A* is added to it, as in *Sea, Pea, Flea, yea, Plea, Tea*; or by adding *Y*, as in *Marshalsey, Langley, Hendley, &c.* Though the *E* is now often left out; as, *Marshalsy, &c.*

The Original of the silent E.

The Original of the silent *E*, I take to be this: Namely, that formerly it only had an obscure Sound like the *French E* Feminine: So that the Words *take, one, wine, &c.* which are now *but Words of one Syllable, were formerly
Words

* It may be true, that many of those Words were once Disyllables, as many also were not; and yet from
the

Words of two ; as, *ta-ke*, *o-ne*, *wi-ne*, &c. so that the first Vowel that ended the Syllable, was therefore counted long. But the obscure Sound of the final or ending *E* by Degrees so far vanished, that at last it was quite neglected, (as it often happens to the *E* Feminine of the *French* ;) but the Quantity of the foregoing Vowel was preserved, and the other Letters sounded, as if the *E* were likewise to be pronounced. And this does most plainly appear, if we observe, that this *E* mute was of old always added to Words, in which it is now constantly left out ; as, *darke*, *marke*, *lease*, *waite*, and a great many others, to which Words, there can be no probable Conjecture made, * why it should be added, if these Words had not been formerly pronounced *dar-ke*, *mar-ke*, *lea-fe*, *wai-te*, &c. For it could not be prefixed to those Words to make the Syllable long, which is now its chief Use, because the foregoing Syllable is either not long, or else is made so by the *Diphthong* or double Vowel that goes before. Moreover in the Words *have*, *crave*, *live*, *love*, *dove*, &c. you see before the silent *E* the *V* Consonant, which is never known to end a Syllable. † So likewise in the Words *Force*, *Space*, *Strange*, *Race*, and in many

the Time they have been spelled as they are now, they have been Monosyllables. For Instance, *tacan*, or *tacige*, is two Syllables : It becomes *taki*, and is two still : But when it is reduced to *take*, it becomes one. And the very same Reasons why we keep the *e*, at this Day in such Monosyllables, might be Reasons to our Ancestors for doing the same.

* See the Account of the *e*, at the End of such Words below. The three first, *darke*, *lease*, *marke*, were never Disyllables, except perhaps in the oblique Cases : But from the Time the Distinction of Cases has been set aside, they have followed the same Pronunciation, which they had in the Nominative, and so have been Monosyllables.

† This Reasoning is thought by some not to be right : for those and the like Words were become Monosyllables before ever the *e* was added, and the, *e*, was added upon the changing, *f*, into, *v*. In old *English* we find the Spelling

many others, *C* and *G* are sounded soft before the Final *E*: Now no Reason can be given, why these Letters *C*, *G*, should part with their own proper Sound, unless it be because of the Sound of the *E* following; especially since we have received a great Number of Words from the *French*, among whom, not only the Spelling, but also the same Manner of Pronunciation of the *E* Feminine does yet remain: To this we may add that among our old Poets this *E* makes the Word either of one or two Syllables, as the Verse requires: * Just as now adays in *Heaven* and *Ever* which are either *Monosyllables* or *Disyllables*, that is, of one or two Syllables, as shall be most agreeable for the running of the Verse.

Of the Use of the silent E.

But though this silent *E* is not now adays sounded, yet it is not altogether useless: For besides its discovering to us, that those Words, to which it is added, were formerly pronounced with more Syllables than they are at present; it likewise serves to three other Uses. *First*, It serves to preserve the Quantity of the foregoing Vowel, which if long, remains so, although the silent *E* be not now pronounced: So the Words *Bat*, *Mat*, *Hat*, *Fil*, *Mil*, *Wil*, &c. are short; but the Words *Bate*, *Mate*, *Hate*, *File*, *Mile*, *Wile*, are long; all which Words are *Monosyllables*, or Words of one Syllable. *Secondly*, It serves to soften the Sound of *C*, *G*, and *Th*; as, *since*, *lace*, *mace*, &c. *huge*, *rage*, &c. *breathe*, *wreath*, which if *E* were absent, would be pronounced more hard or strong. *sink*, *lak*, *mak*, *hug*, *rag*, *breath*, *wrath*. *Thirdly*, The silent *E* serves to distinguish the *V* Consonant from the

ling thus, *haf*, for *have*; *leef*, for *leave*; *vif* and *fif*, for *five*; *gaf*, for *gave*; *twelf*, for *twelve*; *belef*, for *believe*; *dref*, for *drove*; *lof*, for *love*.

* Sometimes by a poetical Licence; or probably in the first Manuscripts, those Words that made two Syllables ended in *i*, as, *granti*, for *grante*; or *crouni*, for *crowne*. So they are written in the Manuscript of Robert of Gloucestre.

U Vowel,

U Vowel, as in *have, crave, save*, which would else be pronounced *hau, crau, sau*, &c. But the V Consonant having now a distinct Character from the U Vowel, this silent E may hereafter happen to be omitted or left out in this Sort of Words.

When the silent E is redundant or useless.

But when ever there is none of the foregoing Considerations, this E may be left out : Except after L joined to another Consonant ; as in *Candle, handle, Tittle, Fiddle, wrangle*, &c. in which Words the E might be omitted : But in *idle, trifle, Tittle, Fable, Table, able, noble*, it seems to be more needful, to denote the lengthening of the foregoing Vowel.

When silent E remains in the Middle of a Word.

Words that end in silent E, whether they be afterwards compounded, or receive an additional Termination, yet they retain their silent E if there be Occasion, which has the same Force, the same Office, as it had before. But this silent E is scarce ever found in the Middle of a Word, unless it were originally a Final E. So *Miles, Wiles, Graves, Lives, defiles, beleeves, rarely, finely, chargeable, unchangeable*, retain or keep the silent E, because it was a final E in *Mile, Wile, grave, Life, defile*, &c. But it is not founded in those, because it is not founded in these : Though I do not at all question, but that it was formerly pronounced in both the *Primitive* and *Compounded* Words : As it is yet by some, in the Word *Commandement*.

But this E which was silent in the Singular, is founded in the Plural, *House, Houses, Vice, Vices* ; also in the third Person of Verbs ; as, *he rages, he chooses* ; and the Reason of this is, because the Sound of S cannot immediately follow the Consonants, S, Z, X, Sh, or C, G, Ch, pronounced soft. (See pag. 58.)

But where this Necessity of Pronunciation does not require it, the e is not written, or at least is not founded ; as in *Hands, Lands, Miles, tends, he makes*, &c. But in *tendeth, maketh*, the e is there founded, not because it was a mute e, but because it belongs to the Personal Termination, *eth*.

* It is usual in all the Active Participles to leave out the *e* before *ing*; as, for *love-ing*, *give-ing*, *have-ing*, we write, *loving*, *giving*, *having*, &c.

N. B. Mr Ray disapproves of the adding the Letter, *e*, to the Ends of Words to signify the Production of the last Syllable. as to *mate*, to distinguish it from *mat*, *smoke* from *smock*, *shine* from *shin*. This, he says, is a great Offence to Strangers and Children, who in such Words are apt to make two Syllables of one, and to spell and pronounce *ma-te*, *smo-ke*, *shi-ne*, &c. The Production or lengthening the Syllable ought to be signified by a Mark over the Vowel to be made long, thus, *ā*, *ē*, &c.

The same Thing may also be said against the adding of *a*, to signify the Production of a Vowel, as in *great*, *bead*, *firoak*, *broad*, *beat*; which, as we said just now, ought to be signified by a Line over the Vowel to be produced, thus; *brōd*, *grēt*, *bēd*, *bēt*, &c.

So likewise in Adjectives that end in *ble* and *tle*, he would have the, *e*, left out; as in *probable*, *brittle*, &c.

Notes relating to the silent E.

We have a Multitude of Words so ending, and we once had many more, before our late Retrenchings: But how and why they were retrenched, take the following Account.

1. In Nouns Substantive.

Our Nouns Substantive in Saxon, purely Saxon, ended not in *E*, in the Nominative, or very rarely; but the Dative and Ablative in four Declensions did so end; *Smith*, *Smithē*; *Worth*, *Worthē*. One may suppose these Cases being most in Use, made this Termination prevail above others; and so when the Cases came all into one, this one was the Survivor. Thus came so many of our Nouns to end in *E*, and to be so written, though probably the Pronunciation still followed the Nominative, or was various for some time. Thus the Spaniards and Italians in the Singular have confined their Nouns to the Ablative.

2. In Adjectives.

The *Adjectives Feminine* in three of the Cases ended in E: as, *god, bonus; gode, bona; min, meus; mine, mea*. This Termination therefore coming up the ofteneft, and being moft frequent, was the Termination that furvived the Reft, when all came to be reduced to one. We need not then wonder that *darke* was fo felled, rather than *dark*, though ftill the *Mafculine* Pronunciation very probably prevailed; And they no fooner brought all *Cafes* and *Genders* to one, but they reduced the Word to a *Monofyllable*.

3. In Verbs.

The *Infinitive* at frft ended in *an*, as the *Indicative* in the *Preft Tense* in *ige*. *Cuman, to come; ic Cumige, I come*. By Degrees *Cuman* degenerated into *Cuma*, by cutting off *n*, and *Cuma* into *Cume*. See *Hickes*, pag. 95. 156. And this new Termination of the *Infinitive* by Degrees ran through all *Moods* and *Tenses*. Hence it is that fo many of our *Verbs* end in *E*, though we have retrenched great Numbers of them, cutting off the ufelefs *E*, in *breake, marke, fende*, and many others. I am perfuaded, that thefe and the like *Verbs* have been *Monofyllables* ever fince they were fo reduced. But before they came to end in *E*, many terminated in *i*, and fo long kept the *Syllables* diftinct. Such *Verbs* are very common in the oldeft Manufcript of *Robert of Gloucefter*. As to *crouni*, for what we now write *to crown*; *granti* for *grant*; *honouri* to *honour*; *feruy* to *ferve*; *hanti* to *hunt*. Where we fee the Remains of the antient Termination *ige*; *maki* is for *makige*; *lovi* for *lovige*, and the like. The *Preter-Imperfect* in the frft and third *Perfon Singular*, regularly ended in *E*, as *wolde* and *lufode*. And from hence would come *woulde* and *lovede*; but we have retrenched fuch *Verbs* in that *Tense*.

4. Participles.

In *Saxon* they regularly ended in *E*, *lufigende*, &c. The frft Change of fuch *Participles* was into the Termination

ande, laſtande, departande, confoundande, ſtill the *E* remained. Then came *laſtynge, departyng, confoundyng*; but at length we have changed the *y* into *i*, and cut off the *E*, and very juſtly. The principal Uſe of the final *E* was formerly to diſtinguiſh the *Participle* from the *Verbal Noun*; as, *Lufigende, Loving; Luſgend, a Lover*. We now diſtinguiſh better by a quite different Termination, in *Loving* and *Lover*. Mr. Ray's expedient for ſupplying *E* mute, is not a good one: It might give as great Offence to Strangers and Children, as the ſilent *E* can be ſuppoſed to do: Beſides, that it would be very odd to fill every Page or Line with ſupplemental Strokes and Marks, as if our Alphabet were deficient, and we had not Letters enough to ſignify all our Sounds. If there were really any ſuch great Neceſſity of leaving out the final *E*, the beſt Way, in my Judgment, of ſupplying it, would be inserting of a Vowel in the Middle, inſtead of *E* at the End. Let us run through the Vowels in Order.

1. Our long, *a*, might be written with *aa*; as *maad, Naam* (for *made, Name*) which was our antient Spelling: or more agreeably to preſent Uſe, *ai*, might ſerve in all ſuch Words, as it now does in many: As in *laid, ſaid, afraid, paid, ſtaid, upbraid*, &c. the Sound is the very ſame; and we might thus ſpare the final *E* in all Words ſo ſounding.

2. Our long *E*, we have already ſupplied in moſt Words by *ea*, in the Middle; inſtead of the final *E*, we write *Cream, dear, fear, meat* (not *Creme, dere, fere, mete*) and ſo moſt other Words: Cuſtom has inſenſibly almoſt ſtruck off the final *E* in this Caſe, and ſupplied it another way.

3. The greateſt Difficulty would be in the long, *i*, in ſuch Words, as *write, bite, Kite, Wire, Shire, mine, thine*, &c. nay, we make it long in ſeveral Words without the help of the final *E*, as in *wind, Mind, Pint*; while it is ſhort in *ſint, dint*, &c. where Cuſtom is the only Rule. I know not whether our *y* or *ii* might not tolerably ſupply the Want of the final *E*, but it would appear odd at firſt to have *wryt* or *wriit*, &c.

4. The long, *o*, is eaſily answered by, *oo*, or, *oa*; as in *door, boat, coat, doat, goat, throat*, &c. In half our Words of that kind, we have already cut off the final *E*, and ſo ſuppleth it.

5. The long, *o*, is easily answered by *ui*; as in *Bruit, Fruit, Suit*, &c. Such a Method as this would remedy the Thing complained of about the final *E*; but whether other Inconveniencies might ensue, and those as great as the other, is the Question. The Inconveniencies are,

1. That we should in several Words go farther off from their primitive State, and lose Sight of the *Etymology*.

2. We should want several Distinctions in Spelling, which now serve to distinguish Words; as *Hair* and *Hare*; *Maid* and *made*; *here* and *hear*; *sute* and *suit*; *more* and *moor*; with many others.

3. Any Man that begins a new Spelling will run the hazard of his Discretion; and if he is not followed in it, it comes to nothing: For general Custom is at last the only Thing that can give Countenance or Credit to it.

Of the Vowel I.

When the Vowel *I* is short, it is sounded most commonly like the *I* of the *French* and other Nations with a small Sound; as in *bit, will, still, win, pin, sin, fill*, &c.

But when *I* is long, it is most commonly pronounced like the *ei* or *ei* of the *Greeks*; as in *bise, wile, stile, wine, pure*, almost after the same Manner as in, *ai*, in the *French* Words *Main* a hand, *Pain* bread, &c. For it hath a Sound made up of the *E* Feminine, and *I* or *i*. It would not be amiss if the long, *i*, were always marked with a *Circumflex* at the Top, to distinguish it from the short *i*, thus; *î*.

There is also a Third Sound of, *i*, like, *ee*, as in *Oblidge* [obleege] &c. And if at any time the Sound of the short, *i*, is to be lengthened, it is not always writ with *i*, but sometimes with *ee*, as in *Steel, seen, feel*; sometimes with *ie*, as in *field, shield*.

N. B. No *English* Word ends in *I*, but has always an *E* after it, as *easie*, not *easi*, though now, *ie*, is frequently changed into *Y*.

It is the received Opinion, that in the Words *thine, mine*, &c. *E* is there a Note of Production, signifying, that the Letter *I* is to be pronounced long; but Mr. Ray says it signifies that the Character *I*, is there to be pronounced as a *Diphthong*. That it is a *Diphthong* is clear, because in

Pronouncing of it, you cannot continue the entire Sound, but must needs terminate in *Iota*, or, *ee*.

Of the Vowel O.

The Vowel O has three Sorts of Sounds ; as in *rose*, *go*, &c. sometimes it is expressed by, *au*, or, *aw*, and, *a* long ; as in *Folly*, *fond*, where the Sound of the first Vowel is the same with, *a*, in *fall*, and, *aw*, in *fawn*, only the last is long, and the former short ; lastly, it is sometimes sounded like the obscure U, as when we carelessly pronounce *Condition*, *London*, *Compasse* ; as if they were written *Crandition*, *Lundon*, *Cumpasse*, &c. And so likewise some pronounce *come*, *done*, *some*, *Son*, *Love*, *Dove* ; as if they were written *cume*, *dune*, *sume*, &c.

N.B. The short Vowel, *o*, is sounded like the German, *a*, or open or fat, *o*, only it is pronounced short ; as in *mollify*, *fond*, &c.

The long *o* is pronounced like the Greek ω [Omega] and the French *au* ; as in the Words *Sole*, *chose*, *more*, &c. This Vowel for Distinction might be marked with a Circumflex Δ .

Few English Words end in O, except *do*, *go*, *lo*, *no*, *so*, *to*, *too*, *two*, *unto* ; the Sound of O at the End of Words, being generally expressed by *om* ; except in *Toe*, *Foe*, *doe*, *Ro*.

Of the Vowel U.

* The Vowel U is either *short* or *long*. The short Vowel U is pronounced with an obscure Sound : As in *but*, *cut*, *burst*, *curst*, &c.

The French express this Sound in the last Syllable of the Word *Serviteur*, the only Difference between this Vowel and the French E Feminine is, that this U is pronounced with the Mouth not so much opened. This Difference the English may easily perceive in their pronouncing the Latin Words *iter iter*, *ter ter*, *turtur*, *cerdo surdo*, *ternus turnus*, &c.

The long Vowel *U* is pronounced like the *French U*, with a small or slender Sound; as in *Lute, Mute, Muse, Cure*, &c. with a Sound as it were made up of *I* and *W*. This Sound might be distinguished from the former, by a Point or Accent placed at the Top of *U*; thus; *û*.

No *English Word* is ended by *U*, except *thou, you*; the Sound of *U* being commonly expressed by *Ue* or *ew*; as, *Ague, true, new, Nephew, few*, &c.

Questions relating to the second Chapter.

Q. *What do you mean by a long Syllable?*

A. A Syllable where the Vowel has a long Sound.

Q. *What do you mean by a short Syllable?*

A. A Syllable where the Vowel has a short Sound.

Q. *What is E final?*

A. An E that ends a Word.

Q. *What do you mean by E mute or silent?*

A. E that is not sounded or pronounced in a Word; as in *Heart, Hearth*, which are sounded *hart, harth*.

Q. *What is the Use of the silent or unsounded E?*

A. 1. It serves to preserve the Quantity of the foregoing Vowel.

2. It serves to soften the Sound of *C, G, Th*, as in *Pace, Page, Breathe*, &c.

3. It serves to distinguish the *V* Consonant from the Vowel *U*; as, *Have* instead of *Hau*.

Q. *Is not silent E in the Singular often sounded in the Words of the Plural Number?*

A. Yes: And it is likewise sounded in the third-Person Singular of Verbs.

Q. *Give me some Examples.*

Nouns.

S. <i>Age,</i>	P. <i>Ages.</i>
S. <i>Fish,</i>	P. <i>Fishes.</i>
S. <i>Box,</i>	P. <i>Boxes.</i>
S. <i>House,</i>	P. <i>Houses.</i>
S. <i>Horse,</i>	P. <i>Horses.</i>

<i>First Person.</i>
So I <i>rage,</i>
I <i>place,</i>
I <i>rise,</i>
I <i>parch,</i>
I <i>punish,</i>

Verbs.

<i>Third Person.</i>
<i>he rages.</i>
<i>he places.</i>
<i>he rises.</i>
<i>he parches.</i>
<i>he punishes.</i>

Q. *What*

Q. What is the Reason of this ?

A. Because the Sound of *s*, cannot immediately follow the Consonants, *s*, *z*, *x*, *sh*, or, *c*, *g*, *ch*, pronounced soft.

Q. Is it not so before the other Letters ?

A. No. For in other Nouns and Verbs the Syllable is not encreased.

A Hide makes Hides.

<i>Wife,</i>	<i>Wifes.</i>	<i>So to hide,</i>	<i>he hides.</i>
<i>Name,</i>	<i>Names.</i>	<i>to pipe,</i>	<i>he pipes.</i>
<i>Rope,</i>	<i>Ropes.</i>	<i>to gape,</i>	<i>he gapes.</i>
<i>Fire,</i>	<i>Fires.</i>	<i>to write,</i>	<i>he writes.</i>

C H A P. III.

Of the Diphthongs or double Vowels.

W H E N two Vowels meet together in one Syllable, they are called a *Diphthong*, or double Vowel.

* A *Diphthong* or *double Vowel*, is the Meeting of two Vowels in one, and the same Syllable.

Meeting, that is, the *Union* or *Coalition* of two Vowels ; which is better than to say the *Sounding* of two Vowels ; for in some Diphthongs the Sound of one of the Vowels is never heard : As in *Meat*, *Pleasure*, where the Sound of *a* is not heard. From what has been here observed, we may divide the Diphthongs into *Proper* and *Improper*.

* A *Proper Diphthong* is where both the Vowels are sounded. As in *aid*, *hawk*, &c.

* An *Improper Diphthong* is where the Sound of but one of the two Vowels is heard : As in *hail*, *bread*, &c.

The *Proper Diphthongs* are *ai* or *ay*, *au* or *aw*, *ee*, *oi* or *oy*, *oo*, *ou* or *ow*.

But when a *Proper Diphthong* loses its natural Sound, and changes to any other simple Sound, it ceases to be a *Proper*, and becomes an *Improper Diphthong*, as having only the simple Sound of some one single Vowel. Except when *ou* Sounds like *oo*; as in *could*, *should*, *would*; for *oo* is also a *Proper Diphthong*.

The *Improper Diphthongs* are, *ea*, *eo*, *eu*, *ie*, *oa*, and *ui*, and *oe*.

Where the Sound of only one of the Vowels is heard; and in most of them it is the Sound of the first Vowel that is heard: Though it is very likely that both the Vowels were formerly pronounced.

A *Triphthong* is when three Vowels meet together in one Syllable; as, *eau*, in *Beauty*; but this we pronounce *Buty*.

But the *English Tongue* scarce admits of any *Triphthongs*.

N. B. When two Vowels are put together by Way of *Diphthong*, so as to coalesce or join together in one Syllable, that *Great and Good Man Bishop Wilkins* says, it is necessary that there should be some Note or Mark in their Characters, to signify their Conjunction, as is usual in some of the *Greek* and *Latin Diphthongs*; as *ei*, and *u*, *e*, and *œ*. Otherwise there can be no Certainty, whether the Word be to be pronounced as a *Monosyllable* or *Disyllable*; as in *Du-el*, *Duel*, *Swe-et*, *Sweet*.

* *Ai* or *ay* expresses a Sound composed of one short *a* and *y*: As in *Day*, *Praise*.

In the Middle of a Word it generally has its full Sound. At the End of a Word it is sounded like, *a*; as in *may*, *pay*, &c. Also before, *r*, it has the Sound of, *a*; as in *hair*, *fair*, &c.

Before Words Ending in, *n*, it is better to write, *ai*, than *e*, as *Fountain*, &c.

N. B. *Al*,

N. B. *Ai*, is written in the Beginning and Middle of Words, but, *ay*, always at the End : (unless in *aye*) therefore we must always write, *ay*, at the End of Words, instead of, *a*, which Ends no *English* Word.

Au, or, *aw*, rightly pronounced, would give us a Sound made up of the *English* short *a* and *w* : But it is now a-days simply sounded like the fat *a* of the *Germans* : Namely, the Sound of *a* being expressed broad, and the Sound of the *w*, quite suppressed.

For they do with the same Sound pronounce *all*, *aul*, *awl* ; *call*, *caul*, *cawl*, &c.

Aw, always ends a Word ; *au*, not.

Ea, is now pronounced as the long, *e*, the Sound of *a* being quite silenced or suppressed, and the Sound of, *e*, lengthened. For the chief Use of, *a*, is, that it makes the Syllable to be counted long : So, *met*, *meat* ; *set*, *feat*, &c. have no Difference in Sound, only the Vowel in the former is short, and in the latter it is long.

Ee, or, *ie*, is sounded like the *French*, long *i*, that is, slender, *i*, ; for the *French* give the same Sound to *fin*, *vin*, as the *English* do to *feen*, *ven*, or perhaps, *fien*, *vien*, as we do in *fiend*, *seen*. Single Words of one Syllable in, *e*, often Sound, *ee*, and ought therefore to be written with double *ee* ; as in, *Bee*, *hee*, *mee*, *wee*, *shee*, &c.

Ie, is used for *y*, at the End of Words ; as *signifie* or *signify*.

Words written with *ie* ; as, *Friend*, *Fiend*, *believe*, *grieve*, &c. might perhaps be better written with a single, *i*, short or long ; or, *e*, long.

Ei or *ey*, is sounded by clear, *e*, and, *y* ; or else simply by *e*, long, the Sound of the, *y*, being suppressed ; as in *receive*, *seize*, *deceit* ; or else like, *ai*, or, *a*, long in *reign*, *feign*, *eight*, &c.

Eu, *ew*, *eau*, are Sounded by clear, *e*, and, *w* ; or rather *u*, long. As in *Neuter*, *few*, *Beauty*, &c. But some pronounce them more sharp, as if they were to be written *Niewter*, *fiew*, *biewty*, or *niewter*, *fiw*, *biwty*, &c. especially in the Words *new*, *knew*, *shew*. But the first Way of pronouncing them is the better.

Oo, has its own natural Sound in *good*, *flood*, *root*, *foot*, &c.

It is sounded like the fat *U* of the *Germans*, and the *ou* of the *French*.

Oo, sounds like long *o* in *door*, *floor*: But like long, *u*, in *fluid*, and *blood*; wherefore Mr. Ray says this Spelling is erroneous, and that they ought to be written *fluid*, *blud*, &c. for we never pronounce these Words as we do *Mood*, neither as we do *proud*.

N. B. Mr. Ray says we want a Letter to signify the Sound we give to *oo* in double *o*, as in *good*, &c. And he says it is a simple Vowel, because the entire Sound of it may be continued as long as you please; which is the only certain Note of Distinction between a simple Vowel and a *Diphthong*. This Bishop Wilkins expresses by *y*, which is used in Greek for *ou Diphthong*; because commonly that *Diphthong*, as also the *French ou*, is pronounced in the Sound of this simple Vowel.

Oi, or *oy*, are expressed by open or clear *O*, but short, and *y*. As in *Noise*, *Boys*, *Toys*, *Oil*, *Oyster*, &c. But some do pronounce them like *o*, or obscure *u*; as, *oyl*, *oil*, or *tuyl*, *uyl*, &c. In some Words it is sounded like, *i*, long; as in *join*, *point*, *anoint*, &c.

N. B. *Oi*, is used at the Beginning and Middle of Words; *y*, at the End.

Ou, and *ow*, have two Sounds, one more clear, the other more obscure.

In some Words the Sound is expressed more clear by the open *o* and *w*. As in *Soul*, *snow*, *know*, *sow*, *owe*, *bowl*, &c. With which Sound the simple *o* is sometimes expressed, namely before *ld*; as in *Gold*, *scold*, *hold*, *cold*, *old*, &c. and before double *ll*; in *Poll*, *roll*, *toll*, &c. But all these Words are pronounced by some by full *O*; as if they were written *Sôle*, *Sno*, &c.

In other Words, *ou*, and *ow*, are pronounced with a more obscure Sound; namely with a Sound composed of the obscure *o*, and *u*, and *w*.

As in *House*, *Mouſe*, *our*, *out*, *Owl*, *foul*, *Fowl*, *bow*, *Bough*, *ſow*, &c.

But in *Could*, *would*, *ſhould*, *couſe*, *court*, *ou* is negligently pronounced as *oo*.

Ow,

Ow, is always written at the End of a Word, not *on*.

It would not be amiss if this clear Sound were to be distinguished from the obscure one ; which might be done by some Accent ; or else by always writing the one by *ow*, and the other by *ou*.

Eo ; In *Leopard*, *feodary*, *jeopardy*, &c. *O* is silent.

In *People*, *eo*, is sounded, *ec*.

Oa, is Sounded like *o* long, the *a*, being added only to make the Sound long, and is neglected in the Pronunciation : As in *Boat*, *float*, *goat*. But it is Sounded like, *au*, in *broad*, *abroad*, *Groat*, &c.

Ui, is put for *i* short ; as in *Guildford*, *Guild-Hall*, *build*, &c. 2. for *i* long, or a *Diphthong* ; as in *Guid*, *Guile*, &c. 3. for *eu*, or *eu* long ; as in *Juice*, *fruit*, *bruise*, &c.

Æ, and *Oe*, at the beginning of Words are no *English Diphthongs* : Though some Authors do retain *a* in *Latin Proper Names*, and *æ* in *Greek Words*, both *a* and *æ* sounding like *e* long : But as they are generally neglected in common Names, so they might be in proper Ones. As, *Cesar*, *Cesar*, *Oeconomy*, &c.

But, *oe*, at the End of Words of an *English Original*, is a Kind of improper *Diphthong* : As in *Toe*, *doe*, *foe*, *sloe*, *woe*, where the *e* is silent, and the *o* made long.

Questions relating to the Third Chapter.

Q. What is a Diphthong ?

A. A Diphthong is the Meeting of two Vowels in one and the same Syllable.

Q. What is a Triphthong ?

A. A Triphthong is the Meeting of three Vowels in one, and the same Syllable. But we have hardly any *Triphthongs* in our Language.

Q. What is a proper Diphthong ?

A. A proper Diphthong is, where both the Vowels are sounded.

Q. What is an improper Diphthong ?

A. An improper Diphthong is, where the Sound of but one of the two Vowels is heard.

Q. Tell

Q. Tell me which Diphthongs are Proper or Improper :
 Oi or oy, ai or ay, eo, au or aw, ou or ow, ea, &c.

A. ———

Q. What Sound has ai or ay ?

A. ———

Q. When is Ai to be used, and when Ay ?

A. ———

Q. Whence comes the Word Diphthong ?

A. From Διφθόγγος, Diphthongus, that is, *A double Sound.*

Q. What is a Triphthong ?

A. A treble or threefold Sound.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Consonants.

THere is no great Difficulty in the Pronunciation of the Consonants, since they have the same Sound with us, as they have for the most Part among other Nations : Especially *b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, z.* But however we shall say something of a few of them.

* A Consonant is a Letter that cannot be founded without adding a Vowel before or after it; as, *m*, which is founded as *em*; *p*, which is founded as *pe*.

The Consonants are divided into *Mutes* and *Semi-Vowels*, or *Half-Vowels*. The *Mutes* are *b, c, d, g, p, q, r, z*; And all the other Consonants are called *Semi-Vowels*; as, *f, h, l, m, n, r, s, x*. Four of which Consonants, namely, *l, m, n, r*, are called *Liquids*. But we shall not insist upon this Division, it being sufficient just to have mentioned it.

* A *Mute* is a Letter which makes no Sound without a *Vowel* added.

A a

* A

* A *Semi-Vowel* is a Letter which makes an imperfect Sound, without any *Vowel* added ; as, *S* is expressed by hissing, *R* by a quivering of the Tongue.

* A *Liquid* is a Letter which loses Part of its Sound in another Consonant joined with it.

C, The genuine and natural Sound of, *c*, is hard like *k*, as when it comes before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, or *r* ; as in *Can*, *cost*, *Cub*, *clear*, *Crab*. But *c* before the Vowels *e*, *i*, *y*, or before (') an *Apostrophe* denoting the Absence of, *e*, has generally the soft Sound of *s* ; as in *Cement*, *City*, *Cypher*, *plac'd* for *placed*.

The *French* expresses the soft, *c*, by this Figure, *ç*, to distinguish it from the hard, *c* : Which Character might be of Service, if it were made Use of among us. Though there is the less Need of a new Character, because the Rule we have laid down hardly admits of an Exception. For as often as the harder Sound of *c*, comes before the Vowels *e*, *i*, *y* ; *k* is always either added or put in its Place ; as in *Skin*, *Skill*, *Publick*, (for *Publique* is a *French* Way of writing, who use *qu*, because they have no *k* ;) Though we may write the Words *Publick*, &c. without a *k*, *c* at the End of a Word, having always a hard Sound. But if by Chance, *c*, has any where a softer Sound, as in the End of a *Syllable*, or before a *Consonant*, or the Vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, they add the silent *e*, to render the Sound softer ; as, *Chance*, *Advancement*, *forceable*, (*forcible*), &c.

N. B. Mr. Ray says, that, *c*, in its proper Power, differs not at all from *k*, and therefore that the one or other must needs be superfluous. *

S. When

* And might not the same be said of *Q* ? They are all now but one Letter, or one Power under three different Shapes ;

S. When *S* keeps its natural Sound, it is pronounced with an *acute* (sharp) or hissing Sound: But when it ends a Word, it has for the most Part a more obscure or soft Sound like *z*; which Sound it also sometimes has when it comes between two Vowels or Diphthongs.

Note, When *S* has this soft Sound, it would be convenient to write it with the shorter Character of that Letter; as, *his*, *advise*, and in all other Places with the longer; as, *hisse*, *advise*, (if it be written with an *s*, and not with a *c*). These Words End in hard *s*; *Us*, *this*, *thus*, *Yes*. Wherefore all Words of one Syllable, except these four which end with, and bear hard upon the Sound of *s*, must be written with double *ss*; but if they be Words of more than one Syllable, and end in *us*, the *s* is not doubled, but the *o* is inserted before *u*; as in *sedious*, *gracious*, &c.

N. B. Though we generally pronounce the *ou* in these Words like *u*; as, *gracious*, *righteous*, &c. The like may be said of *our*, in *Honour*, *Oratour*, *Creditour*: Wherefore in the first Words, *o* might be left out, and in the last Sort *u*.

T When *T* comes before *I*, another Vowel following it, it has the Sound of the hissing *S*, otherwise it keeps its own Sound.

Shapes; and the Shapes are to be varied according to the Circumstances, as Use has prevailed. But *k* is an antient Letter in the *Latin* Alphabet, and stood in the Place of the *Greek Kappa*; and was very distinct from *C*, which was in the Place of the *Greek Gamma*, and was the only *G* the *Latins* had for a considerable Time. Indeed, since *G* came in as a distinct Letter, *C* might be spared. For *G* and *K* and *S* all together seem to supersede every Sound or Use of *C*. But Originally the three were distinct enough, thus:

C answering to *Greek Gamma*, *Hebrew Gimel*.

G answering to *Greek Zeta*, *Hebrew Zain*.

K answering to *Greek Kappa*, *Hebrew Caph*.

Custom has confounded their *Valours* or *Powers*.

As in *Potion, Nation, Meditation, expatiate, &c.* which are founded *Posion, Nasion, Meditasion, expasiate, &c.* But when T comes after S or X, it keeps its own Sound: As in *Question, Fustian, Combustion, bestial, Mixture, &c.*

X, Is founded as Cs or the Greek Ζ.

N. B. The *French* are apt to suppress the Sound of C in this Letter, and the *Spaniards* to pronounce it too soft.

W. This Letter comes before all the Vowels except U; * it also goes before R, and follows Th; as, *Want, went, Winter, wont, wrath, write, wry, &c.* It follows as a Vowel A, E, O, and unites with them into the Diphthongs *aw, ew, ow*, just like U; as, *saw, few, sow, &c.*

It likewise comes before the Letter H, though it is really founded after it; as in *when, what, which*, that are founded *hwen, hwat, hwich*, and so our *Saxon* Ancestors were wont to place it.

W is founded in *English* as U in the *Latin* Words, *quando, lingua, suadeo*, and in others after Q. G, S. We always count this Letter a Consonant; yet its Sound is not very different, though it sometimes differs from the *German* gross Vowel U very rapidly pronounced.

Mr. Ray makes this Letter to be Oo rapidly pronounced; this the *Greeks* were sensible of, for instead of the

* And why not before u? This Nicety came in, I suppose, since the *Gallic* *uu* were introduced instead of the *Saxon* p; for it did not look right to have three u's together. But in *Saxon*, u follows p, as often as any other Vowel follows the same: As in *pude, pund, pulf, &c.* And since we write w as one Letter, and not uu, we might have u after w, as well as formerly after p, which was also a single Character. Our antient u has, in this Case, been changed into, o, or, ou, or oo. At the Beginning of this Change, they were sometimes content with uu, in such Words, not adding a third as thus, *uunder* for *pundop*: But afterwards they thought there was a Vowel still wanting, and to supply the u omitted, inserted o, *wonder*.

Dutch

Dutch Word Wandals they said 'Ουάνδαλοι. And the *Greek Diphthong* *u* [Ou] was pronounced as we do Oo. *

Y. This Letter is both a *Consonant* and a *Vowel*. *Y* at the Beginning of a Syllable comes before only Vowels, especially *A*, *E*, *O*; and it also follows these, and does with them make up the *Diphthongs*; as, *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, which have the same Sound as *au*, *eu*, *ou*. At the End of a Word, *Y* is more frequently written than *I*; but in the Middle of Words it is not so frequently used as *I* is, unless it be in Words which come from the *Greek* written with *Υ*. But as often as this Letter is reckoned a *Vowel*, I would have it marked at the Top with a Point thus *y*, that it may be distinguished from the *Consonant*, and this formerly was always done.

The *Y* *Consonant* is sounded with us like the *German I* *Consonant*; that is, with a Sound most nearly approaching the Sound of the *Vowel I* rapidly pronounced. The *Arabians* express *Y* by their *Ye*, as they do our *W* by their *Waw*.

N. B. *Y*, though it be esteemed a *Consonant*, when placed before a *Vowel*, *Mr. Ray* says it is not so, but only the *Greek Iota*, or our *ee* rapidly pronounced.---When it is accounted a *Vowel*, as in *My*, *Thy*, it differs not at all from what we call *I* long in *mine*, *thine*. †

V. We

* The Original of our *w* is to be fetched from the *Gothick Y* or *Saxon p* of the same Valour or Power. The *Latins*, *Greeks*, and *Hebrews* have no Letter or Letters that exactly answer to a *w*, unless their *Vau* was really *Waw*, which some contend for, and *Vossius* especially. As we make it always a *Consonant*, we do but blunder in calling it double *u*; we should have kept to the antient *Saxon* Name for it, *Wen*; or have called it *Waw*, or *Wau*, as the *Syrians* call the *Hebrew Vau*. But we give it the Name rather from the Way of Writing it, than from its proper Power.

† The *y* is certainly nothing else but the *Greek Upsilon*, first latinized, and so derived to us. But why it should be called *wi* by our *Saxon* Ancestors, I know not. No *Consonant* besides takes a different *Consonant* to name it by;

V. We pronounce the *V* Consonant as the *French*, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, and other Nations do, that is, with a Sound very near the Letter *F*.

For *F* and *V* have the same Difference as *P* and *B*. It is now written with a different Character from the Vowel *U*. In our Language it comes only before the Vowels, but never before the Consonant *R*, as in the *French* Tongue, nor before *L* as in *Dutch*. It follows not only the Vowels, but also the Consonants, *L*, *R*, in the last Part of the same Syllable ; but the silent *E*, or else an *Apostrophe* is put in its Place, least it should be taken for a Vowel ; as, *Vain*, *Vein*, *Virtue*, *Vice*, *Voice*, *Vulgar*, *have*, *leave*, *live*, *Love*, *Carve*, *Calves*, &c.

J, Always begins a Syllable, and is placed only before Vowels : For if at any Time its Sound comes at the End of a Word, it is expressed by soft *G*, or *Dg*, with the silent *E* after it, that the softer Sound of the Letter *G* may be perceived ; as in *Age*, *Rage*, *Knowledge*.

It is now a-days written with a longer Character thus, *J*, to distinguish it from the Vowel *I*. We pronounce the *J* Consonant harder than most other People. Dr. *Wallis* says, that this Sound is compounded of the Consonants *Dy* ; as, *Dyoy*, for *Joy*. But Bishop *Wilkins* says, it is a compounded Sound of *D*, and *Zb*. That it has the Sound of *D* is plain, for bid a young Child that begins to speak say *John*, it will say *Don*.

G, Before *A*, *O*, *U*, is sounded hard ; as, *Game*, *Gene*, *Gun* ; but when it comes before *E*, *I*, *Y*, or before an

as we say *be*, *ce*, *de*, &c. why not here *ye*, *ya*, or something equivalent ? It seems very peculiar, and is apt to lead Foreigners into a Mistake. But I suppose *wi* is a Corruption from *ay*, *oy*, or *oi*, or *ui*. For the Greek *oi*, or *ui*, is written in *Saxon* by their *y*, as *ἰπποῖνες*, *epyren. uios*, *ἡγιος*, *ἰπποῖνες*, is also written thus : *epoyoen. In both Readings y* stands for *oi* ; only the *u* is indifferently written by *i* or *ei*. The Name then was intended rather for the *y* Vowel, then *y* Consonant ; and should be *oy*, or *uy*, or *oi*, or *ui*, not *wi*. Some have *Phya*, some *Hya*, most antient is *aia*. Vid. *Vossius*.

Apostrophe

Apostrophe the Mark of an absent E. It has for the most Part a softer Sound in all Words derived from *Latin*; like as in *gender*, *Ginger*, *Gypsie*, *judg'd* for *judged*.

But as often as *g* is to be pronounced with a softer Sound, it would be convenient always to have it marked with a Point placed over the head of *g*, to distinguish it from the hard *g*. Which would be of great Advantage to Foreigners. But *g* keeps its natural hard Sound in all Words not derived from the *Latin* or *French*; as in *Give*, *forgive*, *get*, *forget*, *beget*, *geld*, *begin*, *together*, and in all the Words that come from them. Also in *Anger*, *hunger*, *linger*, *eager*, *Vinegar*, *swagger*, *stagger*, *Dagger*, &c. And whenever *gg* come together, they are both hard, though *e*, *i*, or *y* follow. Also in Words derived from *Long*, *strong*, *big*, *beg*, *sing*, *bring*, and in others whose Primitives (or the Words they come from) end in hard *g*. In some Words *u* or *h* is added after *g*, which hardens its Sound; as, *Guide*, *Guilt*, *Guile*, *Tongue*, *Guest*, *ghesse*, *Ghost*, and to others where the *u* is not sounded.

* *Q*, Sounds *kue*, having *u* after it, and beginning Words with that Sound.

N. B. *Q* is generally agreed upon to be nothing else than *Cu*, therefore it is reckoned superfluous. But as we always put a *u* after it, we make no more than a *c* of it: And besides much may be pleaded against *Gataker's* Account. Many Writers, among others our Learned Cri-

* *Q* is not properly a *Saxon* Letter, but it is derived to us immediately from the *Roman* Alphabet. If we look higher, we may properly bring it from the *Hebrew Koph*, its Place in the Alphabet, its Figure, and its Valour show the same Thing. It preceeds *R*, as *Koph* preceeds *Resh*; its Figure is much the same with *G*, the *ἐπίσημον κόππα* of the *Greeks*; which though not a Letter of the *Greek* Alphabet is a Numeral Mark, derived from the *Hebrew*, and is indeed in Shape a kind of *Koph* turned over. The Valour of *q* may be the same with that of the *Hebrew Koph*. Vid. *Thomas's Gl. Pref.* pag. 90, 91. And see also what *Lhuyd* in his *Archeolog.* (p. 24.) says of this Letter.

tick

tick Mr. Gataker, omit the *u* after it, Writing instead of *quis, quid, quam, &c. qis, qid, qam.* But Bishop Wilkins says, the Letter involved in *Q* is *oo*, * not *u*. See Page 264.

† *X* and *Z* are double Consonants; *x*, containing the Sound of *cs* or *ks*; *z*, contains the Sound of *ds*.

C H A P. V.

Of some Consonants joined together.

Gh, **A**T the Beginning of Words is pronounced as hard *g*: As in *Ghost, ghes*.

Though it is very seldom used: By some it is pronounced by the soft Aspiration *h*: As in *Might, Light, Night, right, Sight, Sigh, weigh, Weight, though, Thought, wrought, taught, &c.*

In some few Words it is pronounced like double *ff*; as, *Cough, Trough, tough, rough, laugh*, are sounded *Coff, Truff, ruff, laff*.

Ch, is pronounced like the Italian *c* before *e* and *i*; namely, with a Sound compounded of *ty*: But Bishop Wilkins says, *Tsh, Tshurtsh, Church*.

Ch, was introduced by the Normans into our Language; as Mr. Lhuyd says, p. 23. and Somner in his Dictionary says, it was not known to the old English Saxons.

* If he had said *w*, he had not said much amiss. The Saxon *cp* is our *qu*: As in *cpacian*, to quake. But in truth, since we add *u* to it, it involves no Letter, but is a meer *c*; unless half the *w* be involved.

† If double Letters, then are they not properly Letters, but Abbreviations, or Shorthand; like *Œ*, which is no Letter, but two in one, *et*. However it is but a Nicety, whether they shall be called Letters, or Characters: And Use has prevailed for the former. In a Saxon Alphabet (Wanley's Catal. p. 247.) The Mark *ȝ*, and, is reckoned as a Letter; and so also is *þ*, *that*.

But

But in foreign Words it is sounded like *c* or *k*; as, *Chymist, Baruch, Archippus, &c.*

Sh is pronounced as the French *ch* or *sy*.

Ph is sounded like *f*; but is seldom written but in Words that come from the Greek, written with ϕ or *ph*.

Th has a double Sound; one soft, coming nigh the Letter *D*; the other strong, approaching near the Letter *T*.

It hath a softer Sound in all Pronouns, Relative Words, Conjunctions. As, *Thou, thee, thy, thine, the, this, that, these, those, they, them, their, there, thence, thither, whither, either, whether, neither, though, although.*

In a few Nouns and Verbs ending in *ther*. As, *Father, Mother, Brother, Leather, Weather, Feather, smooth, neighbor, seeke, wreath, breathe, bequeath, clothe.*

Elsewhere it generally has a stronger Sound.

As in the Prepositions *with, without, within, through*: In the Verbs *think, thrive, throw, thrust, &c. loveth, teacheth, hath, doth, &c.* In the Substantives *thought, Thigh, Thing, Throng, Death, Breath, Cloth, Wrath, Length, Strength, &c.* In the Adjectives *thick, thin, &c.*

Dh and *Th*, are then of that Power which we commonly ascribe to the Letters *D, T*, aspirated or Sounded thick. And though these two Powers are commonly used by us without any Provision for them by distinct Characters, yet our Ancestors the Saxons had several Letters to express them. They represented *Dh* by this mark δ , and *Th* by this mark θ : And 'tis most evident that the Sounds of them, though we usually confound them under the same Manner of Writing, are in themselves very distinguishable, as we have already shown: For *Dh* is sounded in these Words; *Thee, this, Father, &c.* and *Th* in these; *Think, thigh, thistle, doth, &c.*

But the Learned Mr. Wanley gives a different Account of those Characters, viz. θ and δ . He says, the first of them is *Runic*, and was in Use with many of the Northern Nations, as it is still in *Island*, where it is called by the Name of *Thorn* (as our Forefathers also called it,) and that it has continued in Use from the Beginning of Christianity among the Saxons in *Britain* (and probably before) to this Day;

Day ; we only now using a *Y* instead of it, when we abbreviate the Words *The, This, That, Then,* &c. (to which the Letter *Y* has no Relation) because, at the Infancy of Printing, the said Letter *Thorn* was commonly formed as a *Y* ; and that thereby the Charge of that Letter was saved, and the whole *Front of Letters* consequently the Cheaper. As to the other Character *ſ*, the said Mr. *Wanley* informs the diagonal Line is only a Note of Aspiration of the *D* ; and says he has seen a great Variety of them in old Books, not only applied to the Letter *D*, but to other Letters, when they were to be sounded with an Aspiration.

These Letters are framed by a Percolation or Straining of the Breath through a Kind of Chink betwixt the Tongue and upper Teeth, the first with some Kind of vocal Sound, the other wholly mute. But to conclude : That which doth generally seem most difficult to Strangers in our *English* Tongue, is the pronouncing these Aspirations, (as they are called,) which are very frequently and familiarly used amongst us, but hardly imitable by others, though these are but few ; these five Words, as is said, comprehending all of them. *What think the chosen Judges ?* Which a little Practice might overcome.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Division of Syllables, and some Rules to be observed in Writing of Words.

SPELLING being the parting Words into convenient Parts, in order to shew their true Pronunciation, or for Decency of Writing ; the *Grammarians* have given several Rules for the Performance of this Matter. But as Nature is most easy and simple in all her Operations : So I cannot for my Life get it out of my Head, but that a due Observance and Imitation of her, would be as serviceable as the following a great many of the magisterial and perplex Directions of Persons, that compel others to beat that Path they themselves have so often

trod,

trod, though perhaps there may be one but just hard by, that is more pleasant, delightful, and much better. As to the Matter before us, namely the Division of Syllables, I am apt to believe that the easiest if not the best way, is in Reading or Pronouncing, to part the Syllables as they sound best to the Ear; and in Writing, as they shall appear best to the Eye.

And I find that the Great *Julius Scaliger*, the Learned *Bangius*, and the Famous *Comenius*, are of the same Opinion, than which last Person, never any Man hath made more Improvements in the *Didactical Art*, or the *Art of Teaching*: For he differed very much from a great many of the Moderns, who fancy that the learning of a Language qualifies them of Course for the *Teaching* of it: And yet poor *Comenius* worked Night and Day, and wrote Volumes for the Advancement of an Art, that comes to us without any Thought, Pains, or Study. It is true, a Boy must serve seven Years to learn the *Art* and *Mystery* of *Brush-making*; when seven Minutes shall qualify a Man sufficiently for the professing the *Art* and *Mystery* of *Teaching*: But though the Man has not served seven Years, yet he has learnt *Latin*; and so consequently is Master of *Prudence*, *Conduct*; a *Knowledge of Things*, the *Art of communicating his Thoughts in a clear, easy, and delightful Manner*. His *Latin* no doubt will also furnish him with all the necessary Arts of pleasing the Mind, and winding himself into the Heart and Affections of his Scholar: His *Latin* (or *French* perhaps) will furnish him likewise with all the Ways of Address and Application that are requisite, towards the managing and governing a tender, rough, or a mild, or froward Disposition and Temper. But to the Matter in hand: *Scaliger* in his Book, *de Causis Linguae Latinae*, says; *Quemadmodum loquimur, ita scribere debemus: scribendum itaque Ab-domen, Ig-nis, Om-nis, Pis-cis, Nos-ter, Ap-tus, Sanc-tus, Op-to, teg-men, ag-men: quando communis loquendi modus planè reprobaverit hanc pronuntiationem O-mnis, O-p-to, i-gnis. Nam neque sufficiens ratio est, literas quae initio conjungi possunt, eas etiam in medio copulandas: partim quorum pleraque, quorum initiales sunt, Bd, Pt, Mw, Sm, sint peregrina: partim quum pronuntiatio planè sit inepta & ridicula, E-ra-smus, &c. Elegancia tamen pingendi a-*
liquid

liquid condonare possumus ; ut No-ster, A-plus. That is ; We ought to write as we speak : We must therefore write *Ab-domen, ig-nis, &c.* (not *A-bdomen, i-gnis ;*) since the common Form of speaking hath quite rejected this Pronunciation, *O-mnis, O-pro, i-gnis.* For it is not a sufficient Reason, that the Letters which may be joined together at the Beginning of a Word, should be also coupled in the Middle ; Partly since many Words, whose initial Syllables are *Bd, Pt, Mn, Sm,* are foreign Words : And partly because this Manner of Pronunciation is very silly and ridiculous ; as, *E-ra-smus, &c.* But however some Allowance may be made for the Nearness and Beauty of Writing ; as, *No-ster, A-plus.*

But we shall now proceed to give two or three Directions about what Words are to be written with *Capital* or *Great* Letters.

Great Letters are never to be used in the Middle or End of Words, but at the Beginning, and then only,

1. At the Beginning of any Writing.
2. After a Period, when a new Sentence begins.
3. At the Beginning of every Verse in Poetry, or in the Bible.
4. At the Beginning of Proper Names of all Kinds ; as of *Men, Women, Cities, Rivers, &c.*
5. At the Beginning of any Word of special Note ; as, *God, Queen, Sir.*
6. The Pronoun *I,* must always be a *Capital* or *Great* Letter.

Great Letters are also used to express *Numbers ;* as, *I* stands for 1, *V* for 5, &c.

C H A P. VII.

Of some Points used in Writing, and of the Abbreviation or Contraction of Words.

THERE are several Marks or Points that do more strictly relate to the *Orthography, or Writing* of Words.

A Hyphen,

A *Hyphen*, which is used at the End of a Line, when there is not room for all the Word, but one or more Syllables remain to be written at the Beginning of the next Line: The Mark is a straight Line thus (-). It is also used in the compounding or joining two Words into one; as, *House-keeper*, &c.

An *Apostrophe*, which denotes some Letter or Letters to be lett out, for quicker Pronunciation; as, *I'll*, for *I will*, *can't*, for *cannot*, &c. the Mark is a *Comma* at the Top, which is thus written ('), as in *don't*.

But this drawing of two Words into one, has very much untuned our Language, and clogged it with Consonants, and is therefore to be avoided as much as possible: As, *mayn't*, *sha'n't*, *don't*, *won't*, and the like; for *may not*, *shall not*, *do not*, *will not*, &c.

A *Caret*, is used when a Letter, Syllable, or Word happens to be left out in Writing: The Mark must be just under the Line where the Letter or Word is to come in.

As, *Thou art Man*. This is very properly called a

Λ

Note of *Induction*, or of bringing in a Word.

An *Asterism* (*) directs to some Note or Remark in the Margin, or at the Bottom of the Page. In some *Latin* Books it denotes that some Thing is defective or wanting.

Index (☞) the Fore-finger pointing, signifies that Passage to be very remarkable over-against which it is placed.

Sometimes an *Obelisk* (†) or Spit is used upon the like Occasion as the foregoing Note.

Section (§) or Division is used in the Subdividing of a Chapter into lesser Parts or Portions.

A *Paragraph* (¶) or a Note which denotes what is contained in the Sentence or Period.

Quotation (") or a double *Comma* reversed at the Beginning of a Line, denotes that Passage to be quoted or transcribed from some Author in his own Words.

We have also in Writing certain *Abbreviations* or Words made short, and this is done for a quick and expeditious Way of Writing. But we shall only mention a few of

B b

them.

them. We are to take Notice that a Point is always to be written after the Word thus abbreviated, unless when the Abbreviation is made by putting the Letter at the Top.

Answ. for Answer.

A. D. Anno Domini, or in the Year of our Lord.

Acct. for Account.

Abt. about.

Ag. against.

B. A. Batchelor of Arts.

Bp. Bishop.

B. D. Batchelor in Divinity.

Bar. Baronet.

Chap. Chapter.

D. D. Doctor of Divinity.

Dr. Doctor.

Esq. Esquire.

i. e. id est, that is.

Empr. Emperor.

Honb. Honourable.

Kt. Knight.

L. L. D. Doctor of Laws.

M. D. Doctor of Physick.

Mr. Master.

Mrs. Mistress.

Mty. Majesty.

Rev. Reverend.

S. T. P. Professor of, or Doctor in Divinity.

Sr. Sir.

St. Saint.

Obj. Objection.

Qu. Question.

Sol. Solution.

ye The.

yt That.

yu You.

yn Then.

ym Them.

yr Your.

& And.

&c. Et cetera, and the Rest (or what follows.)

But one ought to avoid these Contractions of Words as much as possible, unless it be for one's own private Use, and where it would be ridiculous to write them in Letters at length ; as, &c. for *and so forth*, or *the rest*, Mr. for *Master*, and Mrs. for *Mistress*, &c. It argues likewise a Disrespect and Slighting to use Contractions to your Betters, and is often puzzling to others.

Questions relating to the Seventh Chapter.

Q. *What is a Hyphen ?*

A. *Hyphen* is a Line or Mark that ties Syllables together, and sometimes two Words to make one.

Q. *Whence comes Hyphen ?*

A. From $\dot{\upsilon}\phi\ \dot{\epsilon}\nu$, *Hyphen*, that is a Mark to bring two Words $\dot{\upsilon}\phi$, *yph*, *under*, $\dot{\epsilon}\nu$, *hen*, one Word.

Q. *What is an Apostrophe ?*

A. An *Apostrophe* is the Mark of a Letter's being cut off, or left out.

Q. *Whence comes Apostrophe ?*

A. From $\alpha\pi\acute{o}\varsigma\epsilon\phi\phi\tau$, *Apostrophos*, a turning out or away, it being, as it were, the turning a Letter out of a Word.

Q. *What is a Caret ?*

A. A *Caret* is a Mark that denotes a Letter or Word to be left out.

Q. *Whence comes Caret ?*

A. From the *Latin Word Caret*, it wanteth, or is without, that is, the Line wanteth a Word or more, or the Word a Letter, &c.

Q. *Whence comes Induction ?*

A. From *Inductio*, a bringing in.

Q. *What is an Asterism ?*

A. An *Asterism* is a Note that directs to some remarkable Passage.

Q. *Whence comes the Word Asterism ?*

A. From $\alpha\sigma\tau\epsilon\rho\iota\sigma\mu\acute{o}\varsigma$, *Asterismos*, a Star, or Constellation of Stars.

Q. *What is an Index ?*

A. An *Index* also points to some remarkable Passage.

Q. Whence comes the Word Index ?

A. From Index, the Fore finger, because indicat, it marks, or points to, somewhat that is remarkable.

Q. What is a Section ?

A. The Parting of a Chapter into Parts.

Q. Whence comes Section ?

A. From Sectio, a Cutting or Dividing. This Mark seems to be made of Ss, as it were, Signum Sectionis, the Sign of a Section.

Q. What is a Paragraph ?

A. A Mark that denotes what is contained in the Sentence or Period.

Q. Whence comes Paragraph ?

A. From παράγραφον, Paragraphus, that is, a Writing to, it being a Mark which we use to denote the Beginning of a new Sentence. The Mark is taken from the Greek Π, Pi, the first Letter in the Word Paragraphos.

Q. What is a Quotation ?

A. A Quotation is a Mark that is used to denote the Quoting or Citation of some Author in his own Words.

Q. Whence comes the Word Quotation ?

A. From the Old French Word Quoter, to praise an Author, or to tell quota first, what they are, that are contained in such a Book or Chapter of an Author.

Q. What is an Abbreviation ?

A. The Shortening of a Word.

Q. Whence comes Abbreviation ?

A. From Abbreviatio, a Shortening or making short.

N. B. About the Year 1542. it was, That Sir Thomas Smith wrote a Tract concerning correct Writing of English, and the true Sounding of the Letters and Words. That which he found fault with in our Language was, that ill and improper writing of it. As for instance of these Words, please, Sonne, Moone Hemme, Cleane, To, Toe, Meane. In which Words, he said, those Sounds are not comprehended which we express : And in some of them the Syllables are stuffed with needless Letters. Which Letters by themselves have their certain Natures, as he observed, and being joyned after that manner, have not that Force which they ought to have. And again, in other words, he took notice we had no Letter which exprest that which we spake,
and

and therefore he thought it necessary to have more Letters. So he framed Twenty-nine Letters : Whereof Nineteen were *Roman*, four *Greek*, and six *English* or *Saxon*. The five Vowels he augmented into Ten, distinguishing them into Long and Short, making certain *Accents* over, or on the Side of them, that were to be pronounced Long. It is worth seeing his new Alphabet, wherein might be observed that he allowed no Diphthongs, nor double Consonants, nor any *E's* at the End of Words, being not sounded. He had a good mind to throw out utterly, and banish from the Alphabet the Letter *Q*, as useless, *Ku* expressing the full power of *Q*, for without the Vowel *U*, the Letter *Q* is never written. And the same Usefulness he found to be in the Letter *C* ; for it is ever expressed either by *K* or by *S* ; but he retained it in his Alphabet to serve instead of *Ch*. See the Alphabet at the End of the Grammar.



PART V.

OF PROSODY,

By Mr. DENNIS.

S I R,

I HERE send you, in compliance with your Desire, my Sentiments concerning the Harmony of our *English* Poetry, which is a short Essay towards an *English* Prosody; and I heartily wish that I could send you any Thing that could be of any Use, or any Addition to so good, so useful, and so generous a Work as the *Grammar*, which you are about to publish a third time.

CHAP. I.

Of Numbers.

THERE are two Things to be considered in the Harmony of our *English*, and indeed of all *Gothick* Poetry, and those are *Numbers* and *Rhyme*.

A numerous Discourse, or a Discourse that is writ in *Numbers*, is a Discourse whose Parts are measured by such a Number of Feet or of Syllables. *Numbers* are necessary to all Sorts of Poetry, both *Gothique* and *Antique*. But the Ancient *Gracians* and *Romans* arriving, by the Advantage of their Language and the Fineness of their Ears, to a great Perfection

Perfection in *Numbers*, utterly contemned and rejected *Rhyme*: Whereas the *Gothick* or modern *Poets* vainly imagine that they can supply the Defect of *Numbers* in their unmusical Idioms by the Use of *Rhyme*.

Numbers are made musical and delightful to the Ear by Strength, Sweetness, and Variety. Consonants express Strength, but if unseasonably accumulated are harsh and disagreeable. Vowels supply Sweetness, and especially Diphthongs, but too many of them banish Force. The agreeable Mixture of Vowels and Consonants causes a charming Combination of Strength and Sweetness. But Vowels and Consonants are to be so mingled, that Vowels or Consonants may prevail according as Force or Sweetness is more required. It is partly for this Reason, that there is more Force and more Sweetness in the Ancient *Gracian* or *Roman*, than in the modern or *Gothick* Poetry; because in the Ancient *Gracian* and *Roman*, and especially in the former, the Vowels and Consonants are more finely mingled than they are in modern Languages.

The Variety of *Numbers*, and the avoiding of Monotony, is caused in *Poems*, which consist of only one Sort of *Verse*, by the various Mingling of Vowels and Consonants, and by the different Placing of Accents and Cadences (of which last we shall say more immediately). The *Numbers* in our usual *Pentameters*, which is the *Verse* that we call *Heroick*, are divided into equal, and unequal; and the *Pentameter* is diversified by the Judicious using the one or the other, according as the Subject requires. The *Numbers* are equal, when the *Accents* lye upon equal Syllables, and they are unequal when the *Accents* lye upon odd Syllables.

C H A P. II.

Of Measure and Cadence.

AS *Numbers* imply Measure, they likewise include Cadence: The Measure of our *English* Verse is different, according to the different Kinds of it. The Measure of our common *Pentameter* or *Heroick* Verse is,

is usually ten Syllables, but sometimes when there are *Dactyles*, it is extended to eleven or twelve, as in this Verse of Dryden.

Thee Saviour, Thee the Nations Vows confess. [In our *Stanza's*, according to the different Kinds of them the Measure differs. Two of our Poets, have writ long Poems in *Stanza's*, *Spencer*, and Sir *William Davenant*. The *Stanza* of Sir *William Davenant* is, what they call the *Quatrain*, which consists of four *Pentameters* with alternate Rhyme. The *Stanza* of *Spencer* consists of nine Verses, the eight first of which are *Pentameters*, and the ninth is an *Alexandrine* or an *Hexameter*. But the *Stanza* is certainly very improper for long and noble Poems. It seems to belong in a peculiar manner to our *Lyrick Poetry*.

The Measures of our *Lyrick Stanza's* are as different as the *Odes* which are writ in those *Stanza's*. There is the Regular *Stanza* and the Irregular. The Irregular *Stanza* belongs to the *Ode* which is vulgarly called *Pindarick*, in which no one *Stanza* unless by chance answers exactly to another. The Regular *Stanza* is that, whose Measures and the different Placing of its Rhymes answer exactly to every one of the same *Ode*; and even of these there is a vast Variety, as every one knows who is acquainted with our Poets who have writ *Odes* and Songs; as *Suckling*, *Waller*, *Cowley*, *Sedley*, *Wilmot*, *Sackville*, with a long *et ceteri*.

To treat of *Cadence* as one ought to do, would require an entire Treatise. The Word seems to me to be a *Metaphor* drawn from the *Dancing-School*, where it properly signifies a Pause or a Fall from Motion to Rest: Taken metaphorically, it signifies a Pause in Sound, or a Fall from Sound to Silence, or from a stronger Sound to a softer, and is regulated by the natural Stops of the Sense, and influenced by the *Accents*. In our most musical *Pentameters* or *Heroicks*, the Pauses which are most remarkable, are those which are in the Middle of a Verse, or those which are at the End of it.

The Pauses in the Middle of the Verse, are either upon the fourth Syllable, as in these Verses of *Denham*;

*Tho' deep, yet clear, tho' gentle, yet not dull,
Strong without Rage, without overflowing full.*

Or upon the Sixth, as in the following Verse of *Roscommon* ;

Vain are our Neighbours Hopes, and vain their Cares.

The Pause at the End of a Verse ought to be greater than any Pause that may precede it in the same Verse, and the Pause at the End of a Couplet ought to be greater than that which is at the End of the first Verse.

But it is not necessary that the Pause at the End of a Couplet should be a full one, that is a Point ; it is often a Colon, often a Semicolon, often a Comma only. But if the Rhyme is carried on to the third Verse, which causes the three to be called a *Triplet*, then it is necessary there should be a full Pause, that is a Point ; especially if the last Verse of the three is an *Hexameter*, as it often happens.

C H A P. III.

Of Rhyme.

I Come now to say something of *Rhyme* that *Goslick* Pretence to Harmony. *Rhyme* then is nothing but a Similitude of Sound between the last Syllable or Syllables of one Verse, and the last Syllable or Syllables of another Verse, either immediately following the former, or following at the Distance of two or three Lines at the most. For if the first Syllable of the intended *Rhyme* be lost to the Ear before the second reaches it, there either can be no *Rhyme*, or at the best but a very imperfect one.

Rhymes are either single, or double, or treble ; but because double and treble *Rhymes* are confined to one Sort of Poetry, which is seldom writ now by People of this World, unless it be to advance the Glory of one who has been several Years in the other ; I shall be contented to treat of single *Rhymes* alone.

A single *Rhyme* then is a Similitude of Sound between the last Syllable of one Verse, and the last Syllable of another

ther Verse following it at the fore-mentioned Distance. And single *Rhymes* are divided into half and imperfect *Rhymes*, and whole and perfect ones. A half and imperfect *Rhyme* is, where there is a Similitude with a Difference. The Difference lies chiefly in the Pronunciation, but sometimes too in the Orthography. We have an Example of both these Differences in six Verses of *Waller*, which are in the Copy, which the Country is supposed to present to the Countess of Carlisle.

*A rural Judge dispos'd of Beauty's Prize,
A simple Shepherd was preferr'd to Jove,
Down to the Mountains from the partial Skies
Came Juno, Pallas, and the Queen of Love,
To plead for that, which was so justly giv'n
To the Bright Carlisle of the Court of Heav'n.*

Now here are two imperfect *Rhymes*; the Syllables of the first *Rhyme*, *Jove* and *Love*, agree in the Orthography, but differ in the Pronunciation. The Syllables of the second *Rhyme*, *giv'n* and *Heav'n*, differ both in the Pronunciation and the Orthography. But then this Passage of *Waller*, is so spiritual, so courtly, and so gallant, and the Numbers considered apart from the *Rhymes* are so very good, that the Reader abandons himself to the Pleasure they give him, and is not at Leisure to consider any Imperfection of the *Rhyme*. If there is any Thing amiss in this Passage it is, that it is a great deal too courtly and too gallant for the Country. But Mr. *Waller* is so happy a Genius, that his very Faults are great Beauties.

Another Thing that renders the *Rhyme* imperfect is, when one of the Words, whose last Syllable helps to constitute it, is a Polysyllable, and the Accent does not lie on the last Syllable. As for Example, we find the following Lines in *Waller's* Translation of Part of the Fourth Book of *Virgil*;

*Her Resolution to dispatch and die,
Confirm'd by many a horrid Prodigy.*

Now here the latter Syllable of the *Rhyme* is not half pronounced, and consequently the *Rhyme* is imperfect, or the Accent must be wrongfully laid upon the last Syllable, which must make the Reader appear to be an Ignorant Person.

A whole or perfect *Rhyme* is, where there is a Similitude of Sound without any Difference, or in other Words, where there is a thorough Identity of Sound, which appears in pronouncing the two Syllables which make the *Rhyme*, though perhaps they may differ something in the Orthography ; as in these Lines of the fore-mentioned Verses of *Waller* ;

*Carlisle, a Name which all our Woods are taught,
Loud as their Amaryllis, to resound :
Carlisle, a Name which on the Bark is wrought
Of every Tree that's worthy of the Wound.*

Now here *Taught* and *Wrought*, though they differ in the Orthography, yet agree perfectly in the Pronunciation, which latter ought chiefly if not solely to be regarded in framing the *Rhymes*. The two Lines of *Waller* immediately following the four which were last mentioned have a perfect *Rhyme*, whose Syllables agree both in Orthography and Pronunciation.

*From Phoebus Rage, our Shadows and our Streams
May guard us better, than from Carlisle's Beams.*

But these perfect *Rhymes* are more or less sweet, or more or less sonorous, as they are more or less composed of *Mutes* and *Liquids*, or *Vowels* or *Diphthongs*.

Thus, Sir, in complaisance to you, have I gone through the four Things which have been thought to conduce to the Harmony of modern *Poetry*, which are Numbers, Measure, Cadence, and *Rhyme* ; of these the three first consist of several different Sounds which are dependent one of another.

Rhyme, as I observed heretofore, is wholly Independent of the other three, and consists in the greater *Poetry*, but
of

of two Sounds which are Unisons. Now Unisons can make no Harmony, which must always consist in the Agreement of different Sounds. So that *Rhyme* consisting of Unisons, can have no Harmony in it self, and being Independent of Numbers, Cadence, and Measure can never promote the Harmony which they produce. And a Poet's constant Application to *Rhyme* diverts his Attention in a great Degree from Numbers, Measure, and Cadence, and consequently is a severe Restraint upon the three Producers of Harmony. And as it diverts the Application of the Writer so by seizing the Attention of vulgar Readers, it diverts them from the other three. Thus you have what I have been able to write upon this Subject, during a great and dangerous Indisposition: I shall be glad if it proves either useful or agreeable to you.



A

P R A X I S

O N T H E

G R A M M A R.

HAVING finished the *Grammar*, I thought it might be necessary to add a few Pages relating to the *Praxis*, *Practice*, or Use of the *Parts of Speech*, and the Joining of Words together in a Sentence. And I shall first speak of the *Distinction* of one Part of Speech from another. In these Sentences following tell me what Part of Speech every Word is, and why :

Good Boys love good Books. Where is the School? We will go with you to the Temple. I walk in the Shade because it is pleasant. The Book is published. I saw a prancing Horse.

What Part of Speech is *Good*? A *Noun Adjective*, because it shews the *Manner of a Thing*; (See Page 51.) *Boys*, is a *Noun Substantive*, because it signifies the Thing it self; (See Page 51.) It is the *Plural Number*, *s* being added, to it; as, *Boy, Boys*; (See Page 58.) *Love* is a *Verb Active* because it signifies *doing*; (See Page 130.) *Good*, is an *Adjective*, as before. *Books*, is a *Substantive*, as before. *Where*, is an *Adverb*: (See Page 179.) And it is an *Adverb of Place*; (See Page 180.) *Is*, is a *Verb Essential* or *Neuter*, because it signifies *Being*; (See Page 130, and 175.) *The*, is an *Article*, (or *Adjective*) (See Page 77.) *School*, is a *Substantive*, as before; (Page 51.) *We*, is a *Pronoun*, because it is put instead of a *Noun*; (See Page 118.) *Will*, is a *Helping Verb*, (Page 146.) *Go*, is a *Verb*, as before, (Page 129, and

130.) *With*, is a *Preposition*, because it shews the *Relation* or *Respect* that one Thing has to another; (Page 85, and 104.) *You*, is a *Pronoun*; (Page 118, and 119.) *To*, is a *Preposition*, as before, (Page 85.) *The*, an *Article*, as before; (Page 77.) *Temple*, a *Substantive*, as before, (Page 51.) *I*, a *Pronoun*; (Page 118.) *Walk*, is a *Verb Neuter*, because the *Action* does not pass on some other Thing, (Page 176.) *In*, is a *Preposition*, (Page 85, and 96.) *The*, as before. *Shade*, is a *Substantive*, (Page 51.) *Because*, is a *Conjunction*, for it joins Sentences together, (Page 184.) *It*, is a *Pronoun*, (Page 118, and 119.) *Is*, a *Verb Neuter*, as before. *Pleasant*, is an *Adjective*, (Page 51.) *The*, as before. *Book*, as before. *Is*, a *Verb Neuter*, as before. *Published*, is a *Participle*, (Page 141.) and, a *Participle Passive*, because it ends in *ed*, (Page 143.) *But*, is *Published*, being taken together, is called a *Verb Passive*, (Page 169.) *I*, is a *Pronoun*, as before. *Saw*, a *Verb Active*, (Page 130.) *A*, is an *Article*, (or *Adjective*) (Page 77.) and a *Numeral Article*, (Page 77.) *Prancing*, is a *Participle*, (Page 141.) and an *Active Participle*, (Page 142.) *Horse*, a *Substantive*, (Page 51.)

The Second Praxis.

This and the two following Praxis's are from Dr. Wallis, with Additions.

The LORD'S PRAYER.

OUR Father which art in Heaven: Hallowed be thy Name :
 Thy Kingdom come : Thy Will be done, in Earth, as it is
 in Heaven : Give us this Day our daily Bread : And forgive
 us our Trespases, as we forgive them that trespass against us :
 And lead us not into Temptation ; But deliver us from Evil.
 For thine is the Kingdom, the Power and the Glory, for ever
 and ever. Amen.

The] Is an *Article Demonstrative*, (Page 78, Line 27.) and answers to *Le* of the French : It denotes or signifies the Determination or fixing the Sense of one or more Particulars, and it shows what Particular you Mean, (Line 17.) So, *the Lord*, is put by Way of Eminence : Namely, *our Saviour Jesus Christ*.

Lord]

Lord] Is a Noun Substantive, (Page 51, l. 1.) It has no Difference of Cases, except the *Genitive*, (Page 65, l. 14.) It is a Contraction of the *Saxon Alaford*, afterwards *Loverd*.

Lord's] The final or ending *S*, is the Letter that forms or makes the *English Genitive Case*, (Page 65, l. 2.) It answers to the *Genitive Case* of the *Latins*, and signifies the *Author*, (l. 9.)

Prayer] Is a Noun Substantive.

N. B. It answers to the *French Priere*, to the *Italian Preghiera*: And the Verb to *pray*, is in *French prier*, in *Italian pregare*: All which Words come from the *Latin precari*.

The Lord's Prayer] That is; the Prayer of the Lord.

Our] Is a Pronoun Possessive put for the first Person of the Plural Number, (Page 121, l. 9.) It is *Our*, not *Ours*, because the Substantive *Father* is expressed, (Line 19.) The Pronouns *my*, *thy*, *our*, &c. are to be used when they are joined to Substantives. *Our*, like other Adjectives, has no Difference of Cases, Genders, or Numbers, (Page 107, l. 4.)

N. B. *Our*, comes from the *Saxon Owre, ure*, for which the *Germans* say *Uor*, which seems to be made from *we*, as it were, *weer*; as from *You* and *They*, are formed *Your*, *Their*: And from *She*, (the *S* being cast away) comes *Her*; For what we call *She*, the *Saxons* call *Seo*, and *Heo*; and *Hoo* is used in some Parts of *England* for *She*.

Father] Is a Noun Substantive, (Page 51.)

N. B. It comes from the *Latin Pater*, or rather the *Greek Πατήρ*, *Pater*; but through the Mediation of the *Saxon Foeder*, the *Danish Fader*, the *German Vatter*, the *Dutch Vader*, whose *D* is often changed in our Tongue into *Th*, and their *V* into *F*. It has some Allusion or Likeness to the *Danish Feder* (to nourish) whence our *to feed*, and hence *Food*, and *Foder* chiefly taken for the Aliment of Beasts; Hay, &c. But this Word does not come to us through the Mediation of the *French*, as a great many of our Words do; with whose *Pere* our Word *Father* has no Affinity.

Which] Is a Relative, (Page 124, l. 26.) It is spoken both of Things and Persons, (though chiefly of Things;) as

who and *whom* are used when we speak of *Persons*, (Page 124, l. 20.) And *Who* would have been in this Place more proper, because it speaks of a *Person*, and is now a-days more frequently used. Hence it is, that in our *English Liturgy*, or *Common Prayer-Book*, where formerly they used *which*, it is in the latter Editions changed almost always into *who* or *whom*, as being more elegant when we speak of *Persons*. But in this Prayer of our Lord, it has not been thought convenient to vary from the received Form, which is so very Familiar with the common People. N. B. For *Which*, they formerly said, *whilk*, as the *Scotch* do now, or else *Quilk*; the *Saxons*, *Hwilk*; the *Danes*, *Hvilk*; the *Germans* *Welch*, *Welche*; the *Dutch* *welk*, *welke*; the *French* *Quel*, *quelle*; all from the *Latin* *Qualis*; as from *Quo*, comes *Who*, from *Quando* *Whan*, *When*; and perhaps from *Quare*, *Where* and *Where fore*. For the *Welch* used *Chw* for the *Latin* *Qu*, the *Saxons* *Hw*, and *We Wh*. For, *who*, the *Saxons* said *Hwa* and *Hua*; the *Dutch*, *wie*; and for, *what*, the *Saxons* said *Hwat*, the *Dutch* *wat*, the *Germans* *was*, the *Danes* *Hwad*; all from the *Latin* *Quid* or *Quod*.

Art.] Is a Verb *Essential* or *Neuter*, (Page 130, l. 1.) It is the second Person Singular of the Verb *Am*, (Page 153, l. 15.) It is the second Person Singular, because it agrees with *thou* understood, p. 228, l. 14. For *thou* is the *Nominative Word* of the second Person Singular, p. 119, l. 15. N. B. This Verb is very irregular, p. 153, l. 12. *Am*, comes from the *Saxon* *Eom*, which perhaps came from *ēmi*, *eimi*, whence the *Latin* *Sum*, (*S* being often prefixed, instead of a *Spirit* or *Aspiration*.) *Art*, from the *Saxon* *Eart*, though Dr Wallis says, that from *Am* come *are* and *art*, which is a *Contraction* of *ar'st*, (for *st* is the *Termination* or *Ending* of the second Person Singular, p. 133, l. 7.) *Is*, from *Eſt*, or *ēst*, *est*.

In.] A *Preposition*, p. 96, l. 34. and p. 97, l. 6. But we do all by the Help of *Prepositions*, which the *Greeks* and *Latins* did, partly by *Prepositions*, and partly by the *Diversity* or *Difference* of *Cases*, p. 86, l. 23.

Heaven] A *Noun Substantive*, p. 51. N. B. It comes from the *Saxon* *Hefen*, *Hefon*, *Heofen*, which perhaps is from their *Heafian* to lift up, and this from *Heah*, whence our *high*. Also from their *Heafian*, comes our Word to *heave*,

to lift up on high ; whence the *Participle*, Heaved, p. 141, l. 28. It is a *Participle Passive*, p. 157, l. 4. Which in the old Form did end in *En*, as *Heaven* lifted up, p. 143, l. 4. Hence *Heaven* signifies something *high* or *lifted up*.

Hallowed.] A *Participle Passive* which ends in *ed*, p. 153, l. 3. By the Help of which *Participle* and the Verb *Am* or *Be*, we express what the *Latin Grammarians* call the *Passive Voice*. Of the Formation of the *Verb Passive*, see p. 169, l. 1. N. B. *Hallowed* comes from the Verb *to hallow*, that is, to sanctify or consecrate, from *holy*, or rather the old Word *haly*: And to this Day, the *Abbey* of the *Holy Cross* near *Edinburgh* in *Scotland*, is called *Haly-Rood-House*, i. e. *The House of the Holy Cross*. For *Rood* or *Rude* is a *Cross*; and *Haly-Rood-Day*, is the Day of exalting or showing the *Holy Cross*: But the Word *Rood* is now become obsolete, or out of Use, for which we use *Cross* from the *French Word Croix*. As from the *Saxon Cricce*, we say *crutch*, *crook*, *crooked*. So the *Temple* or *Church* of *All Saints*, is called *All-Hallows-Church*. And the *Feast* of *All-Saints*, is called *All-Saints-Day*, and also *All-Hollon-Day* and *All-Hollon Tide*; *Tide* being an old Word for any set Time. Our *Haly* or *Holy*, comes from the *Saxon Halig*, *Halga*: For which the *Germans* use *Heylig*, the *Dutch*, *Heyligh*. But the Word *Hallow* is now out of use, for which we put in its Place the *French Word* *to sanctifie*, from the *Latin sanctifico*: And for *All-Hallows*, we say *All-Saints*. though several Churches in *London* are yet called by that Name. But this Word is still retained in the *Lord's Prayer*, because it has been an ancient *Formula* or *Expression*.

Be.] Is a Verb from *Am*, and is used here in an *Imperative* or *Commanding* or *Bidding* (i. e. *praying*) Sense, p. 154, l. 1. And therefore it is put before the *Nominative Word*, p. 226, l. 1. How the *Imperative Manner* is expressed, see p. 171, l. 22.

Thy.] Is a *Pronoun Possessive*, p. 121, l. 8. It is put for *Thou* the second Person-Singular. It is *Thy* and not *Thine*, because it does not come before a Word beginning with a Vowel, and because the *Substantive* is not left out, p. 121, l. 17. N. B. It comes from the *Saxon*, *Thim*, the *Germans*, *Dein*, *Dutch*, *Diin* — *Thou* comes from the *Saxon* *Thu*, for which the *Germans* and *Dutch* say *Du*; all which

come from the *Latin Tu*, or the *Dorick* (i. e. *Greek*) *τὺ* for *οὐ*.

Name.] A Substantive. N. B. For *Name* the Saxons say *Nama*; the *Germans*, *Name*, *nahm*, *nahme*; the *Dutch*, *Naem*; the *Danes*, *Naffn*; the *French*, *Nom*; the *Italians*, *Nome*: All which Words come from the *Latin Nomen*, or the *Greek ὄνομα*, *onoma*, or rather from the *Hebrew*, *Naam*, *dixit*, *he said*. But this Sentence might be thus placed, *Hallowed be thy Name*, as it is in this Place; or, *Thy Name be hallowed*, (as in the next Clause, *Thy Will be done*) or *Be thy Name hallowed*. But the first Way is the best.

Thy] As before.

Will.] A Substantive, from the Verb *to will*, or else this may come from that. They wrote formerly *wolle*, whence the *Preter Tense*, *would*, i. e. *wolled*, p. 140, l. 13. *Will* was called among the Saxons *Willa*, among the *Danes* *Villie*, among the *Germans* and *Danes* *wille*, and so it was formerly written among us *English*, before the Custom of leaving out the final *E* after a double *ll* prevailed: All which come from the *Latin Volo*; for the *V* Consonant of the *Latins* used to be changed into the *English W*, which was formerly of the same Sound with the *V* Consonant of the *Latins*, before it degenerated into the *Eolick Digamma F*, p. 187, l. 17. As, *Via* Way, *Vinum* Wine, *Ventus* Wind, *Venio* Wend, (an old Word,) *Veni* Went, *Vespa* Wasp, *Vado* Wade, *Vago* Wag, *Vacillo* Waggle, *Vallum* Wall, *Volvo* Wallow, *Ovis* Ewe, *Versus* Ward, *Vasto* Wast, *Veha* Weigh, *Veha* Wain Waggon, *Vidua* Widow, *Va* Wea Wo, *Vellus* Wooll, *Vermis* Worm, &c. But those Words which retain the *V* Consonant founded after the modern Way, were afterwards taken into our Language, rather by the Intervention of the *French Tongue*, than of the *Teutonical*, or any of its *Dialects*. So that from *Vanesco*, *Varni*, is derived to *Wane* (an old Word) which is of a *Teutonical* or *Saxon* Original; but *to Vanish* of a *French*. So likewise *Worth* and *Vertue* are both from *Vir-tus*; *Wicked*, *Wickedness*, *Vice*, *Vicious*, from *Vitiosus*, *Vitium*; *Win* and *Vanquish* from *Vinco*.

Be.] As before.

Done.] It would be better written *Do'n* or *Doer*, for it is the *Participle Passive* from *to doe*, p. 157, l. 4. p. 159, l. 18.

In.]

In.] As before.

Earth.] A Substantive. N. B. By the Saxons it is called *Eard, Eord, Eorth*; by the Germans, *Erd, Erde*; by the Dutch, *Erd, Aerd, Aerde*; by the Danes, *Ford, Forden*: All from the Greek *ἔργον*, unless any had rather derive them from the Arabick *Arda*, or the Hebrew *Arets*.

At.] An Adverb, p. 182. It comes perhaps from the Greek *ὤς*.

It.] A Pronoun of the third Person Singular, p. 119, l. 19. It is spoken of a Thing that is neither of the *Male* nor *Female Sex*, p. 119, l. 8. For when we speak of the *Male Sex* we say *He*, if of the *Female Sex* we say *She*. N. B. It comes from the Saxon *Hyt*, or the Latin *Id*.

Is.] Is a Verb Neuter, the third Person Singular of *Am*, *I am, thou art, he is, &c.* *Is*, is the third Person Singular, because the Nominative Word is so, p. 228, l. 14. *Is*, is used, and not *Be*, because it is put in an *Indicative Sense*, and not in an *Imperative* or *Subjunctive*, nor after the Conjunctions *If, Whether, &c.*

In Heaven.] As before.

Give.] A Verb; it is used in an *Imperative Sense*, the Pronoun *Thou* being left out, for *Give thou*. N. B. In the Saxon *Gifan, Agyfan, Geofyan*, is *to give*: And the English did formerly write *Gyf*; for *V* Consonant with that Sound has been but lately introduced. Hence comes a *Gift* or *Guift*, as it were *gived*; for as from *leave* comes *left*, So from *Give* comes *Gift*. In Saxon it is *Gife, Gift, Geoft*; in German, *Gaba*; in Dutch, *Gifte*.

Us.] Is the following State of the Pronoun *We*, and it is thus put, because it follows the Verb *Give*, or rather the Preposition *To* understood, p. 120, l. 10. *Give us* is used by an *Ellipsis* for *give to us*, p. 103, l. 7. N. B. The Saxons say *Us*; the Germans, *Uns*; the Dutch, *Ons*.

This.] Is an Adjective, p. 123, l. 14. And it is a demonstrative Adjective, p. 124, l. 6. *This*, makes in the Plural *These*, p. 124, l. 1. *This*, is spoken both of *Persons* and *Things*, p. 124, l. 16. The Saxons say *This, These, &c.*

Day.] A Noun Substantive. But *this Day* is spoken for *in this Day*, by an *Ellipsis*; as *Hodie* in Latin for *Hoc Die*, for *in hoc Die*. N. B. The Saxons for *Da* say *Dæg*, the Dutch,

Dutch, Dag; the *Danes, Dag*; the *Germans, Tag*; all from the *Latin Dies*.

Our.] As before.

Dayly.] An Adjective from the Substantive *Day*, it signifies what we have *every Day*, or what is *sufficient for a Day*.

Bread.] A Substantive. N. B. The *Saxons* say *Bread*, the *Germans, Brodt*; the *Dutch, Broodt*; the *Danes, Brod*.

And.] A Conjunction, p. 184. It is a *Copulative*, and joins Sentences together, p. 185, l. 16. N. B. The *Saxons* say *And*, the *Dutch, Ende*; the *Germans, Unde*.

Forgive.] A Verb, used in an *Imperative Sense*. *For*, in Composition, denies or deprives, p. 214. N. B. The *Saxons* say *Forgefan*; the *Germans, Vergeben*; the *Dutch, Vergeven*.

Us.] As before.

Our.] As before.

Trespasse.] A Noun Substantive, *s* is added to make the Plural Number, from *Trespasse*, p. 58, l. 3. But it is made by this Addition a Word of three Syllables, because if the Sound of the Vowel were not pronounced, the last *s* would not be heard, p. 58, l. 15. *Trespasse* is a *French Word* from *trans*, beyond, and *passer*, to go, that is, a going beyond the Bounds set for us to observe. *Wrong*, is more an *English Word* than, *Trespas*.

As.] As before.

We.] A Pronoun, and in the *foregoing State*, because it comes before the Verb *Forgive*, p. 120, l. 7.

Forgive.] A Verb, the Ending in the Plural Number is never changed, p. 133, l. 2.

Them.] Is the *following State* of *They*. See the Table, p. 122, l. 8. It is *Them*, and not *They*, because it follows the Verb, p. 120, l. 10. N. B. For *They*, the *Saxons* say *Hi*, (perhaps from the *Latin hi* or *ii*, or rather the *Greek ōi*) the *Germans, Sie*. For *them*, the *Saxons* say *heom*, the *Dutch hem, hen*; and we, sometimes in Speaking, and sometimes in Writing, use *em*, or *um*, for *them*.

That.] An *Adjective Relative*, or an Adjective that has Relation to some other Word, and is used for *who* or *which*, p. 124, l. 3. It is spoken both of *Persons* and *Things*, p. 124.

Trespas]

Trespafs.] A Verb. It is used in a declaring (or as the *Latins* call it an Indicative) Manner, p. 136, l. 12. It is the *Present Tense* or *Time*, p. 130, l. 6. p. 131, l. 21. It is thus formed, *I Trespafs, Thou Trespassest, He Trespasseth*, Plural. *We Trespafs, Ye Trespafs, They Trespafs*, p. 161, l. 26. N. B. It comes from the Noun *Trespafs*.

Against.] A Preposition, p. 89, l. 4. What a Preposition is, see p. 85, l. 37. N. B. The *Saxons* say *Agen, Ongen*; the *Dutch*, *Tegen*; the *Germans*, *Gegen, Entgegen*.

Us.] As before.

And] As before.

Lead] A Verb. It is here used in an Imperative Sense, p. 171, l. 18. But the Nominative Word is left out; as, *Lead*, for *Lead Thou*. N. B. For, *Lead*, the *Saxons* say, *Leedan, aledan*; the *Dutch*, *leyden, leeden*; the *Germans*, *leyten*; the *Danes*, *Leder*.

Us.] As before.

Not.] An Adverb of denying, p. 181, l. 23. What an Adverb is, see p. 179, l. 6. When it is used absolutely, that is, not being joined to any other Word, we say *No*; p. 181, l. 24. But when it is joined to a Verb or Noun, we say *Not*; as, *Lead us not*, p. 181, l. 26. *Not*, is here put after the Verb, p. 182, l. 5. N. B. The *Dutch* say *Niet*, the *Germans*, *Nicht*.

Into.] A Preposition. *In* relates to rest, *Into* to Motion, p. 97, l. 3.

Temptation.] A Substantive. N. B. It comes from the *Latin*, *Tentatio*, which from *tento*, to tempt. *Ta try* is more *English*.

But.] A Conjunction, p. 186. What a Conjunction is, see p. 184.

Deliver.] A Verb, from the *French* *Delivrer*.

Us.] Is a following State of the Pronoun, because it follows the Verb *Deliver*, for *deliver we* would be false *English*.

From.] A Preposition, p. 96, l. 17. N. B. They formerly used *fro* for *from*; whence *froward*, that is, one that turns from others, that will not agree to Things: And as, *from*, is used in Opposition to, *To*; so *Froward*, is to *Toward*, and *Towardly*: *A toward Youth*, that is, a Youth that applies his Mind or Will to Things; fit, or made, for any

any Thing. We do also now say *to and fro*, for *to and from*; *hither and thither*. N. B. The Saxons, for *from*, say *fram*, *fra*; the Danes, *fra*.

Evil] Is an Adjective, but is here used as a Substantive, that is, without having another Word joined to it; as, *the Evil*, (*Thing or Person*) p. 109, l. 7. N. B. For *Evil*, the Saxons say *Efel*, *Yfel*; the Dutch, *Evel*; the Germans *Ubel*.

For.] Is here a Conjunction, p. 187, l. 14. There is also, *for*, a Preposition, p. 94, l. 22. N. B. It comes from the Saxon, *For*; the Germans say *Fur*; and the French, *pour*; all which come, though variously changed, from the Latin *pro*.

Thine.] A Pronoun. *Thine* is here used, and not *thy*, because the Substantive is left out; p. 121, l. 18. The natural Order of the Words is this, *The Kingdom is thine*, that is, *the Kingdom is thy Kingdom*; but because, *the Kingdom*, in the last Place is left out, therefore, *thine*, is used rather than *thy*: And the Words are put out of their natural Order, the Nominative Word, *the Kingdom*, being put after the Verb, *is*, that it might more smoothly and easily join with the following Words, *The Power* and *the Glory*. *Thine is the Kingdom*, that is, *Thou hast the Kingdom*.

Is.] A Verb, the Third Person Singular from *am*; and agrees with the Nominative Word *Kingdom*; See p. 128, l. 13.

The.] As before. But here it is used in an emphatical or expressive Manner, by Way of Eminence or Distinction; See p. 78, l. 29.

Kingdom.] A Substantive. It is a *Substantive Common*, p. 53, l. 7. It comes from *King*, by adding the Termination *dom*; and denotes the Kingly State or Government, and the Place governed, p. 197, l. 22. N. B. The Saxons for *Kingdom*, say *Cynedome*; the Dutch, *Koninckdome*; the Germans, *Konigreich*. N. B. The Saxons for *King*, say *Cyng*, *Cyning*, *Cynig*; the Danes, *Konning*; the Dutch, *Koningh*; the Germans, *Konig*. You may derive it from *Ken*, *to know*; or *Can*, *to be able*; or perhaps from the Hebrew *Chan*, a Prince or Governour. From hence also is *Chan* or *Cham*, the Title of the Prince of Tartary. And the same Title is common with the Persians. The Saxons for *Ken*, say *Cennan*, *Gonnan*, *Cunnan*; the Germans, *Konnen*; we also sometimes use

use *Ken*, but not so much as the *Scotch*, with whom it is very common. Hence comes *Cunning*; as, *A cunning Fellow*: Also *to Con*, that is, to learn a Thing well: And *Ale Conner*. *Can*, is of frequent Use among us, for which the *Dutch* say *Konnen*; the *Germans*, *Konnen*; *Ich Kan*, *I can*. But let a *King* come from *Ken*, or *Can*, it is certain that both *Prudence* and *Power* are necessary for that Dignity.

The] As before.

Power.] From the *French*, *Pouvoir*. But *Strength* is more an *English* Word.

And she.] As before.

Glory.] From the *French*, *Gloire*, and that from the *Latin*, *Gloria*.

For ever and ever.] *A Solemn Form*, for throughout all Ages or Times.

For.] Is a Preposition, p. 94, l. 22.

Ever.] Is originally an Adverb; but is used here as a Substantive, denoting an everlasting Duration: Dr. Wallis derives it from *Ævum*, * *Age*: As *Ay* and *Age*, from *αἰών*, *aiōn*: But it may be fetched as well from the *Saxon* *Aefre*, *ever*.

Amen.] The usual *Epilogue*, Conclusion or Ending of Prayers: It is a *Hebrew* Word, but common to almost all Languages.

The *Lord's Prayer* in its natural Order, with the Words that are left out.

(O) **O**UR Father which art in Heaven: Hallowed be thy Name (thy Name be Hallowed): (Let) thy Kingdom come; thy Will be done in Earth, as it is (done) in Heaven: Give (thou to) us our daily bread (in) this Day: And forgive (thou to) us our Trespases, as we forgive (to) them (their Trespases) that trespass against us: And lead (thou) us not into Temptation; but deliver (thou) us from Evil: For the Kingdom is thine, the Power (is thine) for ever and ever. Amen.

* It is seldom right to derive a *Saxon* Word from a *Latin* one. There are but very few *Saxon* Words so derived; and these are new in their Language, perhaps taken up since their Conversion; from which Time they may have borrowed some Ecclesiastical Names.

The

The Second and Third Praxis.

The Apostle's CREED.

I Believe in God the Father Almighty, Maker of Heaven and Earth. And in Jesus Christ his only Son our Lord : Who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, Born of the Virgin Mary, suffered under Pontius Pilate, Was crucified dead and buried : He descended into Hell : The Third Day he rose again from the Dead : He Ascended into Heaven : And sitteth on the Right Hand of God The Father Almighty ; From thence he shall come to judge the quick and the Dead. I believe in the Holy Ghost : The Holy Catholick Church ; The Communion of Saints ; The Forgiveness of Sins ; The Resurrection of the Body ; And the Life everlasting. Amen.

The.] A Demonstrative Article added to the Substantive *Apostle's* : Or to *Apostle's Creed*, which is reckoned but as one Substantive, p. 78, l. 28. p. 67, l. 8.

Apostles.] *Apostle* is a Substantive. By the Addition of *S*, it is the Plural Number *Apostles*, p. 58, l. 3. and by the Addition of the other *S*, it is made as the Genitive Case, p. 65. * *Apostles's* ; but for better sound Sake, the first *S* is cut off, p. 66, l. 3. And an *Apostrophe* is added as *Apostle's*, p. 65, l. 13. N. B. *Apostle* comes from the Latin *Apostolus*, or the Greek *ἀπόστολος*, *Apostolos*, One that is sent. It is called the *Apostles Creed*, because it was, as some would have it, written by the *Apostles* ; or at least as it is agreeable to the Doctrine delivered by the *Apostles*, or a Compendium of it. But as my Worthy Pastor the

* That *Plural Genitive* is a great Impropriety, and without Foundation. See the Note in Page 66. The Creed should be stiled, not the *Apostle's Creed*, which would mean the Creed of some one Apostle, but the *Apostolical Creed*, or the Creed of the *Apostles*.

Learned

Learned Dr. WATERLAND has observed : It is well known to learned Men, that the *Creed*, called the *Apostles*, is no other than the *Roman Creed*. " It has obtained the Name " of the *Apostolick Creed*, (as a learned and accurate Author " observes *) for no greater or other Reason than this : " It was a Custom to call those Churches in which any " *Apostle* had personally taught, especially if he had resided " there any long Time, or had died there, *Apostolick Churches*. Of these there were a great many in the *Eastern Parts* ; *Jerusalem*, *Corinth*, *Ephesus*, *Antioch*, &c. " but in the *Western Parts*, none but *Rome*——So that any " one that in the *Western Parts* of the World spoke of the " *Apostolick Church*, was supposed to mean *Rome*——and " so their Bishop came to be called the *Apostolick Bishop* ; " their *See* the *Apostolick See*, their *Faith* the *Apostolick Faith* ; " and among the Rest, the *Creed* that they used, the *Apostolick Creed*, now called the *Apostles*."

Creed.] A Compendium or Abstract of Things to be believed. From the Verb *Credo*, I believe : Which is the initial or beginning Word of the *Creed* in *Latin*.

I.] A Pronoun of the first Person of the Singular Number, p. 119. l. 13. It is the Foregoing State of the Pronoun, because it comes before the Verb *believe*, p. 120, l. 6. N. B. In *Saxon* it is *Ich*, in *Dutch*, *Ich*; in *German*, *Ich*.

Believe.] A Verb. The *Present Tense*, or Time, I believe, or I do believe. *Be*, is a Preposition set before Verbs and Participles, &c. p. 213, l. 15. As in other Languages *Ge* and *Ghe*. N. B. *Believe* is in *Saxon* *Geleasan*, in *Dutch* *Gheleoven*, in *German* *Glauben*. And *Belief* is *Geleasa*, *Gheleove*, *Glaub*.

In God.] Or *on God*, in the same Sense. *In*, is a Preposition, p. 96, l. 33. *God*, is a Substantive. N. B. The *Saxons*, as we, say *God*; the *Danes*, *Gad*; the *Dutch*, *Goed*; the *Germans*, *Gott*, which they derive from the *German*, *Gutt*, *Good*.

The Father.] As before.

All-Mighty.] A Compounded Adjective, of *All*, and *Mighty*, i. e. *Powerful*. N. B. For *All*, the *Saxons* say *Æl*.

* Mr. Wall's Hist. of Inf. Bapt. Part 2. c. 9. p. 507.

Eal, Ealle, Alle ; the *Danes, Oll* ; the *Dutch, Al* ; the *Germans, Al*. All which come from the Greek ὅλος, *holos*. *Mighty*, is formed or made from the Substantive *Might*, by the Addition of *y* ; for from *Substantives*, by adding the Ending *y*, are formed *Adjectives of Plenty*, or *Abounding*, p. 193. l. 28. And *Might* comes from *May*, for which the *Saxons* said *Maeg* ; the *Dutch, Mach* ; the *Germans, Mag*. So the *Saxons* for *Might*, said *Mikre, Maekt, Meah* ; the *Germans* and *Dutch, Macht* ; the *Danes, Maet*. So for *Mighty*, the *Dutch* say *Machtigh* ; the *Germans, Machtig*. So for *All-mighty*, the *Dutch* say *Almachtich* ; the *Germans, Allmachtig* ; the *Danes, Allmeestig*.

Maker.] A Substantive, signifying the *Doer* ; for from *Make*, comes the Verbal Substantive *Maker*, by adding the Ending *er*, p. 193. l. 23. N. B. For to *Make*, the *Saxons* say *Macan* ; the *Dutch, Maecken, Maken* ; the *Germans, Machen* ; the *Danes, Mager* : All which are from the *Latin Machinari*.

Of.] A Preposition, and answers to the Genitive Case of the *Latins*, p. 97. l. 30. N. B. Perhaps it comes from the *Latin ab*, or the *Greek ἀπό, apo*, or rather ἄφ, *aph* put for *apo*.

Heaven and Earth.] As before.

And in.] As before.

Jesus Christ.] *Jesus*, is a Proper Name, or a Substantive Proper, p. 53. l. 7. N. B. It signifies a *Saviour*. *Christ* is also a proper Name, and signifies *Anointed*.

His.] Is the Genitive Case of *He*, the Pronoun of the third Person Singular, and denotes the Male Sex, p. 119. l. 6. *His*, see the Table, p. 122. l. 5. N. B. The *Saxons* say *Hysse, Hise, His* ; perhaps it comes from the *Latin, Is*.

Only.] Is an Adjective in this Place ; for sometimes it is used *Adverbially*, p. 109. l. 10. N. B. It comes from *One*, for which the *Saxon* say *An, Aene* ; the *Dutch, Een* ; the *Germans, Ein* ; and the *Scotch ean, ane* ; all from the *Latin Unus*, or the *Greek εἷς, heis, εἷ, hen*. From *one* comes also *once* *. For any the *Saxons* said *Aenig*. Hence also *An*,

* In *Saxon ane* or *aene* ; and in the Genitive *anes, aenes*. From whence comes *ones, onis, onys*, in old Writings, which is now *once*. For then *ones*, or *then once*, which is now corruptly spoken and written for the *nonce*.

*, for which the *French* use *Un*. *An* and *One* have this Difference, that *An* is less Emphatical than *One*, p. 77, l. 23.

Son.] A Substantive. N. B. The Saxons say *Suna*; the Dutch, *Sone*; the Germans, *Sohn*; the Danes, *Son*, &c.

Our.] As before.

Lord.] A Substantive common, p. 53, l. 9. N. B. It is a Contraction of the Saxon *Hlaford*, which Dr. Wallis will have to come from *Hlaf*, whence our Word *Loaf* and *ford*, which we now call *afford*.

Who.] or *which*. *Who* is spoken of Persons only, *Which* of Things, p. 120, l. 27. and p. 124, l. 19.

Was.] The Preter time of the Verb *Am*, p. 153, l. 19. *I was*, *Thou wast*, &c. But here, *was*, being joined to the Participle *Conceived*, denotes the first Preter Time of the Passive Voice, as the *Latins* call it, p. 170, l. 1.

Conceived.] A Participle Passive, from the Verb *Conceive*, by the Addition of the formative Termination *Ed*, p. 143, l. 4. N. B. *Conceive*, comes from the *French*, *Concevoir*, and that from the *Latin* *Concipio*.

By.] A Preposition, signifying the Efficient Cause, p. 93, l. 21.

The Holy Ghost.] *The*, as before. *Holy*, see *Hollowed*. *Ghost*, is a Substantive, it signifies *Spirit*, which Word we now use instead of *Ghost*. Though it is yet retained, from antient Custom, as the Title of the *Holy Spirit*, least the common People should think there was some Change or Innovation in the Doctrine, if the Name was altered. But we do also say the *Holy Spirit*. N. B. But *Ghost* comes from the Saxon *Gast*, which the Dutch and Scotch call *Ghest*; the Germans, *Geyst*. To this, the Word *Gust* has some Relation, denoting a violent Blast of Wind. But the Word *Ghost* is now more frequently used to denote some Spectre or Apparition: For they thought formerly, as some do now a days, that *Ghosts* or *Apparitions* were very often seen, especially near Church-Yards and Sepulchers, and that they were the wandering Souls or Spirits of Dead Persons that had been murdered, or that had hid Treasures which were not yet found out. From the Substantive *Ghost* by the Addition of *ly*, comes the Word *Ghostly*, that is, *Spiritual*, p. 195, l. 9. which is now also more frequently used. Hence also comes *gastly*, terrible, fright-

ful, like a Ghost, or like a dead Corps; for a gasty Look is chiefly said of the Countenance of a dying Person. Also *A-gast* affrighted, as it were at the Sight of a Ghost. To gaze, that is, to look attentively upon a Thing, as on somewhat new or unusual, from the Greek *ἀγαζόμεαι*, *agazomai*, to wonder or admire.

Born.] A Participle Passive from *to bear*, which makes in the Preter Tense *Bare* or *Bore*, p. 159, l. 4. Table II. Whence comes the Participle *Boren*, p. 157, l. 1. which by Contraction is made *Bor'n Born*. N. B. Hence comes a *Bairn*, *Barn*, a Son, or Child, (a Word common with the Scotch, and our North-Country-Men;) also hence the Noun *Birth*, as it were *Bear'th* or *Beareth* the third Person of the Verb *to bear*. To breed as a *breeding Woman*, or to breed up, that is, to educate; also *Breed*, Offspring; *Brat*, *Brood*, as a Brood of Chickens, and to brood, have some Relation to this Word *bear*.

Of.] A Preposition, p. 97.

The Virgin.] A Substantive. N. B. It comes from the Latin, *Virgo*. *Mayd*, *Maid*, or *Maiden*, is more an English Word, which the Saxons call *Moeden*, *Moegden*; the Dutch, *Maecht*, *Maeght*, *Maeghd*; the Germans, *Magd*.

Mary.] A Substantive proper, p. 53. l. 7.

Suffered.] The Preter Tense of the Verb *to suffer*, which is made by adding the Ending *Ed*, p. 134. l. 22, and 24. and it is thus formed, *I suffered*, &c. p. 162. l. 5. N. B. *Suffer* comes from the Latin *Suffero*. *Bear*, *bare*, is more an English Word.

Under.] A Preposition, p. 103.

Pontius Pilate.] Substantives proper.

Was.] As before.

Crucified.] A Participle Passive from *crucify*. *Was crucified* is the first Preter Tense of the Passive Verb, see p. 170. l. 1. N. B. It comes from the French, *Crucifier*, which from the Latin, *Crucifigo*.

Dead.] An Adjective from *to dy*, whence also *Death*, p. 193. l. 7. N. B. The Saxons said *dead*; the Dutch, *dood*; the Danes, *dod*; the Germans, *tot*, *todt*.

And.] As before.

Buried.] A Participle, from *to bury*; *was buried*, is also the first Preter Tense of the Passive Verb, p. 170. l. 1. N. B.

N. B. The Saxons say *Birian, Birygean, Byrigan, Bebyrgean, Belyrigian*, to bury, and *byrged, buried*, from *Beerg*, a *Hillock* or *Heap*, which has some Affinity with the *Germans Berg*, a *Hill*. But the *Dutch* say *Begrave*, the *Germans*, *Be-gräben*, from *Graf, Grab*, which we call *Grave*.

He.] A Pronoun of the third Person Singular, p. 119, l. 16. It is the *Nominative Word* to the Verb.

Descended.] The first *Preter Time* of the Verb *Descend*, p. 131, l. 22. See the Formation of it, p. 162. l. 3. N. B. It comes from the *Latin Word descendo*, to descend, that is, to go down, *descended*, i. e. *went down*, (from the old Word *wend*) p. 160. l. 1. Of the Sense of, *De*, in Composition, see p. 216. l. 18.

Into.] A Preposition, p. 96.

Hell.] A Substantive. N. B. The Saxons say *Helle*; the *Dutch* and *Germans*, *Hell, Helle*: Which come from the *Saxon Hellan*, to cover, whence also our Word to *heal*; or else from the *Saxon, Hol, Hole, Hule*, or the *Dutch* and *German, Hol*, which answer to our, *Hole*. It answers to *Sheel* * of the *Hebrews*, and *ᾍδης, Hades*, of the *Greek*; which Words are used for the *Grave*, as well as for *Gehenna* the Place of the Damned: Or here it is rather put indefinitely for the *State of the Dead*, which seems to be the Sense of it in this Place.

The.] As before.

Third.] Is an Adjective, and is called an *Ordinal Number*, as, *Three*, is a *Cardinal Number*, p. 80. l. 7, and l. 4. N. B. For, *Three*, the Saxons said *Thri, Thrig, threo, thridda, thriddle*; the *Dutch*, *Drie, Dry, Dryde, Derde*; the *Germans* *Trey, Drey*, for *Three*; *Dritta, Tritte, Dritt*, for *Third*; all from the *Latin Tres, Tertius*, or rather from the *Greek*.

Day.] A Substantive. The *third Day* is put by an *Ellipsis*, p. 225. l. 9. for in the *third Day*, or on the *third Day*. N. B. For *Day* the Saxons said *Doeg*; the *Dutch*, *Dagh*; the *Danes*, *Dag*; the *Germans*, *Tag*.

* From whence it seems to be derived, the Change being only from the hissing *S* to the aspirate, which is natural and frequent.

He.] As before. It is the *Nominative Word* to the Verb, and comes before the Verb, p. 225. l. 9.

Rise.] Is the Preter Tense of the Verb *to rise* ; it is an irregular Preter Tense, p. 160. N. B. *To rise* or *arise*, comes from the Saxon *Arisan*. The Dutch use the Word, *Opstaen*, in the same Sense, that is, *Up-stand* or *stand up* ; but *to raise* is to make *to rise*.

Again.] An Adverb, from the Saxon, *Agen*.

From.] A Preposition, as before.

The Dead.] Here, as also before, the Substantive *Persons* or *People* may be understood.

He.] As before.

Sitteth.] Is the third Person Singular Present Tense, of the Verb *to sit* ; for the third Person of the Present Tense generally endeth in *eth*, p. 133. l. 10. It is the third Person Singular, because the Nominative Word, *He*, is so, p. 228. l. 13. *He*, is the third Person, p. 119. l. 15. *He*, is here left out, because it was mentioned just before ; as, *He ascended into Heaven, and (He) sitteth*, &c. p. 236. l. 12. N. B. *To sit*, in Saxon, *Sutan* ; in Dutch, *Sitten* ; in German, *Sitzen* : All from the Latin, *Sedeo*, or the Greek $\epsilon\zeta\omega$, *bezo*. And the Greek $\epsilon\zeta\omega$, $\iota\zeta\omega$, *bezo*, *hizo*, have the same Signification as our *to sit*, and *to set*.

On or *At.*] A Preposition, p. 99. and p. 90. *On*, signifies *at* or *nigh* : For we say *at the Right Hand*, or *on the Right Hand*.

The Right Hand.] *Right*, is an Adjective, and agrees with the Substantive *Hand*, p. 107, l. 4. and it is placed before the Substantive, p. 107, l. 14. N. B. *Right*, in the Saxon, *Riht* ; in Dutch and German, *Recht* ; and in Latin, *Rectus* ; from whence those Words do also come, the Italian *Ritto*, and the French *Droit*, or *Droict*, as it were *Directum*. *Right*, has several Senses ; as, *Right and Left* ; *Right and Crooked* ; *Right and Sloping, or Leaning* ; *Right and Wrong*, &c. *Hand*, is a Substantive ; perhaps it was formerly *Gandt*, whence the French *Gant* and *Gantlet*. Goropius Becanus, is of this Opinion, who will have the Greek $\gamma\iota\gamma\alpha\lambda\alpha$, a Giant, to be of the German Original ; as it were *Gi-gant*, or *Wide-gant*, i. e. *Wide-hand*.

Of God the Father Almighty.] As before.

From thence.] *From*, is a Preposition, p. 96. What a Preposition is, see p. 85. It is here added to the Adverb *Thence*, p. 86, l. 10. *From*, is here a Sort of *Expletive*, p. 190, l. 9, and l. 13. *Thence*, is an *Adverb of Place*, and signifies as much as *from that Place*, p. 180, l. 34. For *Hence*, *thence*, *whence*, in some Places they say, *Herence*, *Therence*, *Wherence* : But this Manner of Expression is not to be imitated.

He shall come.] *He*, as before. *Shall*, is a *Helping Verb*, p. 145, and p. 146. It is thus formed, *I shall*, *thou shalt*, *he shall* ; Plural, *We shall*, &c. p. 147. *Shall*, and *Will*, denote the *Future Time*, or the *Time to come*, p. 147. *Shall*, in the third Person, does here *promise*, but sometimes it *commands* or *threatens*, p. 147, l. 16. and 18. *Come*, is a Verb ; when two Verbs come together, the latter has the Preposition, *to*, placed before it, p. 175. (This the *Latins* call the *Infinitive Mood* ;) but after the *Helping Verb*, (such a one is, *shall*,) and some few other Verbs, the Preposition *to* is left out, p. 146, l. 1. *Come*, makes in the *Preter Time*, *Came*, p. 159, l. 15. N. B. *Come*, is in *Saxon* *Coman*, *Cyman* ; in *Dutch*, *Komen* ; in the *German*, *Kommen* ; in *Greek* *ἵναμιαι*. This *Infinitive Manner*, which we express by setting the Preposition *to* before the Verb, the *Latins* did by the *Infinitive Mood* ; the *Danes*, by the Ending *er* ; the *Saxons*, by the Ending *an* ; and the *Dutch* and *Germans*, by the Ending *en*.

To judge.] Is the latter of two Verbs, and therefore has the Preposition, *to*, placed before it, p. 175, l. 7. This is called the *Infinitive Manner*. N. B. But *Judge*, *to judge*, *judgement*, (as *French* *Juge*, *juger*, *jugement*) are of *Latin* Original. *Deem* is more *English*, and *Doom* or *Dome* ; as, *Domes-day*, the *Day of Judgement* ; *Dooms-day Book*.

The Quick.] An Adjective, which is joined to its Substantive without any Difference of *Case*, *Gender*, or *Number*, p. 107, l. 4. *Men*, the Plural of *Man* is understood, p. 60, l. 4. *Quick*, is now a-days used chiefly to signify *Swift*, *nimble*, &c. but formerly (whence in the *Creed* it does now retain its antient Sense) it more often, and now it signifies *Alive* ; so that the *Quick* and *Dead*, is the *Living* and *Dead*. From *Quick*, comes the Verb *to Quicken*, p. 193, l. 14. But now for, *Quick*, we generally use, *Living*

ing and *Alive* ; the Saxons for *Quick* said *Cuice*, *Cuce*, (for *Q* was not very usual with them ;) the Dutch, *Quick* ; we say *Quick silver*, to pare the Nails to the *Quick*, &c.

And the Dead.] As before.

I believe in the Holy Ghost.] As before.

The Holy] As before.

Catholick] An *Adjective*, and signifies *General*, *Universal*. N. B. It is of a Greek Original *Catholicos*, in Latin *Catholicus* : The Saxons said *Allie*, from *Alle*, *Ael*, whence our Word *All*.

Church.] A Substantive. N. B. For which the North Britains say *Kirk*, the Dutch, *Kercke* ; the Germans, *Kirch*, *Kirche* ; the Saxons, *Cyric*. All which are contracted from the Greek *κυριακὸς*, *kuriakos*, *κυριακή*, *kuriake*, *δίκη*, or *οἰκία*, *oikos*, or *oikia*, being understood.

Communion.] A Substantive from the Latin, *Communio* ; for Words in *ion*, are made Latin by casting away *n* ; as, *Communion*, *Communio*, p. 212, l. 16.

Of Saints.] *Of*, is a Preposition. *Saints*, is a Substantive of the Plural Number, which is made by adding *S* to the Singular *Saint*, p. 58, l. 3. It is put into the Plural Number, because it is spoken of more than one *Saint*, p. 58, l. 1. N. B. *Saint*, comes from the French Word *Saint*, which from the Latin, *Sanctus*, *Holy*.

The Forgiveness.] A Substantive made from the Verb *Forgive*, by adding the Ending *ness*, p. 198, l. 10. Which Sort of Words are often formed from Adjectives, but very seldom from Verbs.

Of Sins.] *Sins*, is the Plural of the Substantive, *Sin*, and is made by adding *S*, p. 58, l. 3. N. B. The Saxons say *Sinne*, *Synne* ; the Dutch, *Sonde*, *Sunde* ; the Germans, *Sund*.

The Resurrection.] That is, the *Up rising*, or the *Rising again* ; it is a Substantive from the Latin, *Resurrectio*, p. 212, l. 16. The force of, *Re*, in Composition, see p. 219, l. 8.

Of the Body.] A Substantive from the Saxon, *Bodige*.

And the Life.] A Substantive. Hence comes the Verb to *Live*, p. 193, l. 6. Thence comes the Active Participle *Living*, p. 142, l. 13. and *Lively*, p. 195, l. 9. Also *Livelihoods*, or *Livelihoods*, i. e. without *Life*, p. 194, l. 21.

Everlasting.] It is a compounded Adjective, or a Word made up of the Adverb, *Ever*, and the Participle, *Lasting*, from the Verb *to last*, to continue or *abide*; and *to last*, comes from the Adjective *last*, p. 193, l. 6. Which is a Contraction of, *latest*, the Superlative Degree of, *Late*, p. 115, l. 4. Life everlasting, and the Father Almighty for everlasting Life, and the Almighty Father: Where you see the Adjective is put after the Substantive, p. 107, l. 8. N. B. The Saxons for *Late*, *Later*; *Latest*, or *La'st*; say *Late*, *Lator*, *Latre*; *Latest*, *Latost*. The Dutch say *Laet*, and from their *Loteren*, *Leutereren*, comes our *Loiter*, to delay, to spend one's Time idly.

Amen.] As before.

The Creed placed in the Order of Construction, or in the Natural Order, with the Ellipses's, or the Words that are left out.

I believe in Almighty God the Father (the) Maker of Heaven and Earth. And (I believe) in Jesus Christ his only Son our Lord; who was conceived by the Holy Ghost, (who was) Born of the Virgin Mary, (who) suffered under Pontius Pilate, (who) was crucified, (who was) dead, and (who was) buried; He descended into Hell; He rose again from the Dead (People) (in or on) the third Day; He ascended into Heaven; and (He) sitteth on the Right Hand of Almighty God the Father; from thence He shall come to judge the quick (People) and the dead (People). I believe in the Holy Ghost; (I believe) the Holy Catholick Church; (I believe) the Communion of Saints: (I believe) the Forgiveness of Sins: (I believe) the Resurrection of the Body: And (I believe) the Life Everlasting. Amen.

The Fourth PRAXIS.

THIS Praxis is added to shew the Beauty of our Language, which has Words wherein is to be found a great Likeness or Agreement in the Letters to the Thing signified:

signified: Likewise to show the peculiar Force or Expressiveness of a great many single Words.

A certain *French Gentleman* praising the Happiness of his Native Language, which had Words that implied a likeness to the Thing signified: At the same Time finding fault with the *English Tongue*, as not being able to do the like; he proposed the following Verses to *Dr. Wallis*.

*Quand un Cordier, cordant, vult corder une corde ;
Pour sa corde corder, trois cordons il accorde ;
Mais, si un des cordons de la corde descorde,
Le cordon discordant fait descorder la corde.*

Which *Dr. Wallis* thus rendered into *English Verse*, making use of the pure *English Word Twist* (contrary to the Expectation of the *French Gentleman*) instead of the *French Word Cord*.

*When a Twister, a-twisting, will twist him a twist ;
For the twisting of his twist, he three-twines doth intwist ;
But if one of the twines of the twist do untwist,
The twine that untwisteth, untwisteth the twist.*

Afterwards the *Doctor* added four Verses more.

*Untwirling the twine that untwisteth between,
He twirls, with his twister, the two in a twine ;
Then, twice having twisted the twines of the twine ;
He twitcheth, the twine he had twined, in twain.*

Afterwards he added four more.

*The twain, that in twining, before in the twine,
As twins were intwisted ; he now doth untwine.
'Twixt the twain inter-twisting a twine more between,
He, twirling his twister, makes a twist of the twine.*

O F

S P E E C H :

O R,

*Of the Formation or Genuine Sound of
all Letters : Written in Latin by the
Learne dDr. Wallis.*

S E C T. I.

Of Speech and its Affections.

EVERY Body knows that *Words* joined together make *Sentences*, and that *Syllables* joined together make *Words*, and that *Letters* joined together make *Syllables* : *Sentences* also are again resolved into *Words*, *Words* into *Syllables*, and *Syllables* into *Letters*. And seeing the *Analysis*, or Resolution of *Words* is terminated in the *Letters*, as it were in the first *Elements*, where the *Analysis* or Resolution can go no farther, (for which Reason the *Letters* are called Στοιχεῖα, *Stoichia*, or *Elements* by the *Grecians*) a *Letter* may be said to be a *simple* or *uncompounded* Sound in a *Word*, which cannot be divided into any more simple Sounds. And it is generally marked by a particular Character. But if any had rather have it, that a *Letter* is not a simple Sound it self ; but a *Character* which Marks a simple Sound ; he is at Liberty to enjoy his Opinion.

For

For the Greek Word Γράμμα, *Gramma*, *A Letter* comes from Γράφω, *Grapho*, a Word whence so which signifies to write; and the Latin Word *Litera*, *Letter*, comes either from *Lineando*, as *Scaliger* will have it, or, as the Word *Linea*, a *Line* does, from *Linendo*; so that both signify that which is written or marked on Paper.

But if there be any *Character* that does not entirely express a simple Sound, but a Sound composed or made up of two or more Sounds, and may be resolved into as many Sounds; we cannot so properly call that Character a *Letter*, as an *Abbreviation of several Letters*, or a *Contraction of Letters into one Note or Mark*, containing in it self so many Letters as its Power contains simple Sounds. This is plain and evident, from the Latin *Q*, *X*, the Greek *Ξ*, *Ψ*, *ς*, the Hebrew *ץ*, and others, for they are composed of *Ct*, *Cs*, *Ks*, *Πs*, *Στ*, *DU*.

On the other Hand, a simple Sound, although it be written perhaps by different Characters, is to be reckoned but as one Letter. For *Th*, *Ph*, are as well as *Θ*, *Φ*, but simple Letters.

The chief Instruments of Speech are the Lungs, the Larynx or Top of the Windpipe, with all the Parts adjacent, the *Aspera Arteria* or Windpipe also the Tongue, Nostrils, the Lips, and the several Parts of the Mouth.

The Breath or inspired Air, which does as it were furnish the Matter of the Voice or Speech, is blown from the Lungs through the Windpipe. For from the various Collision (striking together) of this Air or Breath, arises the Variety of Sounds, both as to their Tones and Articulation. And this Variety of Sounds comes not from the Lungs, but from other Causes, as we shall show afterwards. For all the Variation that Sounds receive from the Lungs, is only according to the greater or lesser Force, with which they send out the Breath, by which the Voice becomes more or less strong and sonorous or loud. For the Lungs perform in Speech, what the Bellows do in an Organ.

The Variety of Tones, as far as they relate to Gravity or Acuteness, that is, are flat or sharp, *Tones*. arises from the *Aspera Arteria* or Windpipe. For as in a *Tube* or *Flute*, so in the *Windpipe*, the longer and smaller it is, the *Tone* will be sharper, or smaller, and the larger and shorter it is, the graver and bigger will be the *Tone*. Hence proceeds, at least in some Measure, the Variety of Tones in the Voices of several Men, or even of the same Man in the different Ages of his Life: But this Variety of Tones, arises chiefly from the *Larynx* or Knot of the Throat. For, as the small Cleft or Chink of the *Larynx*, doth more or less open, the *Tone* of the Voice is more Grave or Flat, or Acute and Sharp. And this is the Seat of all musical Modulation.

From the same Place or Seat we must fetch the Reason of the Difference between a *soft Whisper* and loud or *open Talk*. For if in speaking, we make a tremulous Concussion of the *Larynx* and *Windpipe*, it produces, by Reason of their Extension, open or loud speaking; but when the *Larynx* and *Windpipe*, are less stretched, and more close, that Sound is commonly called *Whispering*.

But all the Letters are not capable of this Diversity or Difference of Sound, but only those which we call Vowels, Semivowels or Half-Vowels, Half-Mutes, and such as come from Half-Mutes: For P, T, C, (or K) and their Aspirates, never admit of that Concussion, nor is their Sound in open *Speech*, different from what it is in a *Whisper*.

To this Seat we may refer Hoarseness, often the Companion of a Catarrh, which hinders that Concussion of the *Larynx* and the *Windpipe*.

The Articulation of Words, or the Formation of the several Letters, then begins, after that the Breath has passed the *Larynx*: And is almost wholly performed by the Nostrils, Mouth, Tongue, and Lips.

But of the Letters, some are called Vowels, others Consonants.

S E C T. II.

Of the Vowels.

IF we judge by, or regard, the Characters only, the Number of *Vowels* is not the same among different Nations. But it is generally granted, that there are more Sounds of Vowels, than there are Characters to express them by. I therefore am of Opinion, that they ought to be distinguished into these three Classes, *Guttural* or Throat Sounds, *Palatine* or Sounds of the Palate, and *Labial* or Sounds of the Lips; as they are formed or made by the Throat, the Palate, or the Lips. To which the same Number of *Arabian* Vowels, *Phatha*, *Kezra*, *Damma* do answer, and which are formed in the same Seat or Parts; Also the three *Hebrew* Letters *ו* *Vau*, *י* *Jod*, *א* *Aleph*, which they call *Matres Lectionis*; and it is believed that they formerly, before the Invention of the Points, supplied the place of all the Vowels. *

* It is now more reasonably judged by Criticks that the *Hebrews* had five Vowels, *א* *Aleph*, *ה* *He*, *י* *Jod*, *ו* *Vau*, *י* *Ain*. Vid. *Thomasf. Gloss. Præf. p. 31, 32, 54*. Some add *ח* *Heth*, to the Number, making six in all, thus,

<i>א</i> ———	<i>a</i> short.
<i>ה</i> ———	<i>e</i> short.
<i>ו</i> ———	<i>ov</i> , or <i>u</i> .
<i>ח</i> ———	<i>e</i> long.
<i>י</i> ———	<i>i</i> ———.
<i>י</i> ———	<i>a</i> long, or <i>o</i> .

See *Memoirs of Literature*, vol. 2. p. 2.

But

But if we reckon the Number of Vowels, (as we ought to do) according to the Number of Vocal Sounds, as they are now a-days founded, their Number will be Nine, viz. Three in the *Throat*, three in the *Palate*, and as many in the *Lips*, according to the threefold Manner of opening the Mouth in those several Seats or Places; that is, by a *larger, middle, or less* Degree of opening it. The *Guttural* or *Throat* Letters are *Gutturals*. formed in the Top, or upper Part of the *Throat*, or in the lower Part of the *Tongue* and *Palate*, by a moderate Compression of the Air or Breath.

And if the Breath goes out with a larger or *à, ô, open* wide Opening of the Mouth; the *German a*, or the open *o* is formed. Neither do the *Germans* alone, but the *French* and some other Nations, most commonly pronounce their *a* with the same Sound. The *English* expresses that Sound, when short, by short *E*; but when it is long, by *au* or *aw*, but very seldom by *a*. For, in *fall, folly; call, collar; laws, loss; cause, cost; aw'd, odd; saw'd, sold*; and in many such like Words, there is the same Sound of the Vowels heard in both Syllables, only in the first it is long, and in the last the Sound is short.

In this same Place, but with a more moderate opening of the Mouth, is formed the *è Feminine*. *French E Feminine*, with an obscure Sound. Nor does the Formation of this Vowel differ, any other Ways, from the Formation of the foregoing open *A*, than that the Mouth is more contracted in this, than in the former, but less than in the Formation of the following Vowel *O*.

This Sound the *English* scarce any where own, unless when the short Vowel *E* immediately preceeds the Letter *R*; as, *Vertue, Liberal, Liberty, &c.* And this is thus founded, not because it ought to be so, but because it can scarce be pronounced otherwise; for one may, if it can be done without Trouble, pronounce *E* there, with a brisk or Masculine Sound.

In the same Seat, but with a less opening of the Mouth, is formed *ò, ü, Obscure*. *o* or *u* obscure: It differs from the *French e Feminine*, only in this, that the Mouth being less opened, the Lips come

nearer together. The *French* have this Sound in the last Syllable of the Words *Serviteur, Sacrificateur, &c.* The *English* do most commonly express this Sound by short *u* ; as, in *turn, burn, dull, cut, &c.* And sometimes pronouncing after a careless Manner, they express this Sound by *o* or *u* ; as in *Come, some, done, Company, Country, Couple, covet, Love,* and in some others, to which they ought to give another and more just Sound. The *Welsh* generally mark this Sound by *y*, only that they found this Letter in the last Syllables of Words, as *i*.

The *Palatine* Vowels are formed in the *Palatine*. late ; the Air or Breath being moderately compressed between the Middle of the *Palate* and *Tongue* : Namely, when the Hollow of the *Palate* is made less, by the Elevation, or Raising of the Middle of the *Tongue*, than it is in the Pronunciation of the *Guttural, or Throat* Letters. And these are of three Sorts, according as the said Hollow is enlarged or lessened : Which Diversity or Difference may be made two several Ways : Either by contracting the Mouth, the *Tongue* remaining in the same Posture ; or by lifting up the Middle of the *Tongue* higher, to the Fore-Parts of the *Palate*, the Mouth or Lips remaining in the same Posture or Position : But it is the same Thing which Way soever you do it, or if you do it both Ways.

The *English* slender *a*, is formed or made, à slender. by a greater Opening of the Mouth ; as in *Bat, bate ; Pall, pale ; Sam, same ; Dam, dame ; Bar, bare ; Ban, bane, &c.* This Sound differs from the flat or open *A* of the *Germans*, in this Respect, that the *English* raise up the Middle of the *Tongue*, and so compress the Breath or Air in the *Palate* ; but the *Germans* depress or keep down the Middle of the *Tongue*, and so compress the Breath or Air in the *Throat*. The *French* express this Sound, when *E* goes before *M* or *N* in the same Syllable, as in *Entendment, &c.* The *Welsh* pronounce their *A* with this Sound. In the same Seat, but with a moderate or lesser Opening of the Mouth, is è Masculine. formed the *French E Masculine*, with a brisk and sharp Sound, as the *English, Italians, Spaniards,* and others, are used to pronounce this Letter.

Letter. For it has a middle Sound, betwixt the foregoing Vowel (slender *A*) and that (slender *I*) which will immediately follow to be spoken of. The *English* expresses this Sound, not only by *E*, but also when it is made long, by *Ea*, and sometimes by *Ei*; as, *The, there, these, sell, seal, tell, teal, steal, set, seat, best, beast, red, read, receive, deceive.*

But the Words written with *ea*, would be more rightly pronounced, if to the Sound of *e* long, the Sound of the *English a* most rapidly pronounced, were added; as it is very probable they formerly were, and as they are still in the *Northern* Parts. And those Words which are written with *ei*, might be more rightly pronounced, if the Sound of each Letter were mixt in pronouncing.

In the same Seat, but yet with a lesser Opening of the Mouth, is formed slender *I*, which is very common among the *French, Spaniards, Italians*, and most other Nations. This Sound, when short, the *English* expresses by *I* short; but when it is long, they write it for the most Part, by *ee*, oftentimes by *ie*, and also by *ea*; as in *sit, see't, fit, feet, fill, feel, field, steel, ill, eel, in, Inne, sin, seen, friend, fiend, near, dear, hear, &c.* Although some of those Words that are written with *ea*, would be better written with double *ee*, and others with *e* Masculine, adding to it the Sound of slender *A*, very rapidly, or swiftly pronounced. The *Welsh* expresses this Sound not only by *I*, and in the last Syllable by *I*, but also by *U*, which Letter they always pronounce with this Sound, and they express the Diphthongs *au, eu*, like *ai, ei*.

The *Labial* or Lip Vowels, are made in the Lips being put into a round Form or Shape; the *Labials*. Breath being there moderately compressed. There are also three different Sorts of these Vowels, as of the former.

The round *O* is formed by a greater Opening of the Lips, with which Sound most People pronounce the *Greek Ω*. The *French* give this Sound to their *Au*. The *English* also, do almost always thus pronounce their long *o* or *oa*, (the *a* as it were not being now a-days sounded in pronouncing, and of which we may pass the same Judgement, as we have just now passed, concerning *ea*) as, *one, none, whole, hole, coal, boat, oat, those, chose, &c.* But when *o* is short, it is most com-

monly expressed by open *e* (of which above) but very seldom by round *O*.

In the Lips also, by a moderate or middle *oo*, *û flat*. Opening, is formed the fat or gross *U* of the Germans, which Sound is used by the Spaniards, Italians, and several other Nations. The French express this Sound by *ou*; the Welsh by *w*; the English for the most Part, by *Oo*, and but now and then by *u* or *ou*; as, Foot, shoot, full, Fool, pull, Pool, good, stood, Wood, woo'd, Mood, mourn, Course, Source, could, would, should, &c. But *doe*, *goe*, *move*, &c. are better pronounced by round *O*, than by the gross or fat *u*.

In the same Seat or Place, but with a yet *û slender*. lesser Opening of the Mouth, is formed slender *u*; well known both to the English and French. The English every where pronounce their long *u* with this Sound; and sometimes *eu* and *ew* are thus pronounced, which would be better pronounced, by preserving the Sound of *E Masculine*: As, *Muse*, *Tune*, *Lute*, *sure*, *mute*, *new*, *brew*, *knew*, &c. Foreigners would learn the Sound of this *u*, if they endeavoured to pronounce the Diphthong *iu*, namely, by putting the slender *i* before the Letter *u* or *w*, as in the Spanish Word *Ciudad*, which signifies a *City*: But this is not entirely the same Sound, though it comes very nigh to it; for *iu*, is a compounded Sound, but the English and French *u*, is a simple Sound. The Welsh commonly express this Sound by *iw*, *yw*, *uw*; as in *Lliw*, *Colour*; *Llyw*, *the Rudder of a Ship*; *Duw*, *God*; and in a great many other Words.

I acknowledge these nine Sounds to be
Number of Vowels, but I do not know any more:
how augmented. For the English broad *I*, I do not reckon to be a simple Sound: Yet I do not deny, but that there may be, among some Nations, or that Posterity may discover, more Vocal Sounds, or Sounds of Vowels, in each Seat of the Voice, than those three Sorts that I have taken Notice of: And so it is possible that there may be some intermediate Sounds, such perhaps as the French *e Neuter* is, being betwixt the *Palatine Vowels* slender *a* and *e Masculine*. For the Measure of the Aperture or Opening of the Mouth,

Mouth, is like a continued Quantity, which is divisible in *infinitum*. For as in the Numbring of the Winds, at first they reckoned but *four*, afterwards *twelve*, and now at last they reckon *thirty-two*: So likewise, whereas the *Arabians*, and perhaps the antient *Hebrews*, numbered but *three* Vowels, that is, *one* in each Seat, we do now plainly observe three Vowels in each Seat, which may plainly be distinguished from one another; and who knows, but that Posterity may mix or place many intermediate Sounds among these.

But all these Vowels are capable of being made *long* or *short*, and hence arises the Difference of Quantity in *long* and *short* Syllables: Quantity of Vowels.

Although some of these are very seldom made *long*, as obscure *o* and *e* Feminine; others are very seldom made *short*, as round *o*, and slender *u*, at least in *English*.

But the *Consonants* also are capable of being made *long*, especially those that come nearest to the Nature of Vowels, except *p*, *t*, *k*, or hard *c*, which are entirely Mute; neither do they make any Sound of themselves, but only modify [proportion, or give Measure to] the Sound of the foregoing or following Vowel.

S E C T. III.

Of the Consonants.

AS we have divided the Vowels into *Division of* three Classes or Ranks, so we have *Consonants*. made a threefold Division of the Consonants, namely, into *Labial* or *Lip* Consonants, *Palatine* or *Palate*, *Guttural* or *Throat* Consonants; as they are formed or made in the *Lips*, the *Palate*, or *Throat*: Namely, while the Breath being sent from the *Lungs*, is intercepted in these Seats or Places, or at least is very strongly compressed.

But

But it is also remarkable, that there may be observed a threefold *Direction of the Breath*. Either it is ; 1. Wholly directed to the Mouth, that is, is seeking a Passage, or going out by the Lips : Or, 2. It is almost wholly directed to the Nostrils, and seeks a Passage out thence : Or, lastly, this *Direction of the Breath* is, as it were equally divided betwixt the Mouth and the Nostrils. But I believe this Diversity of the *Direction of the Breath*, does wholly proceed from the various Position of the *Uvula*, [or the Piece of Flesh that shuts the *Wind-pipe*.]

Since therefore the *Breath* being sent out after this threefold Manner, may be perfectly intercepted thrice in each of these three Seats ; there are nine different Consonants which derive their Original from them, and which for that Reason we shall call Primitive, or *Closed* [shut] Consonants : But if the *Breath* be not perfectly intercepted in these Seats, but only more straitly compressed, finding out a Passage though with some difficulty, there are formed the Sounds of diverse other Consonants, according to the various Manner of Compression, which Consonants we shall call Derived, or *Open* Consonants.

If the *Breath* directed through the Mouth to the Mutes. Lips, be intercepted through the closing of the Lips ; the Letter P is formed, the Greek Π, and P. the Hebrew Pe. The *Arabians* have not this Letter, but substitute or put in its Place either Be, or Phe ; the *Persians* besides this Phe of the *Arabians*, have also their Pe, which they distinguish from Be, by putting three Points under it. But if the *Breath* reaches not the Lips, but be wholly intercepted in the Palate, or which is all one, at the Roots of the Upper Teeth, the Consonant T is formed, the Greek Τ, the Hebrew Tet, and the *Arabian* Te or Ta. But if the *Breath* does not reach so far, but be intercepted at the Top of the Throat, the hinder Part of the Tongue being moved to the hinder Part of the Palate, k or hard c is formed, and C. the Greek k, the Hebrew Caph and Koph, the *Arabian* Koph and Caph. And with this Sound the *Welsh* always

always pronounce their *c*. But we call these three Consonants absolute or meer *Mutes*, because they make no Sound of themselves, nor indeed can make any ; for the *Breath* can no Way get into the free Air, for it has no Passage either to the *Nostrils*, or by the *Mouth*.

If the *Breath* equally divided between the *Nostrils* and the *Mouth*, be intercepted by the *Semi-Mutes*. Closing of the *Lips*, the Consonant *b* is formed, the Greek *Beta*, the Hebrew *Beth* with a *B. Dagesh* ; the Arabian *Be*. If the *Breath* thus equally divided be intercepted in the *Palate*, *D* is formed ; the Greek *Delta* ; the Hebrew *Daleth*, with a *Dagesh* ; the *D. Arabian Dal* ; as also *Da* and *Dad*. But if the *Breath* be thus intercepted in the *Throat*, that is, between the hinder Part of the *Tongue* and *Palate*, *G* is formed, the Greek *Gamma*, the Hebrew *Gimel* with a *Dagesh*, *G.* the Arabian *Gain*, not *Jim*, though that Letter has some Affinity with it. The *Welsh* do always give this Sound to their *g*. And these Consonants I call *Half-Mutes* ; for they make but a little Sound in the *Nose*, which can be heard by it self without the Help of the Sound of any other Letter.

But if the whole *Breath*, or the greater *Semi-Part* of it be directed to the *Nostrils*, striking *Vowels*. in its Passage the Air that remains in the Hollow of the *Mouth*, the *Lips* being just closed, *M* is formed, the Greek *My*, the Hebrew *Mem*, the Arabian *Mim*. *M.* But if this Closing be made in the Fore-part of the *Palate*, *N* is formed, the Greek *Ny*, the Hebrew and *N. Arabian Nun*. But if this Closing be in the hinder Part of the *Palate*, that Sound is formed which the Greeks express by *Gamma*, before *K*, *γ, χ, ζ* ; and the *Latins* of old by *g* ; as, *Agchises*, *agceps*, *aggulus* for *Anchises*, *anceps*, *angulus* ; as, *Priscian* and *Varro* affirm. But now *n* is written before those Consonants, especially in the same Syllable ; namely, *k, g, x*, also *c, g, ch*, pronounced with a hard or natural Sound. For the Sound of *n* in *thin*, *sin*, *in*, differs from that in *thing*, *think*, *sing*, *single*, *sink*, *ink*, *lynk*, &c. Also *n* has a different Sound in *band*, *band*, *ran*, from what it has in *hang*, *bank*, *rank*, &c. And in the same Words.

Words the Sound of this Letter is varied, according to the Division of the Syllables: For *n* has a different Sound in *Lon-ger*, *stion-ger*, *an-ger*, *drin-ker*, *in-gruo*, *con-gruo*, from what it has in *Long-er*, *strong-er*, *ang-er*, *drink-er*, *ing-ruo*, *cong-ruo*. Also, while some pronounce *in-quam*, *tan-quam*, *nun-quam*, &c. others pronounce them as if written *inq-wam*, *tanq wam*, *nunq-wam*, or, *ink-wam*, *tank-wam*, *nunc-wam*. In the former Words when *n* is founded, the Extremity of the Tongue always strikes the Fore-part of the Palate near the Roots of the Upper Teeth; but in the latter, the same Extremity of the Tongue rather bends to the Roots of the Lower Teeth, but the hinder Part of the Tongue is raised to the hinder Part of the Palate, and there intercepts the Sound; for it is formed in the Mouth after the same Manner as *G*, but it has the same Direction of the Breath with *n*. And this is the Sound, if I am not mistaken, with which many would have the Hebrew **נ** (*Ghnajin*) pronounced, when they teach us to pronounce it by *ng*, *ngh*, *gn*, *ngn*, &c. whereby they imply a Sort of Sound, which does not perfectly agree either with *n* or *g*, but has somewhat that is common to both. And I do not know whether the *Spaniards* mean the same Sound, or not, by their *n* with the Mark over the Head.

I call these three Consonants *Half-Vowels*, because they have a greater Sound, than those which we called *Half-Mutes*.

But these nine Consonants, that I have
Consonants treated of, are formed by a total Interception
open or De- of the Breath, so that it has no Passage
rivative. through the Mouth: For which Reason we
 have called them *closed Consonants*. But if the

Breath straitly pressed, find a Passage or Way out, though with some Difficulty, the same Formation remaining, those Consonants are formed which we call *open ones*, which are the *Aspirates* of all those, except the *Half-Vowels* from whence they are derived: But the more *subtile* and *thin* Consonants are formed, if the Breath goes out by an oblong Chink; and the more *gross* or *fat* are formed, if the Breath goes out as it were by a round Hole. But they are referred to the same Classes or Sorts with the *closed ones*, their *Primitives*, to which they have an Affinity, or are near a-kin. But I subjoin or add no *Aspirate Letters*

ters to the *Half-Vowels* ; not that there is no Sound when the Breath breaks from one in pronouncing them, but because that Sound has not as yet, as far as I can discover, obtained a Place in the Number or List of Letters : For it either expresses the *Lowing* of an Ox, or the *Sighing* of a Man ; the first, if it be made in the Lips, but the last, if in the Palate or Throat.

When we are going to pronounce the Letter P, if the Breath escape the Mouth, then is formed its Aspirate F or Ph, which is the *Grecian* Φ, the *Arabian* and *Hebrew* Phe, and the *Welsh* ff. Neither does it much matter whether the Breath goes out by a little Chink or a round Hole. Though that Way a Sound more *subtle* and *fine*, and this a more gross one be heard ; yet the Difference is so little between them, that I believe they are in no Language distinguished by distinct Letters.

In our going to pronounce B, if the Breath go out by a Chink, it forms the *English* V Consonant, and V the *Hebrew* Beth ; the *Spaniards* also, sometimes give the same Sound to B, pronouncing the Letters V and B promiscuously, or one for the other. The *Welsh* expresses this Sound by F, as they did the foregoing one by Ff. The *English-Saxons* either had not this Sound, or wrote it by F ; for they used no V Consonant, and they wrote many Words with F, as the *English* did after them, for some Ages, which are now written with V, as well as those that are now written with F ; as, *Gif*, *Heofon*, &c. which are now written *give*, *Heaven*. The *Arabians* and *Persians* have not this Sound, but the *Turks* pronounce their *Vaw* with this Sound ; and so some do the *Hebrew* *Vau*, which some think more properly pronounced as the *Arabians* *Waw* or *W*. And I do not doubt, but that the *Eolic Digamma* had the same Sound ; for before the *Greeks* had the Character Φ, there was no Need for the Invention of a new one, to express the same Sound. Besides, *Priscian* owns, that the *Latins* formerly pronounced F after the same Manner ; namely, with the same Sound with which, afterwards, the V Consonant was pronounced ; so that at last, the Sound of the Letter F, passed to the Sound of Φ or ph.

But

But if the Breath goes out through a round Hole, *W*. that is, the Cheeks being contracted, and the Mouth made round, the *English* * *W* and the *Arabian Waw* is formed. With which Sound many would have the *Hebrew Vaw* to be pronounced. But the *German W*, if I am not mistaken, has a Sound compounded of this and the former Letter; that is, by placing that before this, so that what the *Germans* would write with *Wa*, the *English* would write *Vwa*. This Sound does not much differ from the *English* *Oo*, the *French* *Ou*, the *German* *U* very rapidly pronounced, for which Reason it has been reckoned by some as a Vowel, when it is really a Consonant, although it is very near a-kin to a Vowel. The *Welsh* write that Vowel, as well as this Consonant with the same Character *W*; that is, when it is a Vowel it has an Accent over the Head of it, and is sounded long; otherwise it is often taken for a Consonant, and is pronounced short; as, *gwydd*, (a Word of two Syllables) a *goose*, *gwydd*, places set with Trees (which is a Word of one Syllable) *gwyr*, crooked, *gwy'r*, Men. In *Latin* Words, as often as this Sound is added to the Letters *s*, *q*, *g*, as in *suadeo*, *quando*, *lingua*, &c. it is reckoned by most People as a Vowel, and even by those Persons, who are for making it a Consonant in these *English* Words *wade*, *perswade*, *swade*, &c. and yet the Sound is the very same in both Places. But in the Diphthongs *au*, *eu*, *ou*, rightly pronounced, the

* It is very probable that our *W* was originally the *Greek* Φ, or the *Hebrew* ד.

I. Because of its Place in the Alphabet, answering nearly to the other.

II. Because of the Figure in *Saxon* and *Gothick*, resembling the *Greek* Φ, or *Hebrew* ד, turned over.

III. Because the *Syrians* were used to Change ד into double י.

Magnopere observari debet duplex Vaw adhiberi pro Phe: id enim secuta sunt postea Saxonice et Teutonicæ gentes omnes, versus occidentem & septentrionem. Thomas. Gloss. p. 368.
 subjoined

subjoined or added Vowel, is no other than this very Consonant : Of which Matter our *learned* and *acute* *Gataker* may be consulted in his Treatise *De Bivocalibus*, or *Of double Vowels*.

But when the same famous Person asserts, as several other great Men do, that the *V* Consonant of the *Latins* was formerly always pronounced with the same Sound, as it is now in some Nations pronounced ; I do in some Measure, assent to or believe it ; that is, in some particular Words : But that it had the same Sound in all Words, is what I durst by no Means affirm. For I am rather inclined to believe, that both Sounds, not only the modern, but the ancient, Sound was affixed to the same Character ; that is, that some Words were sometimes promiscuously pronounced, in different Places, and by different Persons : And I am more particularly induced to think so, because I see that several *Latin* Words which are written with *V* are, when translated into *Greek*, written with β *Beta*, and sometimes with ς *ou*, and this formerly prevailed. For I see no Reason, to give an Instance, why *Flavius* should be written in *Greek*, and that always, $\Phi\lambda\alpha\upsilon\iota\omicron\varsigma$ rather than $\Phi\lambda\acute{\alpha}\beta\iota\omicron\varsigma$, and the same may be said, of a great many other Words, unless the Consonant *V* should come nigh to the Sound of the *Eolic Digamma* : Especially, since it is agreed upon, that the *V* Consonant in many Words, had its Origin from the *Eolic Digamma*. For who can assign any other Reason why in the *Latin* Words, *video*, *vis*, *vesper*, *vinum*, *venter*, *vestis*, *vescor*, *Venetus*, &c. there should be the *V* Consonant, which in the *Greek* Words, $\epsilon\acute{\iota}\delta\omega$, $\acute{\iota}\varsigma$, $\epsilon\sigma\pi\epsilon\rho\omicron\varsigma$, $\omicron\iota\nu\omicron\varsigma$, $\epsilon\upsilon\tau\epsilon\rho\alpha\nu$, $\epsilon\delta\eta\varsigma$, $\epsilon\delta\acute{\iota}\omega$, $\epsilon\upsilon\epsilon\iota\omicron\varsigma$, does not appear ; but that the *Eolians* were wont to prefix the *Digamma* to this Sort of Words ? Neither need any Body wonder, that the *Latin* Tongue, which was then their *Mother Tongue*, should share the same Fortune with other *Mother Tongues* ; namely, that the Pronunciation of the same Letter, is not every where regular and constant. And perhaps the Sound of the *Hebrew Vau*, was not every where the same, therefore in *Greek* we read $\Delta\acute{\alpha}\beta\iota\delta$, not $\Delta\alpha\upsilon\iota\delta$. But this is evident as to *Shin*. *Judg.* xii. 6.

But when we are about to pronounce *T*, *Palatine*. if the *Breath* goes out very grossly or thick, and as it were by a *Hole*, the Greek Θ *Theta* is formed, the *Hebrew* *Thau*, the *Arabian* *The*, that is the *English* *Th*, in the Words *Thigh*, *Thin* *Thing*, *thought*, *Throng*, &c. The *Anglo-Saxons* formerly expressed this Sound by the Note β , which they called *Spina*, or *The Thorn*. The *Welsh* always write it by *Th*.

But if the *Breath* go more subtilly or thinly out of the Mouth, and as it were by a *Chink*, that Part of the Tongue which is next to the Extremity, being lifted up, that the *Breath*, may as it were be flatted or thined, and pressed into a wider, but less gross or thick Form, the Greek *Sigma* is formed, the *Hebrew* *Samech* and *Sin*, the *Arabian* *Sin* and *Sad*; and the *Latin* and *English* *S*, that is pronounced with a sharp and hissing Sound, as in the Words, *yes*, *this*, *us*, *thus*, *hiss*, *less*, *send*, *strong*, &c. With this Sound we also pronounce soft *C*, that is, before *E*, *I*, *Y*; as in, *Grace*, *Mercy*, *Peace*, *since*, *Principal*, &c. The *French* sometimes pronounce *C* with the same Sound before the other Vowels, but then they commonly mark it with a Tail, as in *Gargon*, a *Boy*, &c.

But when we would pronounce the Letter *d*, if the *Dh*. *Breath* break forth in a grosser Manner, and as it were by a *Hole*, then the *Arabian* *Dhai* is formed, the *Hebrew* *Daleth*, and the softer *D* of the *Spaniards*, that is, as that Letter is pronounced in the Middle and End of Words; as in *Majestad*, *Trinidad*, &c. The *English* write this Sound as they do another, which we have named a little above; that is by *th*, as in the Words *thy*, *thine*, *this*, *though*, &c. The *Saxons* formerly wrote that Sound by β , but this by $\Ð$, $\eth$, as it is evident from their Writings, though they sometimes confounded these Characters: But in following Ages the *English* made use of the same Character β for both Sounds, which by degrees degenerated in γ , which is seen in a great many Manuscripts in those Words which are now written with *th*. And hence came the Fashion, which now often prevails of writing the Abbreviations, *ye*, *yt*, *yu*, for *the*, *that*, *thou*, &c. The *Welsh* express the former Sound by *th*, the latter by *dd*,
only

only some will have it that it had better be written with *dh*, but they have not been able to get this old Manner altered. But we, as has been said, write each Sound indifferently with *th*; but erroneously: Since neither of them is a compounded Sound, but manifestly a simple one, differing almost in the same Manner from the Sounds of the Letters *t* and *d*, as *f* and *v* do from the Sounds of *p* and *b*. But I acknowledge that by the same Reason, that *ph* is written for *f*; *bh*, *th* and *dh*, might be also written: That is, that the Affinity or Relation, and the Derivation of the Aspirate Letters might in some Part be shewn. But it is plain from the following Words, that the genuine Sound composed of these Letters, is different from the Sound of the Aspirate Letters; as, *Cob-ham*, *Chat-ham*, *Wit-ham*, *Mait-ham*, *Wad-ham*, *Wood-house*, *Skep-herd*, *Clap-ham*, *Mess-ham*, &c. And so we find quite different Sounds in *Oc-ham*, *Block-head*, *Hog-herd*, *Cog-hill*, *Hous-hold*, *Dis-honour*, *Mis-hap*, *Dis-honest*, *Dis-hearten*, *Mus-ham*, *Caus-ham*, *Wis-heart*, &c. than in those Words which we commonly write with *ch*, *gh*, *sh*: But the *French*, the *Dutch*, and several others, do not at all, or very little pronounce either of those Sounds which we write with *th*: And while the *French* endeavour to pronounce it, they say *t*, the *Dutch* *d*, and some others *s*. Yet it is not difficult to pronounce these genuine Sounds, if a Person will be pretty careful to observe the Manner of their Formation: For all the Parts of the Formation are the same as if we were going to pronounce *t* and *d*, only here we suffer the Breath to go out of our Mouths, but in *t*, &c. we do not. We ought also to take care that we do not, through want of Attention, let the Part of the Tongue next to the Extremity of it rise a little, and so form the Letters *s* and *z*, for as *s* is to *t*, so is *z* to *d*, as we shall now show you.

But if when you are going to pronounce *d*, you extrude or let out the Breath in a more *subtile* Manner, as it were by a Chink, the Part next to the Extremity of the Tongue being to that End raised, or lifted up, the *Latin* *z* is formed, the *Greek* ζ, the *Hebrew* Zain, the *Arabian* Ze, which Sound the *English* express by their *z*: But they as well as the *French* sometimes give the same Sound to *s*,

especially when it comes between two Vowels, and at the End of a Word ; as in *Pleasure, Ease, Laws, &c.* And when a *Noun* having hard *s* in the last Syllable becomes a *Verb*, then this *Verb* is pronounced with soft *s*, that is, with *z* ; so a *House*, a *Louse*, a *Mouse*, a *Price*, *Advice*, *close*, *Brass*, *Grass*, *Glass*, *Grease*, a *Fleece*, End in hard *s* ; but to *house*, to *louse*, to *mouse*, to *prise*, to *advise*, to *close*, to *braze*, to *fleeze*, &c. are pronounced with soft *s* or *z*. But there are also other Letters that have an analogous or like Manner of softening : For from the Nouns *Wife*, *Life*, *Strife*, *Half*, *Calf*, *safe*, *Breath*, *Cloth*, pronounced with a harder Sound, come the *Verbs*, to *wive*, to *live*, to *strive*, to *halve*, to *calve*, to *save*, to *breathe*, to *clothe*. The *Italians* sometimes pronounce *z* very strong, especially when it is doubled, like the *Hebrew* *Tzade*, or *tz* : This Sound some People also give to *Latin* Words when *t* comes before *i*, another Vowel following ; as for *Piazza*, *Venetia*, they pronounce *Piazza*, *Venetzia*, &c.

We may add to the Letter *d*, or if you please to *n*, two other Letters formed in the same Seat, that is in the Palate, viz. *l* and *r*. I chuse rather to join these Letters to *d* and *n*, than to the Letter *t*, by Reason of the Concussion of the *Larynx* or *Wind-pipe*, and the Emission of the Breath to the Nostrils in their Pronunciation, of which the Letter *t*, and all that come from it, are utterly incapable. For if when you are about to pronounce *d* or *n*, you gently send out the Breath from one or both Sides into the Mouth, and by the Turnings of the Mouth to the open Lips, with a trembling of the Tongue, then the Letter *L* is formed. And the Sound of this Letter, if I am not mistaken, is the same in all Languages, as the *Hebrew* *Lamed*, and the *Greek* *Lambda*.

But the *Welsh* have another and stronger, though a *Ll*. kindred Sound to this, which they write with a *ll*, to distinguish it from that of the single *l*, by the Breath being much more forcibly pressed into the Mouth, whereby is formed a very frothy Sound, as it were compounded or made up of it. But this Sound, as far as I know, no other Nation has, unless perhaps the *Spaniards*.

The Letter *r*, which is commonly called the Dog Letter, is also formed in the Palate; that is, if when *R*, you are about to pronounce *d* or *n*, the Extremity of the Tongue, is turned inward, and by a strong and frequent Concussion, beats the Breath that is going out; from this Struggle that harsh or rough Sound of the Letter *r* is formed. And the Sound of this Letter is the same among all Nations: That is, as the *Hebrew* *Resh*, and the *Greek* *ρ*. The *Welsh* frequently subjoin *h* to this Letter, and their *rh* answers to the *Greek* *ρ* *Rh*, aspirated. They say that the *Americans* bordering on *New-England*, or at least a great Part of them, cannot pronounce either an *l* or *r*, but use *n*, instead of it; so for *Lobster* they say *Nobsten*.

If the Breath, being more strictly compressed, *Ch*, breaks out more subtilly, when you are about to pronounce *k*, or hard *c*, it forms the *Greek* *χ*, the *Arabian* *Cha*, the *Hebrew* *Cheth* rightly pronounced; that is by a middle Sound between *c* and *h*. This Sound is very common both to the *Germans* and *Welsh*, who both express it by *ch*. But this Sound is quite neglected among us; for our *ch* has a very different Sound; as we shall show by and by.

But if the Breath go out in a grosser Manner, and *H*, less compressed, by Reason of the more lax Position of the Tongue, and larger Passage for the Breath, the *Latin* *h* is formed, the *Hebrew* and *Arabian* *He*, and the *Greek* aspirate *Spiris*. And this Sound is common to most Nations. But the *French*, though they write *h*, yet they seldom pronounce it. The Difference betwixt the Sound of the foregoing Letter, and this is, that the Breath in the former is expelled with a greater Force, and by a narrower Passage, as it were through a Chink, and is therefore called the double aspirate; this Sound is driven more freely, and as it were through a Hole or larger Passage. The *Greeks*, because its Sound is but small, called it an Aspiration, as it were no Letter, and they do not now a-days set it down in the direct Line of the Letters, but place it over the Head of the Letter. Though formerly they placed it before the Vowels in a direct Line. But, if I am not mistaken, they set it after the Consonant *R*,

or *gā* ; and hence it is, that *H* stands among them for the Mark of an Hundred ; for what is now written, *Ἑξα-
 ἴον*, was formerly written *Ἑξαήιον*, *Hekaton*. But I can
 see no Manner of Reason why *h* should not be a Conso-
 nant in all other Languages, for it is by no means to be
 rejected from the Number of Letters, because the Sound
 of it is not pronounced by the *French*, and some others ;
 for that is common to many other Letters, especially of
 the *Hebrew*, and other *Oriental* or *Eastern* Tongues, where
 they are *quiescent* or silent. Neither is it less a Letter,
 because it does not prevent the Elision or Cutting off of
 the foregoing Vowel, when another comes after it in the
 following Word : For formerly neither *m*, nor *s*, did hin-
 der this Elision or Cutting off of the foregoing Vowel.
 But I own, it may be doubted whether the *Latins* who
 were such mighty Imitators of the *Greeks* allowed it to be
 a Letter or not, especially since I see the *Grammarians* so
 earnestly speaking against it.

If the Breath being pretty straitly compressed,
Gh. goes out by a very small or subtile Chink, when
 you are pronouncing *h* or hard *g*, then that Sound
 is formed which is expressed by *gh*. I perceive the *En-
 glish* had this Sound formerly in the Words, *Light*, *Night*,
Right, *Daughter*, &c. but now a-days they retain the
 Writing, yet they entirely neglect the Sound : But the
North Country People, especially the *Scots*, do for the
 most Part yet retain it, or do rather make use of the
 Sound *h* in its room. The *Irish* do truly express this
 Sound in their *gh*, as in *logh*, a Lake. It differs from
 the *Germans* *ch*, as *g* does from *c*, by a Direction of the
 Breath in some Respect to the Nostrils, which neither *c*
 nor *ch* admit of. But the *Germans* do for the most Part
 write those Words with *ch*, which the *English* write with
gh ; for their *Nacht*, *Recht*, *Liecht*, *Fechten*, *Tochter*, answer to
 our *Night*, *Right*, *Light*, *Fight*, *Daughter*, &c. The *Latins*,
Greeks, *Hebrews*, *Arabians* have not this Sound, unless you
 may pronounce the *Hebrew* *Gimel*, with this Sound. The
Persians give this Sound to their *Ghaf*, which is distin-
 guished from the *Arabian* *Kef*, by having three Points
 over it.

But

But if the Breath go out pretty freely, and as it were through a broader Hole, the *English y* Consonant is formed, the *German j* Consonant, the *Arabian Ye*, with which Sound many would have the *Hebrew jod* to be pronounced; that is, with a Sound near a-kin to slender *i*, very rapidly pronounced. Therefore the Diphthongs *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, or *ay*, *ey*, *oy*, are indifferently written by *i* and *y*: Especially among the *English* and *French*. But that Sound, which is reckoned by some as a Subjunctive Vowel, is really a Consonant; for the Letter will be pronounced exactly after the same Manner in *saying*, *praying*, &c. whether it be referred to the former Syllable, and called a Vowel; as in *say-ing*, *pray-ing*; or whether it be referred to the latter Syllable, and be accounted a Consonant; as in *sa-ying*, *pra-ying*. For we perceive the same Affinity between *oo*, or fat *u* and *w*, that there is between slender *i* and *y*. Concerning which Sounds the Learned GATAKER may be consulted in his fore said Treatise. But sometimes also *y* is put for *i*, where *i* is a Vowel, especially at the End of Words; in which Case not only the ancient *English-Saxons*, but likewise the *English* that succeeded them did for many Ages mark the Letter *y*, whenever it stood for a Vowel, with a Point over the Head of it, thus *ẏ*.

But that there is a great Affinity between this Letter *y* and *g*, and *gh*, is evident from those Words which we now write with *gh*; as, *Light*, *Might*, *Thought*, &c. that were, formerly in old Manuscripts written with the Consonant * *y*, with the same Character; as in *yee*, *yonder*, &c. For they had a threefold Figure, one *y* which we now express by *th*, as we have already observed; another which was used

* For *Saxon* ȝ by Degrees came to be written in Manuscripts ȝ or ȝ , and because its Power was various it came to be differently noted in the Prints, either by *g*, or *gh*, or *y*, or *z*, as the Printers or Authors judged proper, or imagined might best answer its Power in that Place. This may best be illustrated by a few Instances.

T instead

used for the Vowel *i*, and differing from the former only by the Point over it; and a third *ȝ*, which was always put for *y* Consonant, and which is found in those Words which we now Spell with *gh*. But the later Copiers or Transcribers of Books being ignorant of the Character that was then made Use of, have by a very gross Mistake substituted the Character of the Letter *z* in its room, whence those monstrous Words *Thouzt*, *Souzt*, &c. for *Thought*, *Sought*, &c. or rather for *Thouyt*, *Souyt*; and they were then used to be written with *y* Consonant, as we may see in the Impressions of *Chaucer*, and others of the old Poets.

But

T instead of the Saxon *ȝ*.

For *ȝode* we now write *good*.

For *ȝeue* we now write *give*,

Gh instead of *ȝ*.

} *w* instead of *ȝ*.

For *riȝt* we now write *right*,

For *liȝt* we now write *light*.

} own }
awn } *agen*.

For *Almiȝti* — *Almighty*.

Law *laȝa*.

In the Saxon these three are spelled with *h*, but in old English with *ȝ* instead of *ȝ*.

For *ȝeer* we write *Year*,

For *dæȝ* we write *Day*.

I do not know that we have in any Word changed the old *ȝ* into the Letter *Zad* *z*. But the figuring *ȝ* by *z* in some Authors, was owing purely to the resemblance of the Figure *ȝ* to *ȝ*, and not that those two Letters ever had the same Valour or Power. It was therefore a great Fault of some Authors and Copiers to write *ȝ* by *Zad*; which is quite another Letter, and of a very different Power. Yet it must be owned, that some Manuscripts about the Time of Printing, or a little before, had begun that corrupt

But the Learned *Wheeloc*, formerly Professor of the *Arabick* and *Saxon* Tongues in *Cambridge*, does more truly write this Sort of Words with *h* in his Edition of *Venerable Bede's Ecclesiastical History in Saxon*, &c. where you meet with *cnihte*, *mihste*, *druh*, &c. for *Knight*, *might*, *through*, &c. To which we shall add, that not a few Words which we write with *y*, were formerly by the *Saxons* (and are now most commonly by the *Germans*) written with *g*: For our Words *Slay*, *sayl*, *say*, *Day*, *Rain*, and a great many others, are written partly by the *Saxons*, and partly by the *Germans*, *Schlagen*, *sege*, *segen*, *sag*, *Dag*, *regen*, &c. And on the contrary, many Words which are now written with *g*, were formerly written with *y*; as in *again*, *against*, *given*, &c. were written *ayen*, *ayenst*, *yeoven*, &c.

Thus I have given you an Account of all the simple Sounds of the Letters, that I know of, I have treated of their Formation, and have likewise divided them into their Families or Classes. All which Sounds you may behold at one View, as follows.

rupt Way of putting g for *z* or *s*; as in *Pounce* g *Py-late*.

The *North Britains* have kept the Figure 3 for g but they seem not to take it for *z* but for *y*. See, *Hicks G. A.* p. 138.

When *Dr. Wallis* here says that many Words now written with *g*, were formerly written with *y*; we are not to understand formerly in such a Sense, as when he said, formerly by the *Saxons*.

The *y* for g in *ayenot*, *ayen*, &c. is scarce so high as 1460. And it was not very judicious to substitute the *y* for g in such Instances, unless *again* and *against*, had then a very different Sound from what they now have; which is not probable. But because *y* would answer the g in some Cases as in *Day*, *Year*, the Copiers unadvisedly applied it in others.

A Synopsis of all the Letters.

With an opening

		Greater	Middle	Less
<i>Guttural or Throat</i> <i>Palatine or Palate</i> <i>Labial or Lip</i>	Vowels	ä		
		open	e Feminine	ũ obscure
		ö		ò
				ee
		a slender	e Masculine	î slender
		ô round	oo û fat	û slender

Consonants	{	<i>Labial or Lip</i>	Mute - - -	P	F	F	
			Half Mute	B	V	W	
			Half Vowel	M	a	Lowling	
	{	<i>Palatine or Palate</i>	Mute - - - -	T	S	TH	
			Half Mute	D	Z	DH	L.R.
			Half Vowel	N	a	Sigh	
	{	<i>Guttural or Throat</i>	Mute - - - -	C	H	CH	
			Half Mute	G	Y	G	
			Half Vowel	n	a	Sigh	

more subtil.
more gross.
Appl-
rates.

S E C T.

S E C T. IV.

Of the Compounded Sounds.

THE Rest of the Sounds are really *Compounded* compounded ones, although some *Sounds, ay, ey,* of them are commonly taken for *cy, aw, ew, ow.* simple ones.

The Diphthongs *ai, ei, oi, au, eu, ou, or ay, ey, oy, aw, ew, ow*, when they are rightly pronounced, are compounded or made up of the Prepositive or foregoing Vowels, and the Consonants *r* and *w*, which yet are commonly taken for Subjunctive or following Vowels. For in *ai, au, or ay, aw*, the slender *a* is set first; in *ei* or *ey*, the *e* Feminine is set first; in *eu* or *ew*, the *e* Masculine; in *oi, ou* or *oy, ow*, the open *O* is sometimes set first; as in the *English Words, Boy, Toy, Soul, Bowl, a Cup*; and sometimes the obscure *O* is set first; as in the *English Words, Boil, Toil, Oil, Bowl, Owl, &c.* Although I do not deny but that some of these Words, are pronounced by some, by open *O*.

But whereas some will have it that the Consonants *r* and *w* do not at all differ from the Vowels *I* and *U*, or as we write them *EE* and *OO*, very rapidly pronounced; it will be easily found to be a manifest Errour, by any Person, who shall nicely and carefully consider the Formation of the Words *Yee* and *Woo*, especially if he often repeat the same Formation; for he will find, that he cannot easily pass from the Sound of the Consonant, to that of the following Vowel, without a manifest Motion, and so a new Position of the Organs of Speech, which does not happen in the repeating of the Sounds *EE, OO*.

But I am not ignorant, that these which we commonly call *Diphthongs*, have Sounds different from their genuine Sound, in different Tongues, of which we shall

shall not now treat: Yet these may all be found and discovered among those Sounds which I have discoursed of, and so may be reduced to their proper Places.

The *English* long or gross *I*, is plainly a Sound compounded of the *E* Feminine and the *Y* Consonant. And has altogether the same Sound as the *Greek* *η*.

The *English* *J* Consonant or soft *G*, or *j* Consonant. else *Dg*, is compounded of the Consonants

Dy: For their *Jar*, *Joy*, *gentle*, *Lodging*, &c. Sound *dyar*, *dyoy*, *dyentle*, *lodying*, &c. And with the same Sound is the *Arabian* *Gjim* pronounced, (which Letter although it comes from the *Hebrew* *Ghimel*, yet does not retain its Sound) as also the *Italian* *Gi*.

The *French* *J* Consonant or soft *G*, is compounded of the Sounds *Zy*. For their *Je*, *Age*, &c. are *Zye*, *A-zye*, &c. The *Persians* write this Sound by their *Zye*, which is distinguished from the *Arabian* *Ze*, by having three Points at the Top.

But the *German* *J* Consonant, is plainly a simple Sound, namely, the same with the *English* *Y*: As has been said before.

The *English* *Sh*, the *French* *Ch*, the *German* *Sch*, the *Hebrew* and *Arabian* *Schin*, have the Sound of *Sy*. For the *French* Word *Chambre*, the *English* *Shame*, the *German* *Scham*, sound *Syambre*, *Syame*, *Syam*. The *Welsh* expresses this Sound by *Si*, with a Note of Production over the following Vowel. *Sion* [John] is a Monosyllable, but *Sion* [Mount Sion] is a Word of two Syllables.

The *English* *Ch* or *Tch* sounds *Ty*: For *Orchard*, *Riches*, have the Sound of *Ort-yard*, *Rit-yes*, &c. With this Sound the *Italians* pronounce their *E* Vowel before the Vowels *E* and *I*. The *Persians* to express this Sound, beside the *Arabick* Alphabet assume their *Che*, which they distinguish from the *Arabian* *Gjim*, by three Points over the Head of it. If before the *English* Word *Yew*, you severally put *D*, *T*, *S*, *Z*, it will be made, *Dyew*, *Tyew*, *Syew*, *Zyew*, that is, the *English* Words *Few*,
Chew,

Chew, Shew, and the French Word *Jeu, Play*. And if you put S, Z, before *Tanyer*, it will make the French *Changer*, that is, *Syan-zyer*; but if you put T, D, before *lit*, it will make the English *Changer*, that is, *Tyan dyer*.

I am sensible that there are some who will have it, that the Sound S is heard in English *che* and *ge*, as if *Changer* were to be sounded *tyhandsyer*; and I appeal to others, whether he who truly pronounces the English Word *Changer*, does not at the same Time pronounce the Sounds *tyan-dyer*.

The X of the *Latins*, and the Ξ of the *Grecians*, X, and the X of almost all other Nations are compounded of *cs*, *xs*. This Letter the *Hebrews* and other Oriental People have not, but write in its Stead the simple Letters of which this Letter is compounded, which the *Germans* likewise often do; for their *Ochs, Wachs, Sechs, Sechst*, &c. are the English *Ox, Wax, Six, Sixth*. The *Welsh* always express this Sound by *cs*.

The Latin K was antiently used for Ca: For they K wrote indifferently *Calenda* and *Klenda*. But it now generally has amongst most Nations the same Sound as the Greek *κ Kappa*, from whence it came, or the Latin C: And it would be altogether a superfluous Letter, if C always retained its genuine Sound. Wherefore the *Welsh* whose *c* has always the same Sound, have no *k*; as well as some other People.

Gataker does rightly affirm, that the Q of the *Latins* was formerly written for *cu*, or rather *cw*: But now a days when *u* is subjoined to it, it has the same Sound as C or K, and is a superfluous Letter. The *Welsh* have not this Letter; but for *qu* always write *cw*, or *chw*. And the *Saxons* wrote *cpEn*, that is, *Cwen*, for what we write *Queen*.

The English *wh* is altogether sounded as *hw*. For *Wh*, the English *whit*, and the French *bluit* have the same Sound, though they differ very much in Signification. The *Saxons* did also set the *h* before the *w*, but I cannot tell how the English came to alter the placing of it: So for the Saxon *hwet, hwile*, the English say *what, which*, but the Scotch, *quhat, quilk*.

And it is worth our observing, that the Consonants *y* and *w*, though it be not much minded, are most commonly subjoined to kindred Consonants, before kindred Vowels : For *y* is often subjoined to the *Guttural* Consonants *c*, *g*, when a *Palatine* Vowel follows : For *can*, *get*, *begin*, are founded as if they were to be written *cyan*, *gyet*, *begyin* : For the Tongue can scarce pass from these *Guttural* Consonants to form the *Palatine* Vowels, but that it must pronounce *y*. But it is not so before the other Vowels ; as in *Call*, *Gall*, *go*, *gun*, *Goose*, *come*, &c.

W is sometimes subjoined to the *Labial* or *Lip* Consonants *p* and *b*, especially before open *o* ; as in *Pot*, *Boy*, *Boyl*, &c. which are founded as if they were to be written *pwot*, *bwoy*, *bwil*, &c. but they are not always thus pronounced, nor by all Persons.

The *Latin* *æ* ; the *English* *ea*, *oa*, *ee*, *oo*, *ae*, *oe*, *ea*, and sometimes *ei*, *ie*, *ou*, *au*, also *ih*, *ph* ; *oa*, *ee*, *oo*. (the like to which are to be found among other Nations) although they are written with two Characters or Letters, are notwithstanding, according to our present Pronunciation of them, but simple Sounds : As we have shewn in their Places.

And hitherto have I explained all the Sounds of the Letters, which do occur in any Nation, both simple and compounded as far as I thought sufficient : And I do believe that you can scarce find any Sounds, which may not be reduced to the Classes of some of the Sounds that have been here treated of.

It is also observable, that there is some Difference of Pronunciation among different Nations ; which does not proceed so much from the distinct Power of the Letters, as from the Manner of the Pronunciation : For the *English* do, as it were, thrust their Words forwards, towards the outward Part of the Mouth, and speak more openly ; whence the Sounds become also more distinct. The *Germans* do rather draw back their Words towards the hinder Part of the Mouth, and Bottom of the Throat ; whence their Pronunciation is more strong. The *French* draw their Words more inward towards the
Palate,

Palate, and speak less openly; whence their Pronunciation becomes less distinct, and is intermixt with a Sort of confused Murmur. So the *Italians*, and especially the *Spaniards* speak more slowly; the *French* more hastily, and the *English* in a middle Way betwixt both. There are several other Differences of Pronunciation among other Nations, which any one may observe as Occasion shall offer.



Sir Thomas Smith's new English Alphabet.

Nomen.	Protestas.	Exemplum.
A a.	A short.	Man, Hat.
A' ä a.	A long.	Män, i. e. Maine, Hät, i. e. Hate.
B b.	Bz-	
C c.	Ch, Tch, final.	Ceri, i. e. Chery, Mac, i. e. Match.
D d.	De-	
Δ δ Δ Δ	Δe-, i. e. Th.	Δou, i. e. Thou, Baδ, i. e. Bath.
E e.	E short.	Led, Bred, Hel.
E' ē e e.	E long.	Löd, i. e. Lead, Bröd, i. e. Bread, * * He-l, i. e. Heal.
I ë.	E English.	Bröd, i. e. Breed, Hel, i. e. Heel.
F f.	Ef.	Fil, Strif.
∇ ∇ f.	Ev.	∇ i-l, i. e. Vile, StriΔ, i. e. Strive.
G g.	Ge-.	Gai, Get.
S S.	Se-.	Sai, i. e. Iay, Set, i. e. Iet.
H he.	Ha.	
I i y.	I short.	Hid, Bi, i. e. By.
I' i i i-	I long.	Hid, i. e. Hide, Bī, i. e. Buy.
K k.	Ka.	Kat, Kac, i. e. Catch.
L l.	El.	
M m.	Em.	
N n.	En.	
O o.	O short.	Hop, Hors, i. e. Horse.
O' ö ö o.	O long.	Höp, i. e. Hope, Hörs, i. e. Hoarse.
P p.	Pe.	
Q q.	Quu.	
R r.	Er.	
S s.	Es.	
Z z.	Ezed.	Liz, i. e. Lyes, Di-z, i. e. Dyes.
Σ Σ.	EΣ. i. e. Esh.	LeΣ, i. e. Leash, FiΣ, i. e. Fish.
T t.	Te-.	
V U u.	U short.	Buk, i. e. Buck, Full.
V' p ü w.	U long.	Bük, i. e. Book, Fül, i. e. Fool.
Y y v.	v Greek.	Tru, i. e. True, Ru, i. e. Rue, †
X x x.	Ex.	† Ny, i. e. New.

T H E C O N T E N T S.

A LARGE Historical Preface, giving an Account of the Rise and Progress of the English Tongue	Page 1
An Account of the Mother Tongues	12.
Specimens of the various Changes and Alterations of our Tongue, from the Year 700	16.
Of the Division of the Scriptures into Chapters and Verses	25 and 26.
A remarkable Specimen of the English Language, A. D. 1385	23.
The Achanasian Creed in Old English Verse	28
The Introduction	43.

P A R T I.

CHAP. I. Of Grammar and its Parts	44.
Questions relating to the first Chapter	46.
N. B. There are added Questions relating to every Chapter.	
CHAP. II. Of Etymology, or that Part of Grammar which teaches what belongs to each Part of Speech	49
Of the Eight Parts of Speech	50.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. III. Of a <i>Noun</i>	51
CHAP. IV. Of <i>Substantives</i> Proper and Common.	53
<i>An Account of the English proper Names</i>	54
CHAP. V. Of <i>Numbers</i>	57
CHAP. VI. Of the English <i>Genitive Case</i>	64
<i>A Note concerning Gender</i>	69
CHAP. VII. Of the <i>Articles</i>	76
CHAP. VIII. Of the <i>Prepositions</i>	83
CHAP. IX. Of the <i>Adjective</i>	106
CHAP. X. Of the <i>Comparison of Adjectives</i>	111
CHAP. XI. Of the <i>Pronoun</i>	118
CHAP. XII. Of the <i>Verb</i>	129
<i>A Note concerning Tense or Time</i>	130
<i>A Note concerning the Persons of the Verb</i>	132
<i>Some Observations relating to the Second and Third Persons of Verbs</i>	133
<i>A Note concerning Moods</i>	135
CHAP. XIII. Of the <i>Participle</i>	141
CHAP. XIV. Of the <i>Helping Verbs</i> which are Defective, as, <i>do, will, shall, &c.</i>	145
CHAP. XV. Of the perfect <i>Helping Verbs, Have, and Am, or Be</i>	151
CHAP. XVI. Of the <i>Irregular Verbs</i>	154
<i>A Table of the Irregular Verbs</i>	158
CHAP. XVII. Of the <i>Formation of the Times of a Verb</i> Active, or the Verb that signifies <i>Doing</i>	161
CHAP. XIX. Of the <i>Termination of a Verb</i> Passive, or a Verb that signifies <i>Suffering</i>	169
CHAP. XX. Of the <i>Method of expressing the Moods, or Manners of a Verb</i> signifying <i>Being, Doing, or Suffering</i>	171
CHAP. XXI. Of the <i>Verb Neuter</i>	175
CHAP. XXII. Of the <i>Adverbs</i>	179
CHAP. XXIII. Of the <i>Conjunction</i>	184
CHAP. XXIV. Of the <i>Interjection</i>	188
CHAP. XXV. Of the <i>Expletives</i>	190

The CONTENTS.

PART II.

CHAP. I. Of Etymology, or Derivation	192
CHAP. II. Of Substantives Diminutiva	196
CHAP. III. Of Words borrowed from the Latin	201
Of the Derivation of some Proper Names	208
Of Words which having a different Sense, have also a different Original	211
Some few Rules whereby to know when a Word is derived from the Latin, and how it may be made Latin again	212
CHAP. IV. Of the Prepositions used in Composition	213
Of the Latin Prepositions used in the Composition of English Words	215
CHAP. V. Of the finding out the Original Names of Places	220

PART III.

CHAP. I. Of the Syntax	225
CHAP. II. Of Transposition, or Transplacing of Words and Sentences	232
CHAP. III. Of the Ellipsis, or the Leaving out Words in a Sentence	236
CHAP. V. Of the Points or Pauses in a Sentence	240

PART

The CONTENTS.

PART IV.

CHAP. I. Of Orthography, or Orthoepey, treating of the Letters and their Pronunciation	245
CHAP. II. Of the Vowels	249
CHAP. III. Of the Diphthongs, or double Vowels	260
CHAP. IV. Of the Consonants	265
CHAP. V. Of some Consonants joined together	272
CHAP. VI. Of the Division of Syllables, and some Rules to be observed in Writing of Words	274
CHAP. VII. Of some Points used in Writing, and of the Abbreviation or Contraction of Words	276
A Note of Sir Thomas Smith, concerning the English Tongue	280

PART V.

Of PROSODY	282
CHAP. I. Of Numbers	ibid.
CHAP. II. Of Measure and Cadence	283
CHAP. III. Of Rhyme	285
A Praxis on the Grammar, to shew the Use and Practice of the Rules of the Grammar	289
A Praxis, or Practice on the Lord's Prayer	290
A Praxis on the Creed	300
The Fourth Praxis	309
Of Speech, or of the Formation, or Genuine Sound of all Letters	311



Books printed for A. BETTESWORTH, at the Red-Lyon in Pater-noster Row.

I. **T**HE Virgin Muse, being a Collection of Poems from our most celebrated English Poets, designed for the Use of young Gentlemen and Ladies at Schools. To which are added, some Copies of Verses never before printed, with Notes, and a large Index, explaining the difficult Places, and all the hard Words.

II. The London Vocabulary, English and Latin, put into a New Method, proper to acquaint the Learner with Things, as well as pure Latin Words. Adorned with twenty-six Pictures, for the Use of Schools. The Sixth Edition, with Additions.

These by Mr. Greenwood, Sur-Master of St. Paul's-School.

I. L. Annæi Flori Epitome rerum Rom. } *With Lite-*
Price 2 s. 6 d. } *ral Transla-*

II. Erasmi Colloquia selecta, Third Edition. Price 1 s. 6 d. } *tions.*

III. Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Breviarium. Price 2 s. 6 d. } *With Lite-*

IV. Corn. Nepos, Third Edition. Price 3 s. 6 d. } *ral Transla-*

V. Corderius, Fourth Edition } *tions, and*
English

VI. An Essay upon the Education of Youth in Grammar-Schools, in which the vulgar Method of Education is examined, and a new one proposed, for the more easy and speedy training up of Youth to the Knowledge of the Learned Languages, together with History, Chronology, Geography, &c. Price 1 s. } *Notes.*

VII. An Introduction to the making of Latin, comprising after an easy, compendious Method, the Substance of the Latin Syntax, with proper English Examples, most of them Translations from the Classics, in one Column, and the Latin Words in another. To which is subjoined, in the same Method, a succinct Account of antient Greece and Rome; intended at once to bring Boys acquainted with History, and the Idiom of the Latin Tongue. The Sixth Edition. Price 2 s.

These by Mr. Clarke of Hull.

Books printed for A. Bettesworth.

*Lately Published. Approved by several eminent School-Masters,
the Second Edition of,*

*Æsop's Fables in English and Latin, interlineary, for
the Benefit of those who, not having a Master, would
learn either of these Tongues. With Sculptures. By John
Locke, Gent.*

*Some Improvements to the Art of Teaching, espe-
cially in the first grounding a young Scholar in Grammar-
Learning; shewing a short, sure, and easy Way to bring a
Scholar to Variety and Elegancy in writing Latin: Writ-
ten for the Help and Ease of all School-Masters and Uthers.
The Eighth Edition very much corrected. By William
Walker, B. D. Author of the Treatise of Idioms and
Particles, &c. Price 2 s.*

*Phædri, Cæsaris Augusti Liberti, Fabularum Æso-
piarum, Libri quinque. Publii Syri Sententiæ ex ejus Mi-
mis collectæ multo locupletiores. Utrumque recensuit &
notulas adjecit Sam. Hoadly, A. M. Scholæ Norvicensis
quondam Magister. Editio quarta. Price 1 s.*

*Exercitia Latina; or, Latin for Garretson's En-
glish Exercises, for School-Boys to translate Syntactically.
By N. Bayley, School-Master. The Fourth Edition, Cor-
rected and Improved. Price 2 s.*

*More English Examples to be turned into Latin, be-
ginning with the Nominative Case and Verb as it is var-
ied throughout all Moods and Tenses, and after fitted to
the Rules of Grammar. To which are added, some Cau-
tions for Children to avoid Mistakes in making Latin,
Forms of Epistles, Themes, or other Exercises: For the
Use of Young Beginners at Bury-School. The Eleventh
Edition, with large Additions. Price 1 s.*

*Methodus Græcam Linguam docendi, (multa Gram-
maticorum arte omissa) ad Puerorum captum accommoda-
ta, & ab Edvardo Leedes, (cui id Rei nuper creditum fuit
intra Scholam Buriensem, in Pago Suffolciensi) in Usam
Discipulorum tradita, & jam in Usam Scholæ Gyppovi-
censis Editæ. Editio tertia, plurimis Emendationibus. Price
1 s. 6 d.*

Books printed for A. Bettesworth.

Sententiæ Græcæ, è variis Græcorum libris hinc inde excerptæ. Quibus adduntur aurea Carmina Pythagoræ; & Epitaphium Adonidis, Bione Smirnaeo Authore. Quæ omnia è Græco in Latinum Sermonem de verbo ferè sunt reddita. Subjungitur denique Tabula, non solum ad quam Orationis partem, sed & ad quod in Grammaticâ Græcâ Exemplum in unumquodque Vocabulum (seu Nomen, seu Verbum, seu Participium, sit) formandum est, indicans. In usum Imprimis eorum qui Grecarum Literarum sunt rudes. F. R. A. M. Editio Secunda. Price 1 s. 6 d.

Familiaria Colloquia. Opera Christophori Helvici D. & Professoris Giesensis olim, & Erasmo Roterdamo, Ludovico Vive, & Schollenio Hassio selecta. Editio Decima. Price 1 s.

Cole's Latin Dictionary.

Horatius.

Ovidii Metamorphosis.

Martialis Epigrammata.

Sallustius.

L. Florus.

Terentius.

Juvenal.

Justinus.

Xenophon de Cyri Institutione.

Homeri Ilias.

Pantheon.

Cum Notis in
Usum Serenissi-
mi Delphini.

The agreeable Variety: Being a miscellaneous Collection in Prose and Verse, from the Works of the most celebrated Authors. In two Parts, viz. Part I. Containing Instructive Discourses on the most useful Subjects, for the happy Conduct of human Life. 2. Characters of the most illustrious Personages of both Sexes, of our own, and other Nations; particularly the remarkable Manner of Life of the excellent Princess of Parma. Written by herself, and found among her Papers after her Decease. 3. Choice Poems, and Select Passages, extracted from the most celebrated Poets. Part II. Containing Original Poems; Sixty familiar Letters upon Education, Love, Friendship, &c. none of which ever before Published. The Whole Collected and Published by a Lady. Price 3 s. 6 d. The Second Edition. Miscel-

Books printed for A. Bettefworth.

Miscellanea Aurea : Or, The Golden Medley. Consisting of, 1. A Voyage to the Mountains of the Moon, under the *Æquator* : Or, *Parnassus reformed*. 2. The Fortunate Ship-wreck : Or, A Description of New-Athens, being an Account of the Laws, Manners, Religion, and Customs of that Country. By Morris Williams, Gent. who resided there above twenty Years. 3. *Alberoni* : Or, A Vindication of that Cardinal. 4. The Secret History of the Amours of Don Alonzo Duke of Lerma, and Grandee of Spain. 5. The Garden of Adonis : Or, Love to no Purpose ; being about twenty Copies of Verses and Love Letters. By a Lady. 6. *Mahomet no Impostor* ; written in Arabick, by Abdulla-Mahumed Omer. 7. An Account of Bad and Good Women, antient and modern. With several other Epistolary Essays in Prose and Verse. By Mr. Milton ; the Lady W----, Mr. Philips, and several others. In Octavo. Price 4s.

The four Years Voyage of Captain George Roberts : Being a Series of uncommon Events, which befel him in a Voyage to the Islands of the Canaries, Cape de Verde, and Barbadoes, from whence he was bound to the Coast of Guinea ; the Manner of his being taken by three Pirate Ships, Commanded by Low, Russel, and Spriggs, who after having plundered him, and detained him ten Days, put him aboard his own Sloop without Provisions, Water, &c. and with only two Boys, one of eighteen, and the other of eight Years of Age ; the Hardships he endured for above twenty Days, till he arrived at the Island of St. Nicholas, from whence he was blown off to Sea (before he could get any Sustainance) without his biggest Boy and Boat, whom he had sent ashore ; and after four Days Difficulty and Distress, was Ship-wrecked on the unfrequented Island of St. John ; where, after he had remained near two Years, he built a Vessel to bring himself off. With a particular and curious Description and Draught of the Cape de Verde Islands, their Roads, anchoring Places, Nature and Production of the Soil ; the Kindness and Hospitality of the Natives to Strangers ; their Religion, Manners, Customs, and Superstitions, &c. Together with Observations on the Minerals, Mineral Waters, Metals, and Salts, and of the Nitre, with which some of those Islands abound. Written by himself now living at Shad-Thames. 1726. Price 5s.

